OWNER'S MANUAL

Operation
Maintenance
Specifications

All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, HYUNDAI reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement may be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment.
As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.

Please note that some models are equipped with Right-Hand Drive (RHD). The explanations and illustrations for some operations in RHD models are opposite of those written in this manual.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 1 2020-09-24 7:54:28

CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR HYUNDAI

Your HYUNDAI should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your HYUNDAI and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle. Certain modifications may also be in violation of regulations established by the Department of Transportation and other government agencies in your country.

TWO-WAY RADIO OR CELLULAR TELEPHONE INSTALLATION

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic fuel injection and other electronic components. It is possible for an improperly installed/adjusted two-way radio or cellular telephone to adversely affect electronic systems. For this reason, we recommend that you carefully follow the radio manufacturer's instructions or consult your HYUNDAI dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions if you choose to install one of these devices.

WARNING! (IF EQUIPPED)

The vehicle is equipped with a device of the system Pan-european eCall which calls emergency services. Any self-or unauthorized interference in the system Pan-european eCall, in vehicle systems and its components, installing of equipment which is not recommended by vehicle manufacturer and/or in authorized HYUNDAI dealerships can cause incorrect operation (of the device of) the system Pan-european eCall, making erroneous calls, causing failure of the device (in cars) in case of traffic accident or other accidents, when you need emergency care.

This may be dangerous and threaten your life!

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 2 2020-09-24 7:54:28

SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

This manual includes information titled as DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION and NOTICE.

These titles indicate the following:

DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 3 2020-09-24 7:54:28

Table of contents

Foreword / Hybrid system overview	1
Vehicle information	2
Safety system	3
Instrument cluster	4
Convenient features	5
Driving your vehicle	6
Driver assistance system	7
Emergency situations	8
Maintenance	9
Appendix / Index	A/I

FOREWORD

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing HYUNDAI. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of discerning people who drive HYUNDAIs. We are very proud of the advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each HYUNDAI we build.

Your Owner's Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new HYUNDAI. To become familiar with your new HYUNDAI, so that you can fully enjoy it, read this Owner's Manual carefully before driving your new vehicle.

This manual contains important safety information and instructions intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's controls and safety features so you can safely operate your vehicle.

This manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance safe operation of the vehicle. It is recommended that all service and maintenance on your car be performed by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. HYUNDAI dealers are prepared to provide high-quality service, maintenance and any other assistance that may be required.

This Owner's Manual should be considered a permanent part of your vehicle, and should be kept in the vehicle so you can refer to it at any time. The manual should stay with the vehicle if you sell it to provide the next owner with important operating, safety and maintenance information.

HYUNDAI MOTOR COMPANY

CAUTION

Severe engine and transmission damage may result from the use of poor quality fuels and lubricants that do not meet HYUNDAI specifications. You must always use high quality fuels and lubricants that meet the specifications listed on Page 2-13 in the Vehicle Specifications section of the Owner's Manual.

Copyright 2020 HYUNDAI Motor Company. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of HYUNDAI Motor Company.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 6 2020-09-24 7:54:28

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimize the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has eight chapters plus an index. Each chapter begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

SAFETY MESSAGES

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. This Owner's Manual provides you with many safety precautions and operating procedures. This information alerts you to potential hazards that may hurt you or others, as well as damage to your vehicle.

Safety messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe these hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce the risks.

Warnings and instructions contained in this manual are for your safety. Failure to follow safety warnings and instructions can lead to serious injury or death.

Throughout this manual DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION, NOTICE and the SAFETY ALERT SYMBOL will be used.



This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential physical injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death. The safety alert symbol precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION.

DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 7 2020-09-24 7:54:29

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

Unleaded

For Europe

For the optimal vehicle performance, we recommend you use unleaded gasoline which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher. You may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of RON 91-94 / AKI 87-90 but it may result in slight performance reduction of the vehicle. (Do not use methanol blended fuels)

Except Europe

Your new vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having an Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher. (Do not use methanol blended fuels)

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimize exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

NOTICE

NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.

Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified (We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for details.)

WARNING

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refueling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

Leaded (if equipped)

For some countries, your vehicle is designed to use leaded gasoline. When you are going to use leaded gasoline, we recommend that you ask an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Octane rating of leaded gasoline is same with unleaded one.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 8 2020-09-24 7:54:29

Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol

Gasohol, a mixture of gasoline and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and gasoline or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded gasoline.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use gasoline or gasohol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or driveability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Gasoline or gasohol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

NOTICE

Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.

Other fuels

Using fuel additives such as:

- Silicone fuel additive
- MMT (Magnanese, Mn) fuel additive
- Ferrocene (iron-based) fuel additive
- Other metallic-based fuel additives

may result in cylinder misfire, poor acceleration, engine stalling, damage to the catalyst, or abnormal corrosion, and may cause damage to the engine resulting in a reduction in the overall life of the powertrain.

NOTICE

Damage to the fuel system or performance problem caused by the use of these fuels may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 9 2020-09-24 7:54:29

Use of MTBE

HYUNDAI recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapor lock or hard starting.

NOTICE

Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)

Do not use methanol

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Fuel Additives

HYUNDAI recommends that you use unleaded gasoline which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe). For customers who do not use good quality gasolines, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additive added to the fuel tank is recommended according to the maintenance schedule **(refer to chapter 9, “Normal Maintenance Schedule”)**.

Additives are available from your authorized HYUNDAI dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

Operation in foreign countries

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 10 2020-09-24 7:54:29

VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

  In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.
- If you use unauthorized electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorized electronic devices.

VEHICLE HANDLING INSTRUCTIONS

As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher center of gravity than other types of vehicles. In other words they are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional 2-wheel drive vehicles. Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers. Again, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover. Be sure to read the “Reducing the risk of a rollover” driving guidelines, in section 6 of this manual.

VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- While driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.

RETURNING USED VEHICLES (FOR EUROPE)

HYUNDAI promotes an environmentally sound treatment for end of life vehicles and offers to take back your HYUNDAI end of life vehicles in accordance with the European Union (EU) End of Life Vehicles Directive.

You can get detailed information from your national HYUNDAI homepage.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 11 2020-09-24 7:54:29

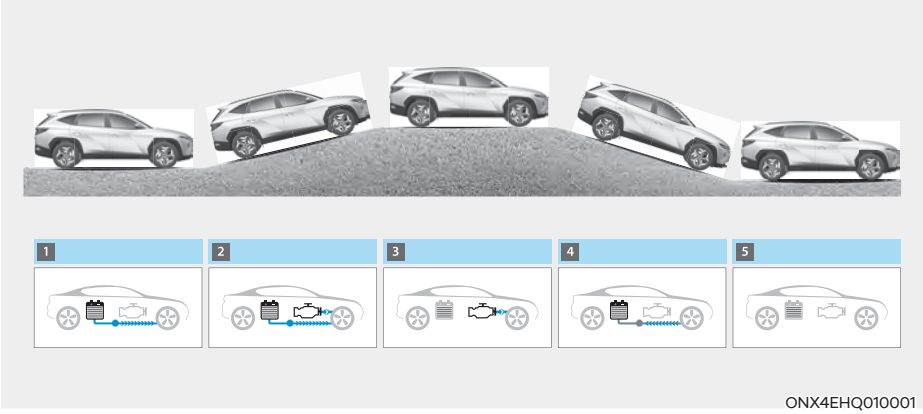
HEV (HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE) SYSTEM

The HYUNDAI Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) uses both the gasoline engine and the electric motor for power. The electric motor is run by a high-voltage HEV battery.

Depending on the driving conditions, the HEV computer selectively operates between the engine and the electric motor or even both at the same time.

Fuel efficiency increases when the engine is at idle, or when the vehicle is driven by the electric motor with the HEV battery.

The HEV battery charge must be maintained, so at times the engine will come on even at idle to act as a generator. Charging also occurs when decelerating or by regenerative braking.



ONX4EHQ010001

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 12 2020-09-24 7:54:32

DRIVING THE HYBRID VEHICLE

Starting the vehicle

Vehicles with smart key system

1. Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied.
3. Make sure the shift button is in P (Park). With the shift button in N (Neutral), you cannot start the vehicle.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Press the Engine Start/Stop button. If the hybrid system starts, the "" indicator will come on.

   Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started without depressing the accelerator.

After following the start procedures, "" indicator on the instrument cluster will turn on. For more details, please check chapter 6.

ECONOMICAL and SAFE OPERATION of Hybrid system

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate and maintain a steady cruising speed. Do not make "jack-rabbit" starts. Do not race between stoplights.

  Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear out.
- The regenerative brake generates energy when the vehicle decelerates.
- When the hybrid battery power is low, the hybrid system automatically recharges the hybrid battery.
- When the engine is running with the shift button in N (Neutral), the hybrid system cannot generate electricity. The hybrid battery cannot recharge with the shift button in N (Neutral).

i Information

In the hybrid system, the engine automatically runs and stops. When the hybrid system operates, the "" indicator is illuminated.

In the following situation, the engine may operate automatically.

- **When the engine is ready to run**
- **When the hybrid battery is being charged**
- **Depending on the temperature condition of the hybrid battery**

Special features

Hybrid vehicles sound different than gasoline engine vehicles. When the hybrid system operates, you may hear a sound from the hybrid battery system behind the rear seat. If you apply the accelerator pedal rapidly, you may hear an unconventional sound. When you apply the brake pedal, you may hear a sound from the regenerative brake system. When the hybrid system is turned off or on, you may hear a sound in the engine compartment. If you depress the brake pedal repeatedly when the hybrid system is turned on, you may hear a sound in the engine compartment. None of these sounds indicate a problem. These are normal characteristics of hybrid vehicles.

If any of following occur, it's a normal condition if you hear a motor sound in the engine compartment:

- After turning off the hybrid system, the brake pedal is released.
- When the hybrid system is turned off, the brake pedal is applied.
- When the driver door is opened.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 13 2020-09-24 7:54:32

When the hybrid system is turned ON, the gasoline engine may run or may not. In this situation, you may feel a vibration. This does not indicate a malfunction. When the "" indicator illuminates, the hybrid system is ready to begin driving. Even if the engine is off, you can operate the vehicle as long as the "" indicator is illuminated.

NOTICE

The hybrid system contains many electronic components. High voltage components, such as cables and other parts, may emit electromagnetic waves. Even when the electromagnetic cover blocks electromagnetic emissions, electromagnetic waves may have an effect on electronic devices. When your vehicle is not used for a long period of time, the hybrid system will discharge. You need to drive the vehicle several times a month. We recommend driving at least for 1 hour or 16 km. When the hybrid battery is discharged, or when it is impossible to jump start the vehicle, we recommend that you contact your authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING

- **When you start the hybrid system with the shift button in P (Parking), the "" indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster. The driver can drive the vehicle, even when the gasoline engine is off.**
- **When you leave the vehicle, you should turn OFF the hybrid system or locate the shift button in P (Park). When you depress the accelerator pedal by mistake, or when the shift button is not in P (Park), the vehicle will abruptly move, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.**

Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS)

The Virtual Engine Sound System generates engine sound for pedestrians to hear vehicle sound because there is limited sound while motor power is used.

- If the gear is shifted from P (Park) after starting the vehicle, the VESS sound will be made.
- When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), an additional warning sound will be heard.

What does regenerative braking do?

It uses an electric motor when decelerating and when braking and transforms kinetic energy to electrical energy in order to charge the high voltage battery.

Battery

- The vehicle is composed of a high voltage battery that drives the motor and air conditioner, and an integrated 12V lithium ion polymer battery with the HEV battery that drives the lamps, wipers, and audio system.
- The integrated 12V battery is automatically charged when the vehicle is in the ready () mode.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 14 2020-09-24 7:54:32

Hybrid system gauge

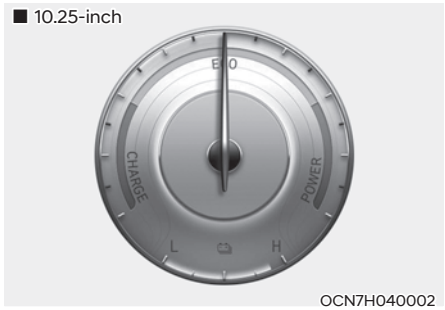
Power gauge

■ 4.2-inch



ONX4H040004

■ 10.25-inch



OCN7H040002

The hybrid system gauge indicates whether the current driving condition is fuel efficient or not.

- CHARGE:

  Shows that the energy made by the vehicle is being converted to electrical energy. (Regenerated energy)
- ECO:

  Shows that the vehicle is being driven in an Eco-friendly manner.
- POWER:

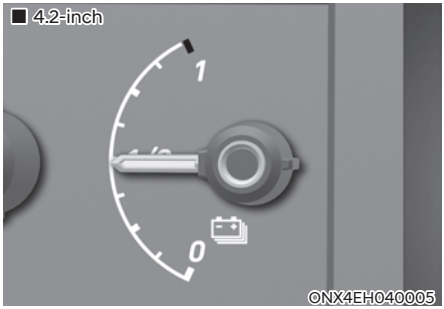
  Shows that the vehicle is exceeding the Eco-friendly range.

According to the hybrid system gauge area, the “EV” indicator comes on or off.

- “EV” indicator ON : Vehicle is driven using the electric motor or the gasoline engine is stopped.
- “EV” indicator OFF : Vehicle is driven using the gasoline engine.

Hybrid battery SOC (State of Charge) gauge

■ 4.2-inch



ONX4EH040005

■ 10.25-inch



ONX4EH040006

This gauge indicates the remaining hybrid battery power. If the SOC is near the “L (Low)” level, the vehicle automatically operates the engine to charge the battery.

However, if the Service Indicator (HEV) and Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) turn on when the SOC gauge is near the “L (Low)” level, we recommend the vehicle be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 15 2020-09-24 7:54:36

Warning and indicator lights

Ready indicator



This indicator illuminates:

When the vehicle is ready to be driven.

- ON : Normal driving is possible.
- OFF : Normal driving is not possible, or a problem has occurred.
- Blinking : Emergency driving.

When the ready indicator goes OFF or blinks, there is a problem with the system. If this occurs, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EV mode indicator

EV

This indicator illuminates:

When the vehicle is driven by the electric motor.

Service warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The service warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then turns off when all checks have been performed.
- When there is a problem with the hybrid vehicle control system or hardware.

When the warning light illuminates while driving, or does not go OFF after starting the vehicle, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Regenerative brake warning light



This warning light illuminates:

When the regenerative brake does not operate and the brake does not perform well. This causes the Brake Warning light (red) and Regenerative Brake Warning Light (yellow) to illuminate simultaneously.

If this occurs, drive safely and we recommend you to have your vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. The operation of the brake pedal may be more difficult than normal and the braking distance may increase.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 16 2020-09-24 7:54:36

LCD display messages

Ready to start driving



OOSHQ019003L

This message is displayed when the vehicle is ready to be driven.

Check regenerative brakes



OOSHQ019004L

This message is displayed when the brake performance is low or the regenerative brake does not work properly due to a failure in the brake system.

If this occurs, it may take longer for the brake pedal to operate and the braking distance may become longer.

Stop vehicle and check brakes



OOSHQ019006L

This message is displayed when a failure occurs in the brake system.

If this occurs, park the vehicle in a safe location and we recommend that you tow your vehicle to the nearest authorized HYUNDAI dealer and have the vehicle inspected.

Check Hybrid system



OOSHQ019005L

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the hybrid control system. Refrain from driving when the warning message is displayed.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 17 2020-09-24 7:54:37

Stop safely and check Hybrid system



OOSHQ019007L

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the hybrid control system. The "" indicator will blink and a warning chime will sound until the problem is solved. Refrain from driving when the warning message is displayed.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Check Hybrid system. Do not start engine



OOSHQ019008L

This message is displayed when the hybrid battery power (SOC) level is low. A warning chime will sound until the problem is solved. Refrain from driving when the warning message is displayed.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Stop safely and check power supply



OOSHQ019009L

This message is displayed when a failure occurs in the power supply system.

If this occurs, park the vehicle in a safe location and recommend you to have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized HYUNDAI dealer and have the vehicle inspected.

Check virtual engine sound system



OOSHQ019010L

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS).

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 18 2020-09-24 7:54:37

Refuel to prevent Hybrid battery damage

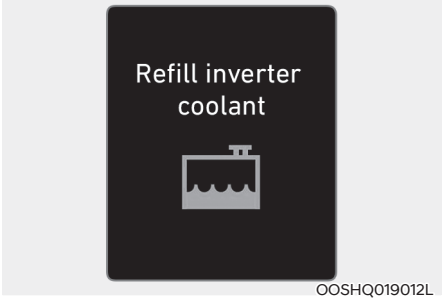


OOSHQ019011L

This message is displayed when the fuel tank is nearly empty.

You should refill the fuel tank to prevent hybrid battery damage.

Refill inverter coolant



OOSHQ019012L

This message is displayed when the inverter coolant is nearly empty.

You should refill the inverter coolant.

Park with engine On to charge battery

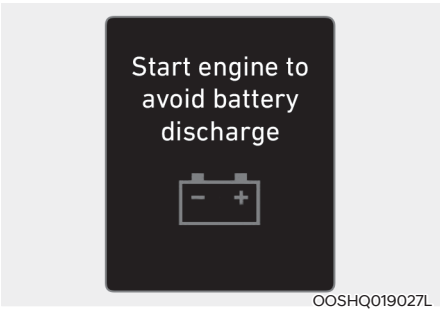


OOSHQ019013L

This message is displayed when the hybrid battery power (SOC) level is low.

If this occurs, park the vehicle in a safe location and wait until the hybrid battery is charged.

Start engine to avoid battery discharge



OOSHQ019027L

This message is displayed to inform the driver the 12V battery may be discharged if the ignition switch is in ON position (without the indicator ON).

Set the vehicle to the ready ( ) mode to prevent the 12V battery from being discharged.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 19 2020-09-24 7:54:38

Energy flow

The hybrid system informs the drivers its energy flow in various operating modes. While driving, the current energy flow is specified in 11 modes.

Vehicle stop

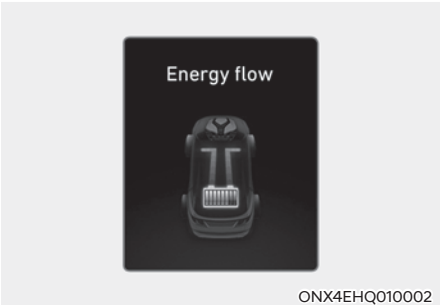


ONX4E040024

The vehicle is stopped.

(No energy flow)

EV propulsion



ONX4EHQ010002

Only the motor power is used to drive the vehicle.

(Battery → Wheel)

Power assist

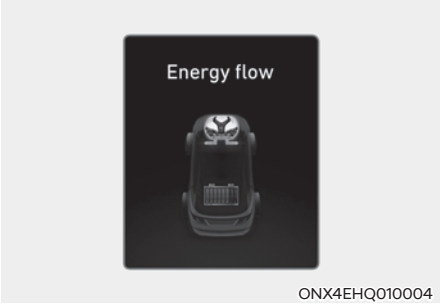


ONX4EHQ010003

Both the motor and the engine power are used to drive the vehicle.

(Battery & Engine → Wheel)

Engine only propulsion



ONX4EHQ010004

Only the engine power is used to drive the vehicle.

(Engine → Wheel)

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 20 2020-09-24 7:54:42

Engine generation



ONX4EHQ010005

When the vehicle is stopped, the high-voltage battery is charged up by the engine.

(Engine → Battery)

Regeneration



ONX4EHQ010006

The high-voltage battery is charged up by the regenerative brake system.

(Wheel → Battery)

Engine brake



ONX4EHQ010007

The engine braking is used to decelerate the vehicle.

(Wheel → Engine)

Power reserve



ONX4EHQ010008

The engine is simultaneously used to drive the vehicle and to charge up the high-voltage battery.

(Engine → Wheel & Battery)

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 21 2020-09-24 7:54:46

Engine generation/motor drive



ONX4EHQ010009

The engine charges up the high-voltage battery. The motor power is used to drive the vehicle.

(Engine → Battery → Wheel)

Engine generation/regeneration



ONX4E040025

The engine and regenerative brake system charges up the high-voltage battery.

(Engine & Wheel → Battery)

Engine brake/regeneration



ONX4EHQ010010

The engine braking is simultaneously used to decelerate the vehicle and to charge up the high-voltage battery.

(Wheel → Engine & Battery)

Start engine to avoid battery discharge



ODN8HQ019030L

If the engine is not turned on with the Engine Start/Stop button in ACC or ON for a while, the battery can be discharged. Please turn on the engine to prevent 12V battery from discharge.

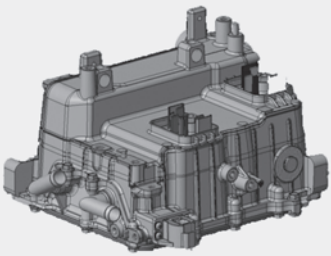
001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 22 2020-09-24 7:54:49

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS FOR HYBRID SYSTEM

Hybrid vehicle components

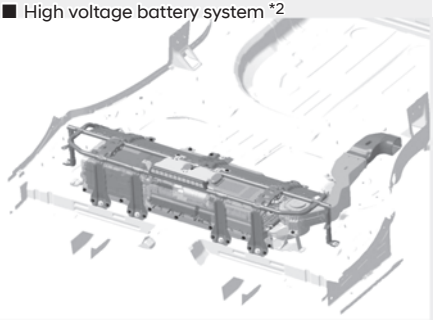
High voltage battery system

■ HPCU (Hybrid Power Control Unit) *1



OTMHQ010013

■ High voltage battery system *2



ONX4HQ010012

*1 : Located in the engine compartment

*2 : Located under the rear seats

WARNING

Never touch orange colored or high voltage labeled components, including wires, cables, and connections. When the insulators or covers are damaged or removed, severe injury or death from electrocution may occur.

WARNING

While replacing the fuses in the engine compartment, never touch the HPCU. The HPCU carries high voltage. Touching the HPCU may result in electrocution, serious injury, or death.

WARNING

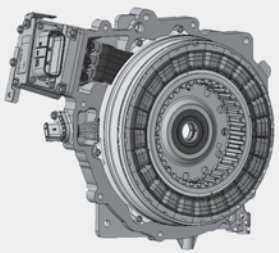
In the hybrid system, the hybrid battery uses high voltage to operate the motor and other components. This high voltage hybrid battery system can be very dangerous.

Never touch the hybrid system. When you touch the hybrid battery system, serious injury or death may occur.

CAUTION

- **Do not pile up any items in an area behind the high voltage battery. In a crash, the battery may become unstable, or its performance may degrade.**
- **Do not apply strong force nor pile up any items above the luggage compartment. Such an attempt may distort the high voltage battery case, causing a safety problem or degrading the performance.**
- **Be careful when loading flammable liquid in the luggage compartment. It could cause operational and safety degradation if the liquid leaks and flows in the high voltage battery.**

■ Drive motor *3



OTMHQ010015

*3 : Located in the engine compartment

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 23 2020-09-24 7:54:50

WARNING

- **Do not disassemble the high voltage motor connector. The high voltage motor connector may contain residual high voltage. Coming in contact with high voltage may result in death or serious injury.**
- **We recommend to have vehicle's hybrid system inspected or repaired by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

WARNING

- **Do not disassemble or assemble the high voltage battery system. Doing so may result in electric shock, causing death or serious injury.**
- **If you disassemble or assemble hybrid system components improperly, it may damage the performance and reliability of your vehicle.**
- **If electrolyte comes in contact with your body, clothes or eyes, immediately flush with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.**

WARNING

Never assemble or disassemble the high voltage battery system.

- **If you assemble or disassemble the high voltage battery system, the durability and performance of the vehicle may be damaged.**
- **When you want to check the high voltage battery system, we recommend to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Do not touch the high voltage battery and high voltage cable connected to motor (orange color). Severe burns and electric shock may occur. For your safety, do not touch the cover of electronic components and electronic cable. Do not remove the cover of electronic components and electronic cable. In particular, never touch the high voltage battery system when the hybrid system in operation. It may result in death or serious injury.**

WARNING

- **Never use the package modules (high voltage battery, inverter and converter) for any other purpose.**
- **Do not use an unauthorized battery charger to charge the high voltage battery. Doing so may result in death or serious injury.**
- **Never locate the high voltage system near or in a fire.**
- **Never drill into or strike the package module. Otherwise, it may be damaged. An electric shock may occur, resulting in serious injury or death.**

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 24 2020-09-24 7:54:50

NOTICE

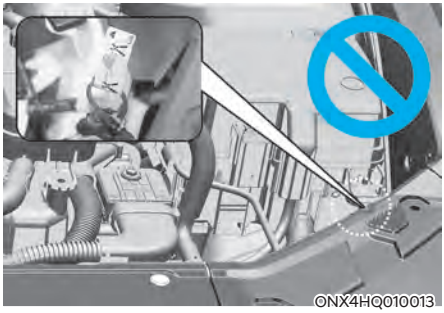
- **When the vehicle is paint baked, do not bake over 30 minutes in 70°C (158°F) or 20 minutes in 80°C (176°F) degree.**
- **Do not wash the engine compartment, using water. Water may cause an electric shock and damage the electronic components.**

WARNING

This hybrid vehicle uses the hybrid battery system inverter and converter to generate high voltage. High voltage in the hybrid battery system is very dangerous and may cause severe burns and electric shock. This may result in serious injury or death.

- **For your safety, never touch, replace, disassemble or remove the hybrid battery system including components, cables and connectors. Severe burns or electric shock may result in serious injury or death when you fail to follow this warning.**
- **When the hybrid battery system operates, the hybrid battery system can be hot. Always be careful because burns or electric shock may be caused by high voltage.**
- **Do not spill liquid on the HPCU, HSG, motor and fuses. If the hybrid system components come in contact with liquid, it may result in electric shock.**

Service interlock connector



In case of emergency, cut the service interlock connector cable to isolate the high voltage of the battery.

WARNING

Never disconnect the service interlock connector or cut the wire except in an emergency situation.

Serious problems may occur, such as the vehicle will not start.

Hybrid battery cooling duct



The hybrid battery cooling duct is located in the middle of the rear seats. The cooling duct cools down the hybrid battery. When the hybrid battery cooling duct is blocked, the hybrid battery may be overheated.

Clean the cooling duct for the hybrid battery with a dry cloth on a regular basis.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 25 2020-09-24 7:54:50

WARNING

- Never clean the cooling duct of the hybrid battery with a wet cloth. If any water enters the cooling duct of the hybrid battery, the hybrid battery may cause an electric shock, resulting in a serious damage, an injury or a death.
- The hybrid battery is composed of lithium-ion polymer. If the hybrid battery is improperly handled, it is dangerous to the environment. Also it may cause electrical shock and severe burns, resulting in a serious injury or a death.
- Do not spill liquid over the cooling duct of the hybrid battery. Doing so is very dangerous. It may cause electric shock or serious injury.
- Do not cover the cooling duct with objects.
- Do not put any objects into the cooling duct of the hybrid battery. Doing so may cause loss of cooling duct volume to the hybrid battery. When the cooling duct is blocked with any objects, immediately contact your HYUNDAI dealer.
- Never place a container of liquid on or near the cooling duct. If the liquid spills, the hybrid battery located in the luggage compartment may be damaged.
- Secure all loads in the luggage compartment to prevent them from being tossed about before driving. When a sharp or heavy load strike with a strong impact or pierce the interior luggage compartment wall, the hybrid battery system may be damaged, deteriorating its performance.
- Do not obstruct the cooling duct with any other objects.

If an accident occurs

WARNING

- For your safety, do not touch the high voltage cables, connectors and package modules. High voltage components are orange in color.
- Exposed cables or wires may be visible inside or outside of the vehicle. Never touch the wires or cables, because an electrical shock, an injury, or a death may occur.
- Any gas or electrolyte leakage from your vehicle is not only poisonous but also flammable. Upon witnessing one of those, open the windows, and remain a safe distance from the vehicle out of the road.

  Immediately call an emergency services or contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer and advise them that a hybrid vehicle is involved.
- When the vehicle is severely damaged, remain a safe distance of 15 meter or more between your vehicle and other vehicles/ flammables.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 26 2020-09-24 7:54:50

WARNING

If a fire occurs:

- **If a small scale fire occurs, use a fire extinguisher (ABC, BC) that is meant for electrical fires.**

  If it is impossible to extinguish the fire in the early stage, remain a safe distance from the vehicle and immediately call your local fire emergency responders. Also, advise them that a hybrid vehicle is involved.

  If the fire spreads to the high voltage battery, large amount of water is needed to put out the fire.

  Using small amount of water or fire extinguishers not meant for electrical fires could cause serious injury or death from electrical shocks.

- **Upon witnessing any sparks, gases, flames, or fuel leakage of your vehicle, immediately call emergency services or contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. Also, advise them that a hybrid vehicle is involved.**

WARNING

When a submersion in water occurs:

When your vehicle is flooded in water, a high-voltage battery may cause shock or fires. Thus, turn the hybrid system OFF, take the key in your possession and escape to a safe place. Never attempt physical contact with your flooded vehicle.

Immediately contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer and advise them that a hybrid vehicle is involved.

When the hybrid vehicle shuts off

When the high voltage battery or 12 volt battery is discharged, or when the fuel tank is empty, the hybrid system may not operate while driving. When the Hybrid system does not operate, do the followings:

1. Gradually reduce the vehicle speed. Pull over your vehicle off the road in a safe area.
2. Make sure the shift button is in P (Park).
3. Turn ON the hazard warning flashers.
4. Turn OFF the vehicle, and try to start the hybrid system again, while depressing the brake pedal and turning on the ignition switch.
5. When the hybrid system still does not operate, refer to “If the 12 Volt Battery Is Discharged” section in chapter 8.

   Before jump-starting the vehicle, check the fuel level and the exact procedure to jump start. For further details, refer to “If the 12 Volt Battery Is Discharged” section in chapter 8. When the fuel level is low, do not attempt to drive the vehicle only with the battery power. The high voltage battery may be discharged, and the hybrid system will turn OFF.

001_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 27 2020-09-24 7:54:50

2. Vehicle information

Exterior overview (i) 2-2
Exterior overview (ii) 2-3
Interior overview (i) 2-4
Interior overview (ii) 2-5
Instrument panel overview (i) 2-6
Instrument panel overview (ii) 2-8
Instrument panel overview (iii) 2-10
Engine compartment 2-11
Dimensions 2-12
Engine 2-12
Bulb wattage 2-13
Tires and wheels 2-14
Load and speed capacity tires (for europe) 2-15
Air conditioning system 2-15
Gross vehicle weight 2-15
Luggage volume 2-15
Recommended lubricants and capacities 2-16
  Recommended engine oil (for europe) 2-17
  Recommended sae viscosity number 2-17
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 2-18
Vehicle certification label 2-18
Tire specification and pressure label 2-18
Engine number 2-19
Air conditioner compressor label 2-19
Declaration of conformity 2-19
Fuel label 2-20
  Gasoline engine 2-20

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (I)

■ Front view



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

ONX4E010001

1. Hood 5-39
2. Front lamp 9-61
3. Tires and wheels 9-39
4. Outside rearview mirror 5-26
5. Panorama sunroof 5-34
6. Front windshield wiper blades 9-31
7. Windows 5-29
8. Front radar 7-2

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 2 2020-09-24 7:56:40

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (II)

■ Rear view



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

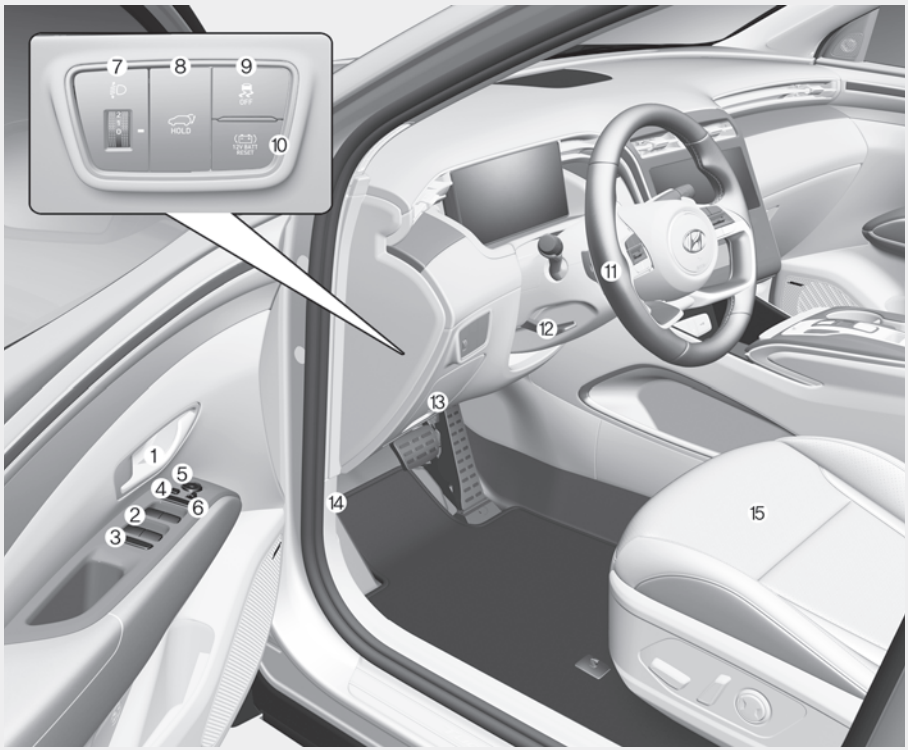
ONX4E010002

1. Door 5-13
2. Fuel filler door 5-51
3. Rear combination lamp 9-87
4. Tailgate 5-41
5. High mounted stop lamp 9-70
6. Rear window wiper blades 9-31
7. Antenna 5-105
8. Rear view camera 7-96

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 3 2020-09-24 7:56:41

INTERIOR OVERVIEW (I)

■ Left-hand drive type



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

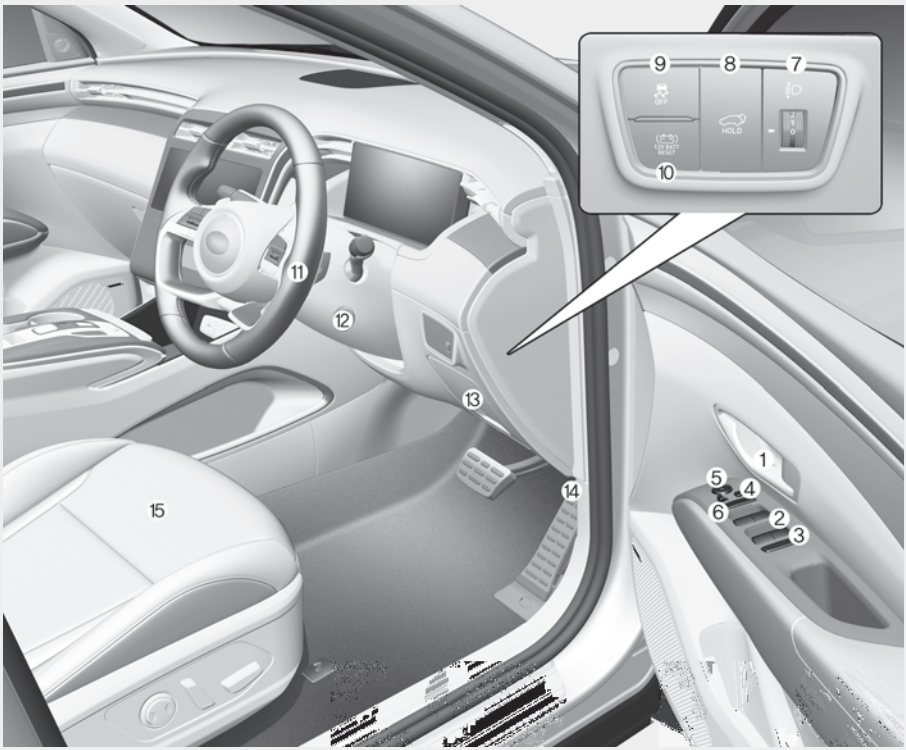
ONX4H010003

1. Inside door handle..... 5-15
2. Power window switches 5-29
3. Power window lock button 5-32
4. Outside rearview mirror folding switch 5-28
5. Outside rearview mirror control switch 5-27
6. Central door lock switch 5-15
7. Headlamp leveling device 5-57
8. Power tailgate button..... 5-43
9. ESC OFF button 6-32
10. 12V battery reset switch 8-5
11. Steering wheel.....5-23
12. Steering wheel tilt/telescopic lever 5-23
13. Fuse box.....9-48
14. Hood release lever..... 5-39
15. Seat.....3-2

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 4 2020-09-24 7:56:41

INTERIOR OVERVIEW (II)

■ Right-hand drive type



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

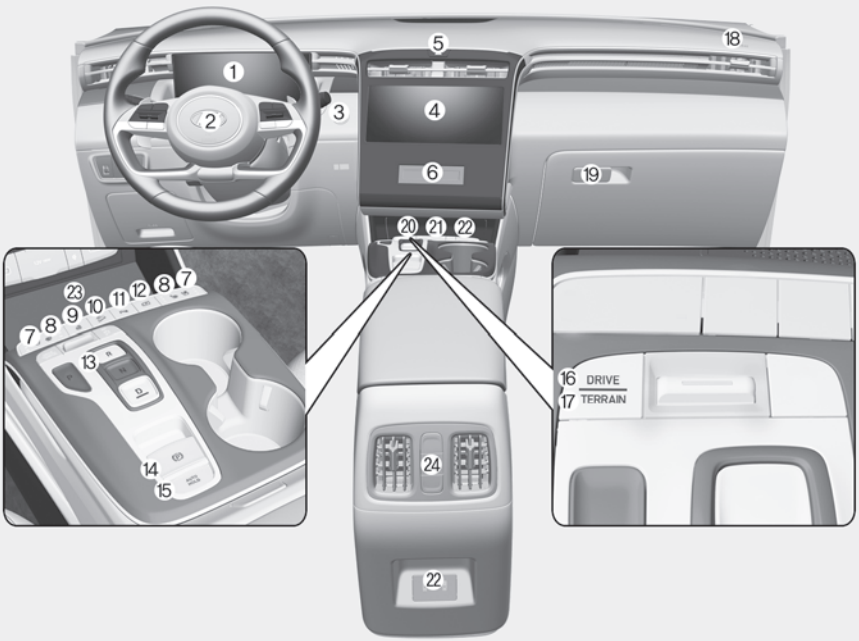
ONX4EH010003R

1. Inside door handle 5-15
2. Power window switches 5-29
3. Power window lock button 5-32
4. Outside rearview mirror folding switch 5-28
5. Outside rearview mirror control switch 5-27
6. Central door lock switch 5-15
7. Headlamp leveling device 5-57
8. Power tailgate button 5-43
9. ESC OFF button 6-32
10. 12V battery reset switch 8-5
11. Steering wheel 5-23
12. Ignition switch 6-5
13. Fuse box 9-48
14. Hood release lever 5-39
15. Seat 3-2

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 5 2020-09-24 7:56:42

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW (I)

■ Left-hand drive type



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

ONX4EH010004

1. Instrument cluster 4-2
2. Driver's front air bag..... 3-51
3. Engine Start/Stop button..... 6-8
4. Infotainment system 5-105
5. Hazard warning lamp switch 8-3
6. climate control system/ 5-71
7. Air ventilation seat..... 3-23
8. Seat warmer..... 3-21
9. Heated steering wheel..... 5-24
10. DBC button 6-38
11. Parking Safety button..... 7-120
12. Parking/View button 7-97
13. Transmission shift button 6-13
14. EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) switch..... 6-22
15. Auto Hold switch 6-27
16. Drive mode button 6-49
17. Terrain mode button (Off-road)..... 6-42

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 6 2020-09-24 7:56:42



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

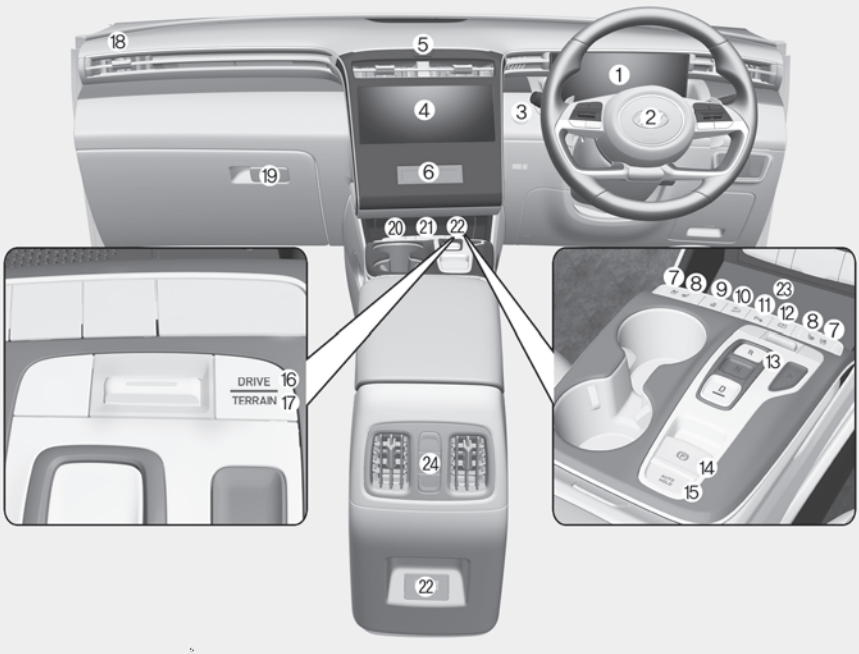
ONX4EH010004

18. Passenger's front air bag 3-51
19. Glove box 5-91
20. USB port 5-105
21. Power outlet 5-95
22. USB charger 5-96
23. Wireless charging system pad 5-96
24. Second row climate control system 5-72

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 7 2020-09-24 7:56:42

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW (II)

■ Right-Hand drive type

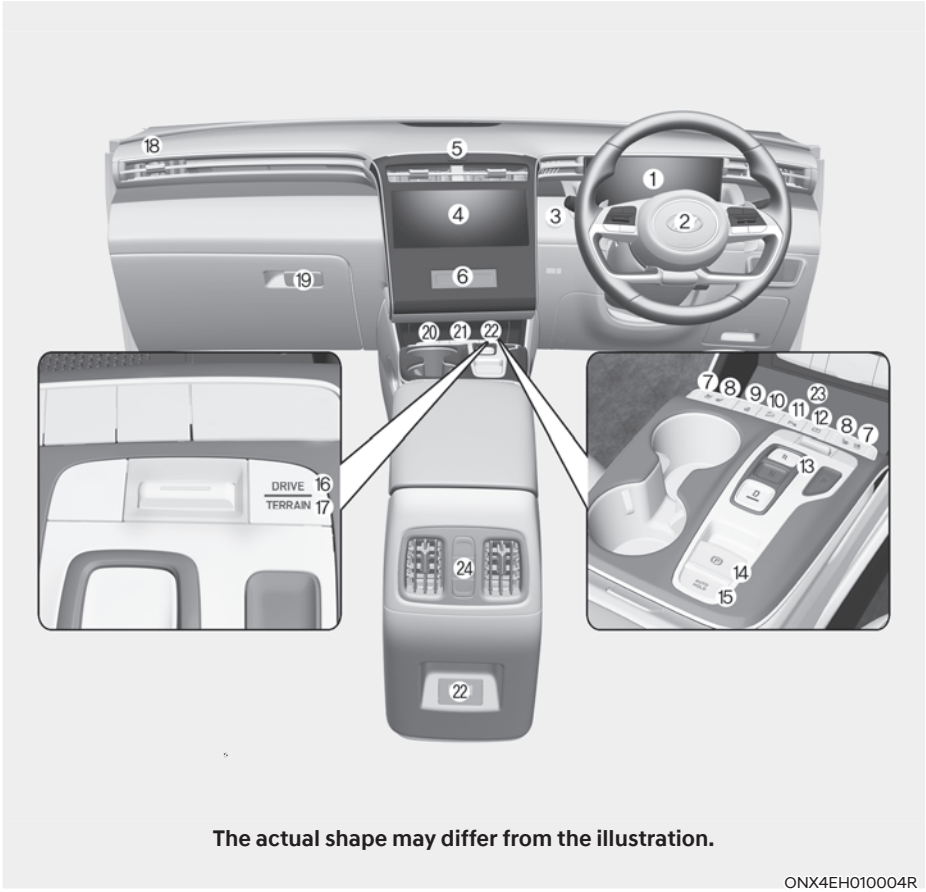


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

ONX4EH010004R

1. Instrument cluster 4-2
2. Driver's front air bag..... 3-51
3. Engine Start/Stop button..... 6-8
4. Infotainment system 5-105
5. Hazard warning lamp switch 8-3
6. climate control system/ 5-71
7. Air ventilation seat..... 3-23
8. Seat warmer..... 3-21
9. Heated steering wheel..... 5-24
10. DBC button 6-38
11. Parking Safety button..... 7-120
12. Parking/View button 7-97
13. Transmission shift button 6-13
14. EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) switch..... 6-22
15. Auto Hold switch 6-27
16. Drive mode button 6-49
17. Terrain mode button (Off-road)..... 6-42

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 8 2020-09-24 7:56:43



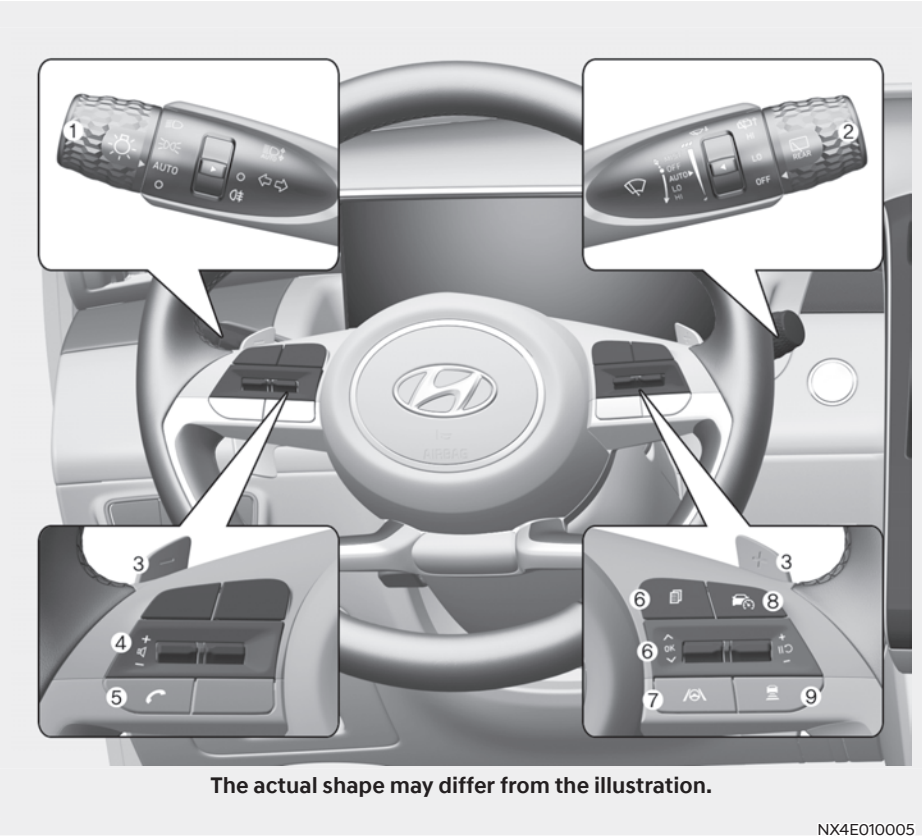
The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

ONX4EH010004R

18. Passenger's front air bag 3-51
19. Glove box 5-91
20. USB port 5-105
21. Power outlet 5-95
22. USB charger 5-96
23. Wireless charging system pad 5-96
24. Second row climate control system 5-72

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 9 2020-09-24 7:56:43

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW (III)



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

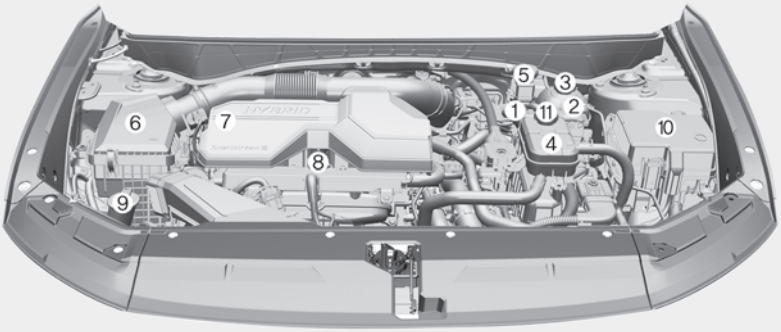
NX4E010005

1. Lighting control lever 5-53
2. Wiper and washer control lever..... 5-56
3. Paddle shifter.....6-18
4. Audio remote control buttons 5-105
5. Bluetooth® hands-free phone button 5-107
6. LCD display control 4-26
7. Lane Driving Assist button..... 7-18
8. CRUISE button..... 7-59
9. Headway 7-64

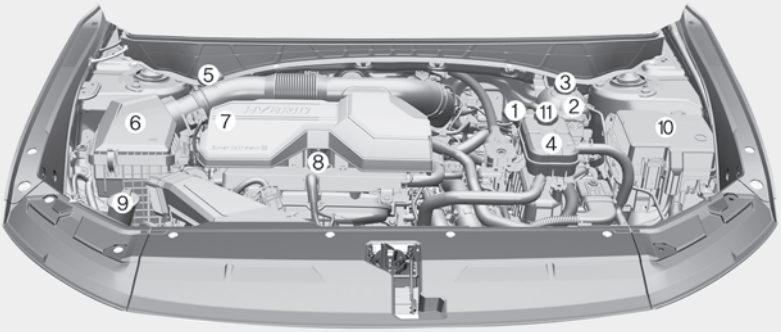
002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 10 2020-09-24 7:56:44

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ Smartstream G1.6 T-GDi HEV
- Left-hand drive



- Right-hand drive



The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

ONX4EH090001/ ONX4EH090001R

1. ECU
2. Engine coolant reservoir 9-24
3. Engine coolant reservoir cap 9-24
4. Inverter coolant reservoir..... 9-24
5. Brake fluid reservoir 9-27
6. Air cleaner 9-29
7. Engine oil filler cap 9-22
8. Engine oil dipstick 9-22
9. Windshield washer fluid reservoir 9-28
10. Fuse box 9-50
11. Invert coolant reservoir cap..... 9-22

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 11 2020-09-24 7:56:44

DIMENSIONS

Items	mm (in)	
Overall length	4,500 (177.16)	
Overall width	1,865 (73.42)	
Overall height	1,650 (64.96) / 1,651 (65)*1 / 1,653 (65.07)*2	
Tread	Front	Rear
	17'' : 1,630 (64.17)	17'' : 1,637 (64.44)
	19'' : 1,615 (63.58)	19'' : 1,622 (63.85)
Wheelbase	2,680 (105.51)	

*1 : if equipped with the roof rack of the normal roof

*2 : if equipped with the roof rack of the panorama sunroof

ENGINE

Engine	Displacement cc (cu. in)	Bore x Stroke mm (in.)	Firing order	No. of cylinders
Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi HEV	1,598 (97.43)	75.6 X 89 (2.97 X 3.50)	1-3-4-2	4. In-line

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 12 2020-09-24 7:56:44

BULB WATTAGE

Light bulb				Bulb type	Wattage
Front	Type A	Headlamp	High	HB3	60
			Low	HB3	60
		Daytime running lamp (DRL) / position lamp		LED	LED
		Turn signal lamp		PY21W	21
	Type B	Headlamp	High	LED	LED
			Low	LED	LED
			SBL*1	LED	LED
		Daytime running lamp (DRL) / position lamp		LED	LED
		Turn signal lamp		LED	LED
	Turn signal lamp (Outside mirror)			LED	LED
Rear	Type A	Tail lamp		P21/5W	5/21
		Tail/Stop lamp		P21/5W	5/21
	Type B	Tail lamp		LED	LED
		Tail/Stop lamp		LED	LED
	Turn signal lamp			PY21W	21
	Rear fog lamp			PR21W	21
	Backup lamp			P21W	21
	License plate lamp			W5W	5
				LED	LED
	High mounted stop lamp			LED	LED
Interior	Map lamp		Type A	W10W	10
			Type B	LED	LED
	Room lamp			FESTOON	10
	Personnal lamp			LED	LED
	Glove box lamp			W5W	5
	Sunvisor lamp			FESTOON	5
	Luggage compartment lamp			FESTOON	10

*1 : Static Bending Light

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 13 2020-09-24 7:56:44

TIRES AND WHEELS

Items	Tire size	Wheel size	Inflation pressure bar (kPa, psi)				Wheel lug nut torque kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)
			Normal load		Maximum load		
			Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tire	215/65 R17	7.0J x 17	2.4 (240, 35)		2.4 (240, 35)	2.75 (275, 40)	11~13 (79~94, 107~127)
	235/50 R19	7.5J x 19					
Compact spare tire	T135/90 D17	4.0T X 17	420(60)				

NOTICE

- **It is permissible to add 20 kPa (3 psi) to the standard tire pressure specification if colder temperatures are expected soon. Tires typically lose 7 kPa (1 psi) for every 7°C (12°F) temperature drop. If extreme temperature variations are expected, recheck your tire pressure as necessary to keep them properly inflated.**
- **An air pressure generally decreases, as you drive up to a high-altitude area above sea level. Thus, if you plan to drive a high-altitude area, check the tire pressures in advance. If necessary, inflate them to a proper level (Air inflation per altitude: +10 kPa/1 km (+2.4 psi/1 mile)).**
- **Must do not exceed maximum inflation pressure shown on equipped tire sidewall.**

CAUTION

When replacing tires, ALWAYS use the same size, type, brand, construction and tread pattern supplied with the vehicle. If not, it can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 14 2020-09-24 7:56:44

LOAD AND SPEED CAPACITY TIRES (FOR EUROPE)

Items	Tire size	Wheel size	Load capacity		Speed capacity	
			LI *1	kg	SS *2	km/h
Full size tire	215/65 R17	7.0J x 17	103	875	V	240
	235/50 R19	7.5J X 19	103	875	V	240
Compact spare tire	T135/90 D17	4.0T X 17	104	900	M	130

*1 LI : LOAD INDEX
*2 SS : SPEED SYMBOL

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

Items	Weight of volume			Classification
Refrigerant g (oz.)	R1234yf	Front	550 (19.40) ± 25 (0.88)	R-1234yf (For Europe) R-134a (Except Europe)
	R134a	Front	550 (19.40) ± 25 (0.88)	
Compressor lubricant g (oz.)	Front		150 (5.29) ± 10 (0.35)	POE

We recommend you to contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for more details.

GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

Engine	AT	
	2WD	4WD
Smartstream G1.6 T-GDi HEV Kg(lbs.)	2,175 (4,833)	2,245 (4,988)

LUGGAGE VOLUME

Item		Except Europe	For Europe
VDA (Blind rear seat to upper edge of the seat back) [L (cu ft)]	Min.	536 ℓ (18.8 cu.ft)	616 ℓ (21.71 cu.ft)
	Max.	1715 ℓ (60.46 cu.ft)	1795 ℓ (63.28 cu.ft)

Min: Rear most and normal seat position
Max: Froward and upright seat position

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 15 2020-09-24 7:56:44

RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

Lubricant		Volume	Classification
Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill)	Recommends Shell HELIX Motor oils	4.8 ℓ (5.1 US qt.)	SAE 0W-20, API SN PLUS/SP or ILSAC GF-6
Automatic transmission fluid		6 ℓ (6.3 US qt.)	MICHANG ATF SP4M-1, SK ATF SP4M-1, S-OIL ATF SP4M-1, Hyundai genuine ATF SP4M-1
Coolant	LHD	7.75 ℓ (8.18 US qt.)	Mixture of antifreeze and water (Phosphate-based Ethylene glycol coolant for aluminum radiator)
	RHD	7.82 ℓ (8.26 US qt.)	
Invert Coolant		1.9 ℓ (2.0 US qt.)	
Rear differential oil (4WD)		0.53 ~ 0.63 ℓ (0.56 ~ 0.67 US qt.)	HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5, SAE 75W/85 (SK HCT-5 GEAR OIL 75W/85 or EQUIVALENT)
Transfer case oil (4WD)		0.62~0.68 ℓ (0.65~0.71 US qt.)	
Brake fluid *3		As required	SAE J1704 DOT-4 LV, FMVSS 116 DOT-4, ISO4925 CLASS-6
Fuel		52 ℓ (54.6 US qt.)	Refer to “Fuel requirements” in chapter 1.

* LHD : Left-hand drive type
RHD : Right-hand drive type

*1 : Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on the next page.

*2 : Requires < API SN PLUS (or above) Full synthetic> grade engine oil. If a lower grade engine oil (mineral oil including Semi-synthetic) is used, then the engine oil and engine oil filter must be replaced as indicated severe maintenance condition.

*3 : To maintain the best braking performance and ABS/ESC performance, we recommend that you use genuine brake fluid that conform to specifications.

- An engine oil displaying this American Petroleum Institute(API) Certification Mark conforms to the International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC). It is recommended to only use engine oils that uphold this API Certification Mark



002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 16 2020-09-24 7:56:44

Recommended engine oil (For Europe)

Supplier	Product	
Shell	Gasoline Engine	Helix Ultra AH 0W-20
		Helix Ultra A5/B5 0W-20

Recommended SAE viscosity number

CAUTION

Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather. Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers										
Temperature	°C	-30	-20	-10	0	10	20	30	40	50
	(°F)	-10	0	20	40	60	80	100	120	
Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi HEV		0W-20								

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 17 2020-09-24 7:56:45

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

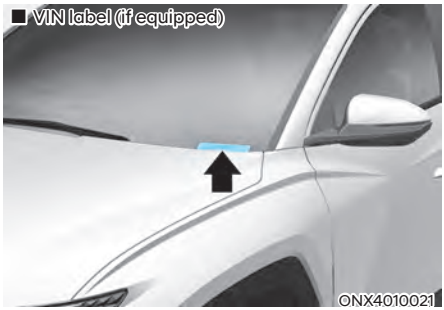
■ Frame number



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the floor under the front right side seat. To check the number, open the cover.

■ VIN label (if equipped)



The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the left side dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windshield from outside.

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side center pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

TIRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL



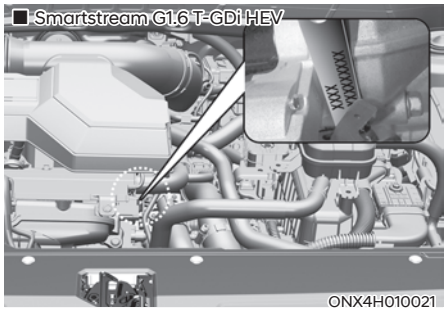
The tires supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

The tire label located on the driver's side center pillar gives the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 18 2020-09-24 7:56:45

ENGINE NUMBER

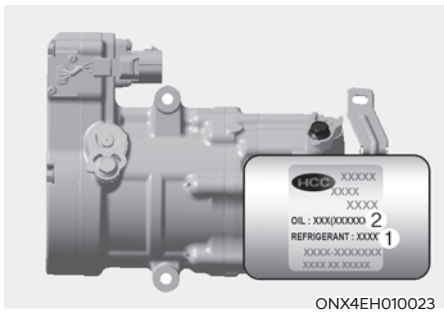
■ Smartstream G1.6 T-GDi HEV



ONX4H010021

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL



ONX4EH010023

A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Example

CE 0678

CE0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on HYUNDAI web site as follows;

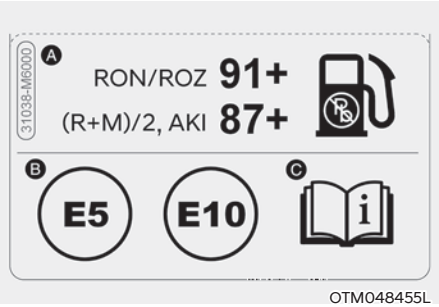
http://service.hyundai-motor.com

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 19 2020-09-24 7:56:45

FUEL LABEL (IF EQUIPPED)

Gasoline engine

The fuel label is attached on the fuel filler door.



OTM048455L

A. Octane rating of unleaded gasoline
   1. RON/ROZ : Research Octane Number
   2. (R+M)/2, AKI : Anti Knock Index

B. Identifiers for Petrol-type fuels
   ✳ This symbol means usable fuel. Do not use any other fuel.

C. For further details, refer to the “Fuel Requirement” section in the Introduction chapter.

002_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 20 2020-09-24 7:56:45

3. Safety system

Important safety precautions 3-2
- Always wear your seat belt 3-2
- Restrain all children 3-2
- Air bag hazards 3-2
- Driver distraction 3-2
- Control your speed 3-2
- Keep your vehicle in safe condition 3-2

Seats 3-3
- Safety precautions 3-5
- Front seats 3-6
- Rear seats 3-12
- Headrest 3-16
- Seat warmers 3-20
- Air ventilation seat 3-22
- Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) 3-23

Seat belts 3-25
- Seat belt safety precautions 3-25
- Seat belt warning light 3-26
- Seat belt restraint system 3-28
- Additional seat belt safety precautions 3-34
- Care of seat belts 3-36

Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-37
- Our recommendation: Children always in the rear 3-37
- Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-38
- Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-40

Air bag - supplemental restraint system 3-48
- Where are the air bags? 3-51
- How does the air bags system operate? 3-56
- What to expect after an air bag inflates 3-59
- Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat 3-60
- Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? 3-60
- SRS care 3-65
- Additional safety precautions 3-66
- Air bag warning labels 3-66

IMPORTANT SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

You will find many safety precautions and recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The safety precautions in this section are among the most important.

Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of accidents. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with air bags, ALWAYS make sure you and your passengers wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

Restrain all children

All children under age 13 should ride in your vehicle properly restrained in a rear seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in an appropriate Child Restraint System. Larger children should use a booster seat with the lap/shoulder belt until they can use the seat belt properly without a booster seat.

Air bag hazards

While air bags can save lives, they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or who are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Driver distraction

Driver distraction presents a serious and potentially deadly danger, especially for inexperienced drivers. Safety should be the first concern when behind the wheel and drivers need to be aware of the wide array of potential distractions, such as drowsiness, reaching for objects, eating, personal grooming, other passengers, and using mobile phones.

Drivers can become distracted when they take their eyes and attention off the road or their hands off the wheel to focus on activities other than driving. To reduce your risk of distraction and an accident:

- ALWAYS set up your mobile devices (i.e., MP3 players, phones, navigation units, etc.) when your vehicle is parked or safely stopped.
- ONLY use your mobile device when allowed by laws and conditions permit safe use. NEVER text or email while driving. Most countries have laws prohibiting drivers from texting. Some countries and cities also prohibit drivers from using handheld phones.
- NEVER let the use of a mobile device distract you from driving. You have a responsibility to your passengers and others on the road to always drive safely, with your hands on the wheel as well as your eyes and attention on the road.

Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

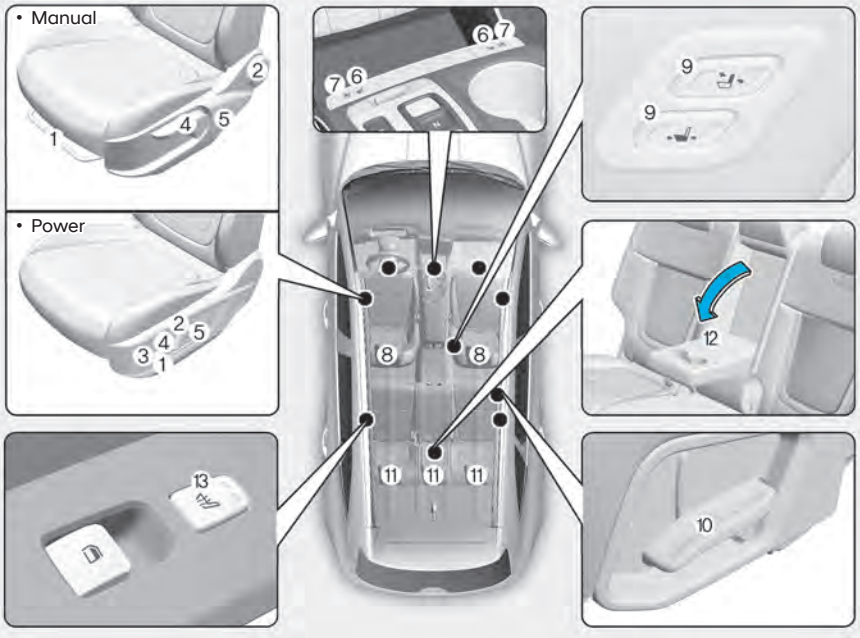
Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 2 2020-09-24 7:57:02

SEATS

■ Left-Hand drive type



The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

ONX4EH030001

Front seats

(1) Forward and rearward
(2) Seatback angle
(3) Seat cushion angle*
(4) Seat cushion height
(5) Lumbar support (Driver's seat)*
(6) Seat warmer*
(7) Air ventilation seat*
(8) Headrest
(9) Walk-in switch*

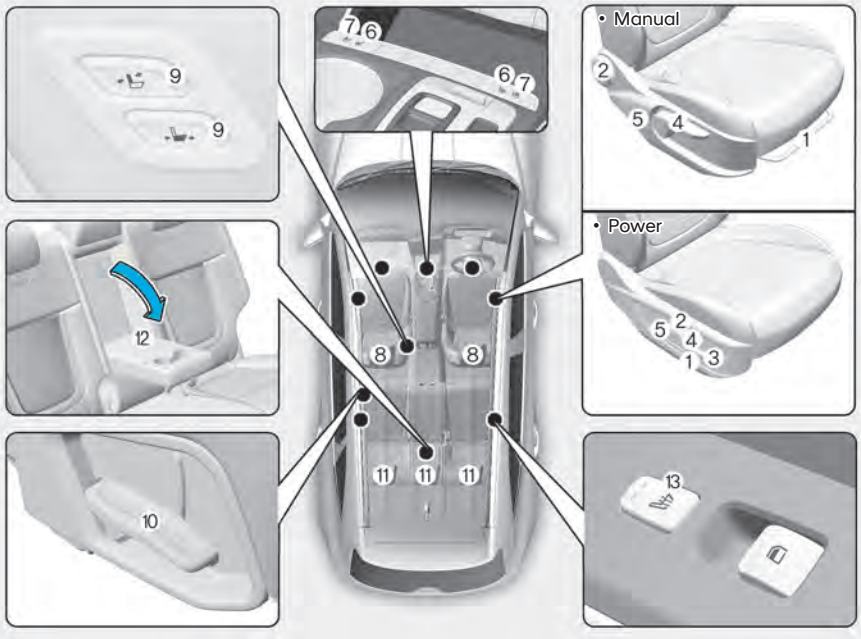
Rear seats

(10) Seatback angle and folding
(11) Headrest
(12) Armrest*
(13) Seat warmer *

* : if equipped

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 3 2020-09-24 7:57:02

■ Right-Hand drive type



The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

ONX4EH030001R

Front seats

(1) Forward and rearward
(2) Seatback angle
(3) Seat cushion angle*
(4) Seat cushion height
(5) Lumbar support (Driver's seat)*
(6) Seat warmer*
(7) Air ventilation seat*
(8) Headrest
(9) (9) Walk-in switch *

Rear seats

(10) Seatback angle and folding
(11) Headrest
(12) Armrest*
(13) Seat warmer *

* : if equipped

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 4 2020-09-24 7:57:02

Safety precautions

Adjusting the seats so that you are sitting in a safe and comfortable position plays an important role for the safety of the driver and passengers, along with seat belts and air bags when in an accident.

WARNING

Do not use a cushion that reduces friction between the seat and the passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop.

Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate properly.

Air bags

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Sitting too close to an air bag greatly increases the risk of injury in the event the air bag inflates. Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating air bag, take the following precautions:

- **Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible maintaining the ability to control the vehicle.**
- **Adjust the front passenger seat as far to the rear as possible.**
- **Hold the steering wheel by the rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.**
- **NEVER place anything or anyone between you and the air bag.**
- **Do not allow the front passenger to place feet or legs on the dashboard to minimize the risk of leg injuries.**

Seat belts

Always fasten your seat belt before starting any trip. At all times, passengers should sit upright and be properly restrained. Infants and small children must be restrained in appropriate Child Restraint Systems. Children who have outgrown a booster seat and adults must be restrained using the seat belts.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat belt:

- **NEVER use one seat belt for more than one occupant.**
- **Always position the seatback upright with the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips.**
- **NEVER allow children or small infants to ride on a passenger's lap.**
- **Do not route the seat belt across your neck, across sharp edges, or reroute the shoulder strap away from your body.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to become caught or jammed.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 5 2020-09-24 7:57:03

Front seats

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so that you can easily control the steering wheel, foot pedals and controls on the instrument panel.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat:

- **NEVER attempt to adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Do not place anything under the front seats. Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, causing an accident.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position and proper locking of the seatback.**
- **Do not place a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may exit out of the lighter causing a fire.**
- **Use extreme caution when picking up small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the center console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.**
- **If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful while adjusting the front seat position.**
- **Make sure that the seat is locked in place after the adjustment. If not, the seat might move unexpectedly resulting in an accident.**

CAUTION

To prevent injury:

- **Do not adjust your seat while wearing your seat belt. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on your abdomen.**
- **Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms while the seat is moving.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 6 2020-09-24 7:57:03

Manual adjustment

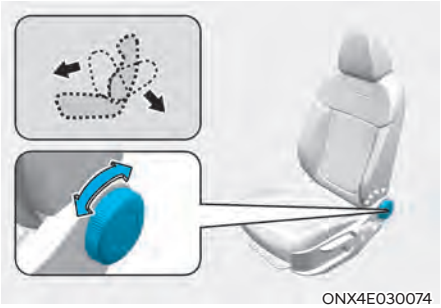


ONX4E030073

Forward and rearward adjustment

To move the seat forward or rearward:

1. Pull up the seat slide adjustment lever and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place. Move forward and rearward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.



ONX4E030074

Seatback angle

To recline the seatback:

1. Roll the seatback knob rearward.
2. Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback to the position you desire.
3. Release the knob and make sure the seatback is locked in place.

Reclining seatback

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and/or air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 7 2020-09-24 7:57:03

WARNING

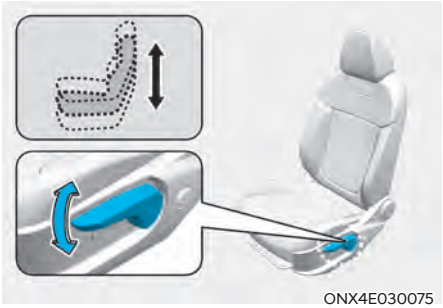
NEVER ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.

Drivers and passengers should ALWAYS sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. When the seatback is reclined, the shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be snug against your chest. Instead, it will be in front of you. During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.

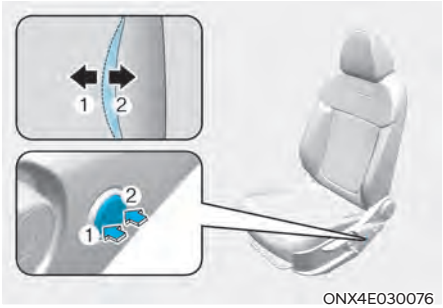


ONX4E030075

Seat cushion height

To change the height of the seat cushion:

- Push down the lever several times, to lower the seat cushion.
- Pull up the lever several times, to raise the seat cushion.



ONX4E030076

Lumbar support (for driver's seat, if equipped)

- The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch.
- Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 8 2020-09-24 7:57:03

Power adjustment (if equipped)

WARNING

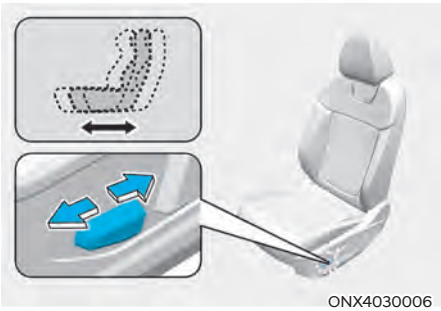
NEVER allow children in the vehicle unattended. The power seats are operable when the vehicle is turned off.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seats:

- **Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has been adjusted as far forward or rearward as possible.**
- **Do not adjust the seats longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.**
- **Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.**

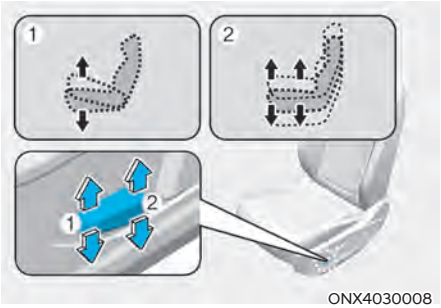
Forward and rearward adjustment



ONX4030006

To move the seat forward or rearward:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.



ONX4030008

Seat cushion tilt (1, if equipped)

To change the angle of the front part of the seat cushion:

Push the front portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the front part of the seat cushion.

Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seat cushion height (2)

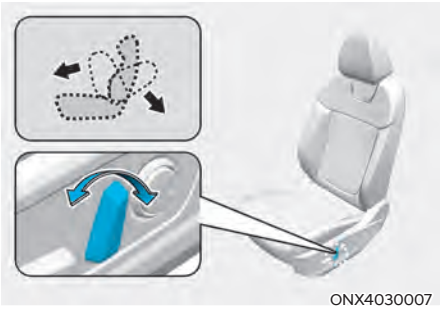
To change the height of the seat cushion:

Push the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the height of the seat cushion.

Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 9 2020-09-24 7:57:03

Seatback angle adjustment



To recline the seatback:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seatback reaches the desired position.

Reclining seatback

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

WARNING

NEVER ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.

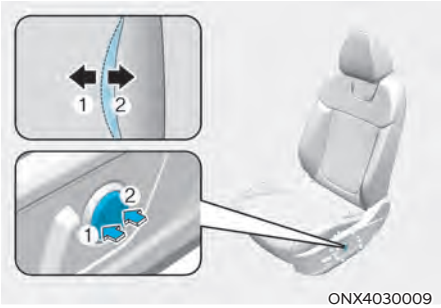
Driver and passengers should ALWAYS sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. When the seatback is reclined, the shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be snug against your chest. Instead, it will be in front of you. During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 10 2020-09-24 7:57:03

Lumbar support (for driver's seat, if equipped)



ONX4030009

To adjust the lumbar support:

1. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once the lumbar support reaches the desired position.

Walk-in switch (if equipped)



OTM030042

The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the front passenger seat.

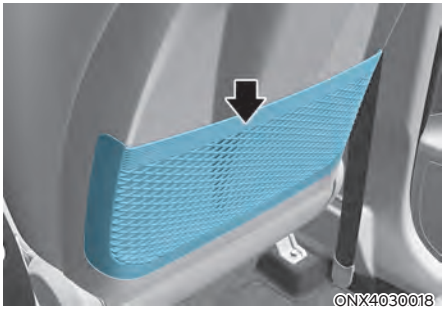
- Sliding forward or rearward:

  Press the switch (1) or (2) to move the front passenger seat forward or rearward.
- Seatback angle:

  Press the switch (3) or (4) to recline the front passenger seatback forward or rearward.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 11 2020-09-24 7:57:03

Seatback pocket



The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front seatbacks.

CAUTION

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure occupants.

Rear seats

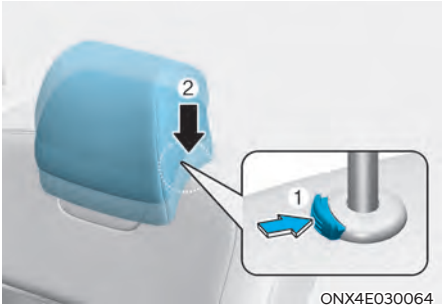
Folding the rear seat

The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

WARNING

- **Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback while the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop.**
- **Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 12 2020-09-24 7:57:03



ONX4E030064

To fold down the rear seatback:

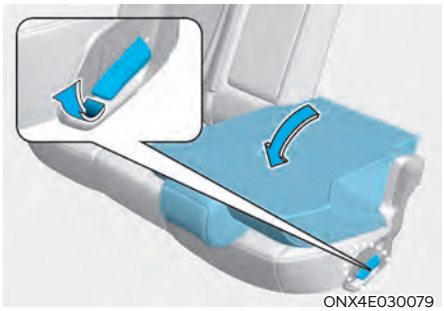
1. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
2. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position by pushing and holding the release button (1) and pushing down on the headrest (2).


ONX4E030083

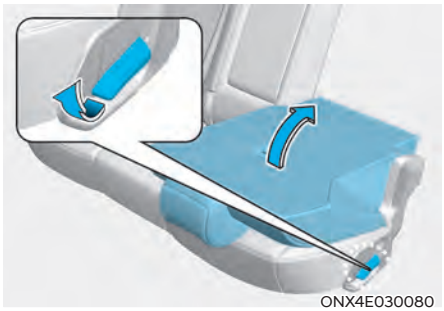
3. Locate the seatbelt toward the outboard position before folding down the seatback. If not, the seatbelt system may be interfered by the seatback.



ONX4E030084


ONX4E030079

4. Put out the belt from guide (1) and pull up the seatback folding lever (2), then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.


ONX4E030080

5. To use the rear seat, lift and push the seatback rearward by lifting up the front portion of the folding lever.

   Push the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.

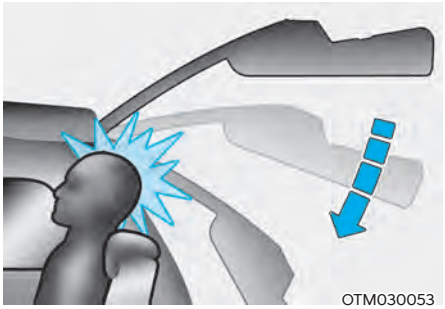
003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 13 2020-09-24 7:57:03

WARNING

When returning the rear seatback from a folded to an upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. In an accident or sudden stop, the unlocked seatback could allow cargo to move forward with great force and enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit vehicle occupants in a collision causing serious injury or death.


OTM030053

WARNING

If the tailgate is pushed down to close it when a passenger's head is not against a properly adjusted headrest or a tall person is seated, the tailgate may hit the occupant's head, which could cause injury.

WARNING

When returning the rear seatback from a folded to an upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. In an accident or sudden stop, the unlocked seatback could allow cargo to move forward with great force and enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit vehicle occupants in a collision causing serious injury or death.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 14 2020-09-24 7:57:04

WARNING

Make sure the engine is off, the gear shifted to P (Park), and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the gear is inadvertently shifted to another position.

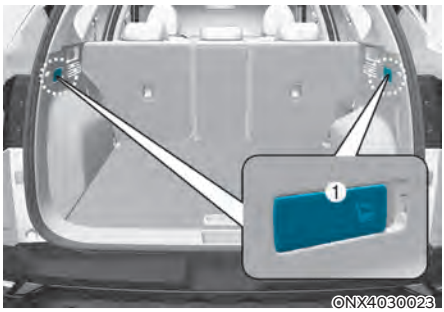
CAUTION

- **Be careful when loading cargo through the rear passenger seats to prevent damage to the vehicle interior.**
- **When cargo is loaded through the rear passenger seats, ensure the cargo is properly secured to prevent it from moving while driving.**

WARNING

Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.

Seatback remote folding/unfolding (luggage compartment) (if equipped)



Push the rear seats back folding switch (1) located in the both sides in the tailgate.

WARNING

Rear seat folding

Do not fold the rear seats, if passengers, pets or luggage are in the rear seats.

It may cause injury or damage to passengers, pets, luggage.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 15 2020-09-24 7:57:04

Armrest



The armrest is located in the center of the rear seat. Pull the armrest down from the seatback to use it.

Rear occupant alert system (rear seats) (if equipped)

This function alerts driver when you get out of a car with the passengers remain in the rear seats.

If you open the door with the passengers in the rear seats, the warning message appear on the cluster panel to give a first warning. If the movement is detected in the rear seats after you lock all doors, 2nd warning alerts you.

Make sure you check the passenger in the rear seats before you get off.

For more information, refer to the "Rear occupant alert system" in chapter 3.

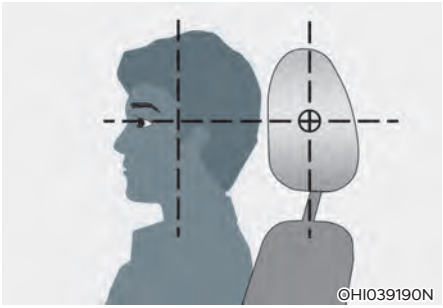
Headrest

The vehicle's front and rear seats have adjustable headrests. The headrests provide comfort for passengers, but more importantly they are designed to help protect passengers from whiplash and other neck and spinal injuries during an accident, especially in a rear impact collision.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death in an accident, take the following precautions when adjusting your headrests:

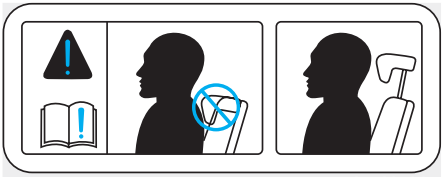
- **Always properly adjust the headrests for all passengers BEFORE starting the vehicle.**
- **NEVER let anyone ride in a seat with the headrest removed or reversed.**



- **Adjust the headrests so the middle of the headrest is at the same height as the height of the top of the eyes.**
- **NEVER adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat when the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Adjust the headrest as close to the passenger's head as possible. Do not use a seat cushion that holds the body away from the seatback.**
- **Make sure the headrest locks into position after adjusting it.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 16 2020-09-24 7:57:04

WARNING



OTL035061

When sitting on the rear seat, do not adjust the height of the headrest to the lowest position.

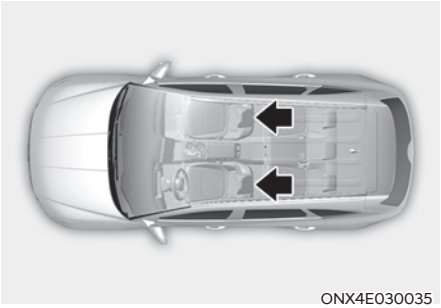
CAUTION

When there is no occupant in the rear seats, adjust the height of the headrest to the lowest position. The rear seat headrest can reduce the visibility of the rear area.

NOTICE

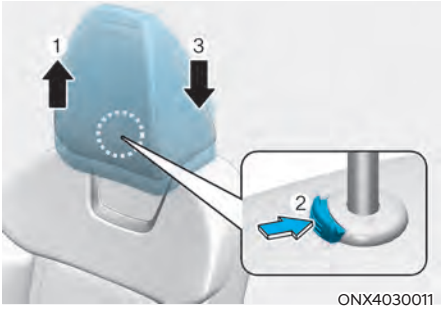
To prevent damage, NEVER hit or pull on the headrests.

Front seat headrests



ONX4E030035

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with adjustable headrests for the passengers safety and comfort.



ONX4030011

Adjusting the height up and down

To raise the headrest:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

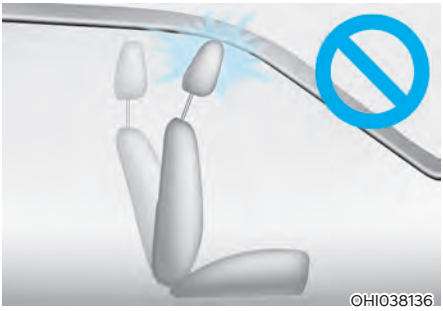
003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 17 2020-09-24 7:57:04


ONX4030010

Forward and rearward adjustment (if equipped)

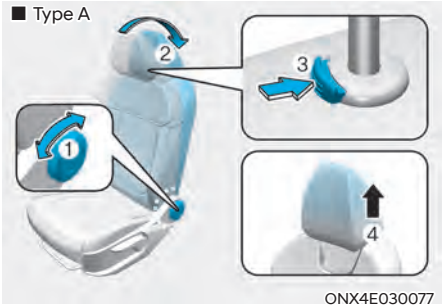
The headrest may be adjusted forward to 3 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent. To adjust the headrest to it's furthest rearwards position, pull it fully forward to the farthest position and release it.

NOTICE


OHI038136

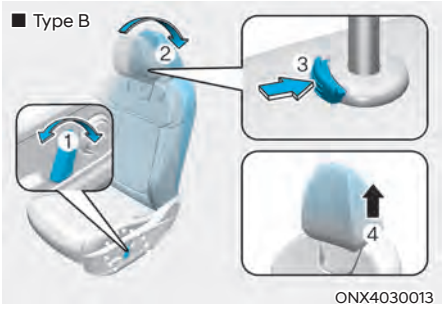
If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.

■ Type A



ONX4E030077

■ Type B



ONX4030013

Removal/Reinstall

To remove the headrest:

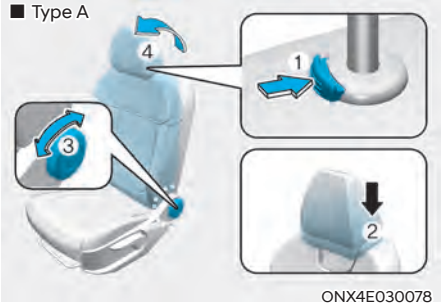
1. Recline the seatback (2) with using the seatback angle knob or switch (1).
2. Raise the headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) while pulling the headrest up (4).

WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to travel in a seat with the headrest removed.

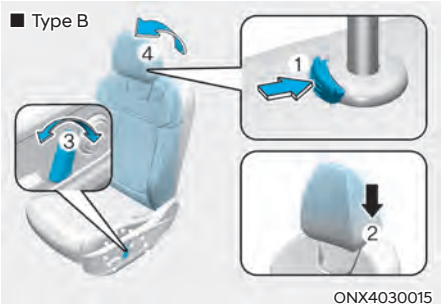
003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 18 2020-09-24 7:57:04

■ Type A



ONX4E030078

■ Type B



ONX4030015

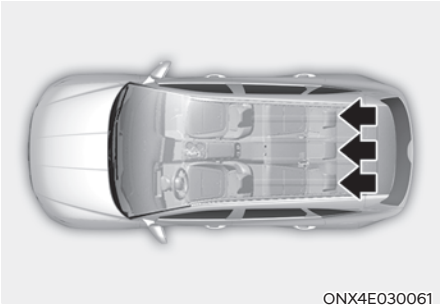
To reinstall the headrest :

1. Recline the seatback.
2. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes while pressing the release button (1).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.
4. Recline the seatback (4) with the seatback angle knob or switch (3).

WARNING

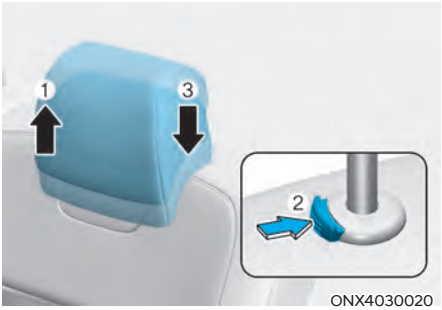
Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

Rear seat headrests



ONX4E030061

The rear seats are equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the passenger's safety and comfort.



ONX4030020

Adjusting the height up and down

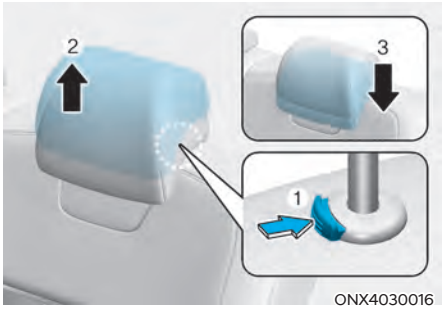
To raise the headrest:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 19 2020-09-24 7:57:05



Removal/Reinstallation

To remove the headrest:

1. Raise the headrest as far as it can go.
2. Press the headrest release button (1) while pulling the headrest up (2).

To reinstall the headrest:

1. Put the headrest poles into the holes (3) while pressing the release button (1).
2. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

Seat warmers (if equipped)

Seat warmers are provided to warm the seats during cold weather.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the seat warmers OFF.

WARNING

The seat warmers can cause a SERIOUS BURN, even at low temperatures and especially if used for long periods of time.

Passengers must be able to feel if the seat is becoming too warm so they can turn it off, if needed.

People who cannot detect temperature change or pain to the skin should use extreme caution, especially the following types of passengers:

- **Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients.**
- **People with sensitive skin or who burn easily.**
- **Fatigued individuals.**
- **Intoxicated individuals.**
- **People taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness.**

WARNING

NEVER place anything on the seat that insulates against heat when the seat warmer is in operation, such as a blanket or seat cushion. This may cause the seat warmer to overheat, causing a burn or damage to the seat.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 20 2020-09-24 7:57:05

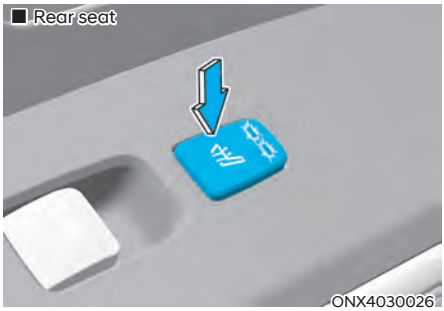
NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seat warmers and seats:

- **Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or gasoline to clean the seats.**
- **Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers.**
- **Do not change the seat cover. It may damage the seat warmer.**



■ Rear seat



While the engine is running, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the OFF position.

- Manual temperature control

  Each time you push the switch, the temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows:

  - Front seat

    OFF → HIGH (▮▮▮)
    ↑ ↓
    LOW (▮) ← MIDDLE (▮▮)

  - Rear seat

    OFF → HIGH (▮▮) → LOW (▮)
    ↑ ↓

- Automatic temperature control

  The seat warmer starts to automatically control the seat temperature in order to prevent low-temperature burns after being manually turned ON.

  - Front seat

    OFF → HIGH (▮▮▮)
    ↑ ↓ 30 MIN
    LOW (▮) ← MIDDLE (▮▮)
    60 MIN

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 21 2020-09-24 7:57:05

- Rear seat

OFF → HIGH ( ) → LOW ( )
30 MIN

If HIGH temperature is manually selected again, the temperature will be controlled automatically.

- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn OFF.
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is ON.
- • Auto Comfort Control (for driver's seat) (if equipped)
  - The seat warmer automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature and the set climate control temperature when the engine is running. If the seat warmer switch is pushed, the seat warmer will have to be controlled manually.

    To use this function, it must be activated from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.
  - The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is ON. However, if the Auto Comfort Control function is ON, the driver's seat warmer will turn on and off depending on the ambient temperature and the set climate control temperature.

For more details, refer to the separately supplied Infotainment manual with your vehicle.

Information

With the seat warmer switch in the ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.

Air ventilation seat (if equipped)



The air ventilation seats are provided to cool the front seats by blowing air through small vent holes on the surface of the seat cushions and seatbacks.

When the operation of the air ventilation seat is not needed, keep the switches in the OFF position.

While the engine is running, push the switch to cool the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat (if equipped).

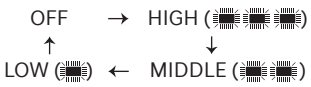
NOTICE

To prevent damage to the air ventilation seats:

- **Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or gasoline to clean the seats.**
- **Avoid spilling liquids on the surface of the front seats and seatbacks; this may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.**
- **Do not place materials such as plastic bags or newspapers under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents to not work properly.**
- **Do not change the seat covers. It may damage the air ventilation seat.**
- **If the air vents do not operate, restart the vehicle. If there is no change, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 22 2020-09-24 7:57:05

- Each time you push the switch, the airflow changes as follows:



- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the air ventilation seat operating, the operation will turn OFF.
- The air ventilation seats defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is placed to the ON position.
- Auto Comfort Control (for driver's seat) (if equipped)
  - The air ventilation seats automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature and the set climate control temperature when the engine is running. If the air ventilation seats switch is pushed, the air ventilation seats will have to be controlled manually.

    To use this function, it must be activated from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.
  - The air ventilation seats defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is ON. However, if the Auto Comfort Control function is ON, the air ventilation seats will turn on and off depending on the ambient temperature and the set climate control temperature.

For more details, refer to the separately supplied Infotainment manual with your vehicle.

Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) (if equipped)

Rear Occupant Alert is provided to help prevent the driver from leaving the vehicle with the rear passenger left in the vehicle.

System setting

To use Rear Occupant Alert, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Rear Occupant Alert

For detailed information, scan the QR code in the separately supplied simple manual.

System operation

- First alert

  When you open the front door after opening and closing the rear door and turning off the engine, the 'Check rear seats' warning message appears on the cluster.
- Second alert

  After the first alert, the second alert operates when any movement is detected in the vehicle after the driver's door is closed and all the doors are locked. The horn will sound for approximately 25 seconds. If the system continues to detect a movement, the alert operates up to 8 times.

  Unlock the doors with the smart key to stop the alert.
- The system detects movement in the vehicle for 8 hours after the door is locked.
- The second alert is activated only after the prior activation of the first alert.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 23 2020-09-24 7:57:05

System precautions

- Make sure that all the windows are closed. If the window is open, the alert may operate by the sensor detecting an unintended movement (e.g. wind or bugs).
- ■ Cluster



OTM048165L

■ Steering wheel



OCN7050079

  If you do not want to use Rear Occupant Alert, press the OK button on the steering wheel when the first alert is displayed on the cluster. Doing so will deactivate the second alert one time.
- An alert can occur if the there is an impact on the roof.
- If boxes or objects are stacked in the vehicle, the system may not detect the boxes or objects. Or, the alert may operate if the boxes or objects fall off.
- The sensor may not operate normally if the senor is obscured by foreign substances.
- The alert may operate if movement in the driver or passenger seat is detected.
- The alert may operate with the doors locked due to car wash or surrounding vibration or noise.
- If the vehicle is started remotely (if equipped with Remote Start), inside movement detection will stop.

WARNING

Even if your vehicle is equipped with Rear Occupant Alert, always make sure to check the rear seat before you leave the vehicle.

Rear Occupant Alert may not operate when:

- **Movement does not continue for a certain period of time or the movement is small.**
- **The rear passenger is covered with an object such as a blanket.**
- **Always be cautious of the passenger's safety as the detection function and second alert may not operate depending on the surrounding environment and certain conditions.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 24 2020-09-24 7:57:05

SEAT BELTS

This section describes how to use the seat belts properly. It also describes some of the things not to do when using seat belts.

Seat belt safety precautions

Always fasten your seat belt and make sure all passengers have fastened their seat belts before starting any trip. Air bags are designed to supplement the seat belt as an additional safety device, but they are not a substitute. Most countries require all occupants of a vehicle to wear seat belts.

WARNING

Seat belts must be used by ALL passengers whenever the vehicle is moving. Take the following precautions when adjusting and wearing seat belts:

- **Children under the age of 13 should be properly restrained in the rear seats.**
- **Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated. If a child is seated in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and properly restrain them in the seat.**
- **NEVER allow an infant or child to be carried on an occupant's lap.**
- **NEVER ride with the seatback reclined when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Do not allow children to share a seat or seat belt.**
- **Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.**
- **Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.**
- **Do not use the seat belt if it is twisted. A twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.**
- **Do not use a seat belt if the webbing or hardware is damaged.**
- **Do not latch the seat belt into the buckles of other seats.**
- **NEVER unfasten the seat belt while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle interfering with the seat belt latch mechanism. This may prevent the seat belt from fastening securely.**
- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**

WARNING

Damaged seat belts and seat belt assemblies will not operate properly. Always replace:

- **Frayed, contaminated, or damaged webbing.**
- **Damaged hardware.**
- **The entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in an accident, even if damage to webbing or assembly is not apparent.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 25 2020-09-24 7:57:06

Seat belt warning light

Driver's seat belt warning

■ Instrument cluster



1GQA2083

As a reminder to the driver, the driver's seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of seat belt fastening.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20km/h (12 mph) or stop, the corresponding warning light will illuminate.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive 20km/h (12 mph) and faster, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds.

When the seat belt is unfastened during driving, the warning light will illuminate when the speed is under 20 km/h (12 mph).

When the speed is 20 km/h (12 mph) and faster, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds.

Front passenger's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20km/h (12 mph) or stop, the corresponding warning light will illuminate.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive 20km/h (12 mph) and faster, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds.

When the seat belt is fastened during driving, the warning light will illuminate when the speed is under 20 km/h (12 mph). When the speed is 20 km/h (12 mph) and faster, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds.

WARNING

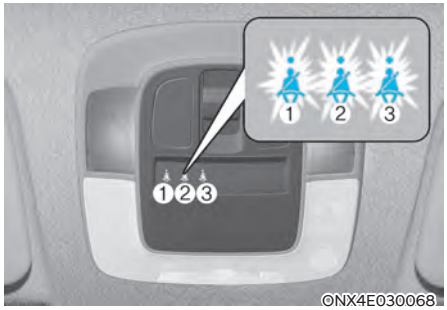
Riding in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger to properly be seated as instructed in this manual.

Information

- **Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 26 2020-09-24 7:57:06

Rear passenger's seat belt warning (if equipped)



For rear left and right side seat

As a reminder to the rear passenger, the rear passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20km/h (12 mph), the corresponding warning light will continue to illuminate until you fasten the seat belt.

If you continue to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive 20km/h (12 mph) and faster, the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

When the seat belt is unfastened during driving, the warning light will illuminate when the speed is under 20 km/h (12 mph).

When the speed is 20 km/h (12 mph) and faster, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds.

WARNING

Riding in an improper position adversely affects the rear passenger's seat belt warning system.

It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger to properly be seated as instructed in this manual.

Information

- **Although the rear side passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The rear side passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage, laptop or other electronic device is placed on the rear side passenger seat.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 27 2020-09-24 7:57:06

For rear center seat

As a reminder to the rear passenger, the rear passenger's seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 70 seconds.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20km/h (12 mph), the corresponding warning light will continue to illuminate for approximately 70 seconds.

If you continue to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive over 20km/h (12 mph), the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

If the rear door is opened or closed under 10 km/h, warning light and warning sound does not work even if driving over 20 km/h (12 mph).

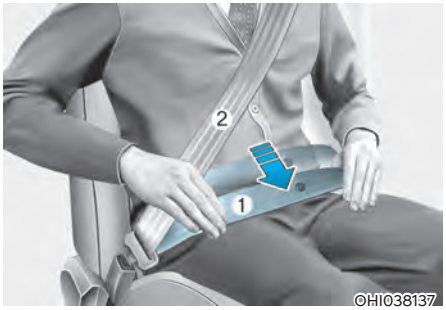
Seat belt restraint system

Lap/shoulder belt



To fasten your seat belt:

Pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.



You should place the lap belt (1) portion across your hips and the shoulder belt (2) portion across your chest.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and move with you.

If there is a sudden stop or impact, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 28 2020-09-24 7:57:06

NOTICE

If you are not able to smoothly pull enough of the seat belt out from the retractor, firmly pull the seat belt out and release it. After release, you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

WARNING



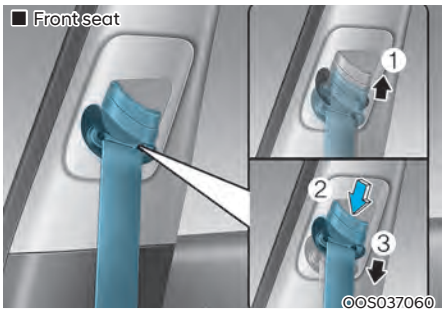
Improperly positioned seat belts may increase the risk of serious injury in an accident. Take the following precautions when adjusting the seat belt:

- **Position the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across your hips, not on your waist, so that it fits snugly. This allows your strong pelvic bones to absorb the force of the crash, reducing the chance of internal injuries.**
- **Position one arm under the shoulder belt and the other over the belt, as shown in the illustration.**
- **Always position the shoulder belt anchor into the locked position at the appropriate height.**
- **Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.**

Height adjustment

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of the four different positions for maximum comfort and safety.

The shoulder portion should be adjusted so it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door, not over your neck.

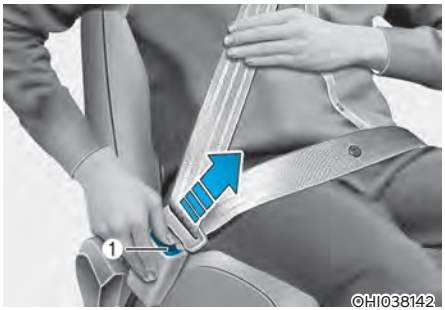


To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) while pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 29 2020-09-24 7:57:06

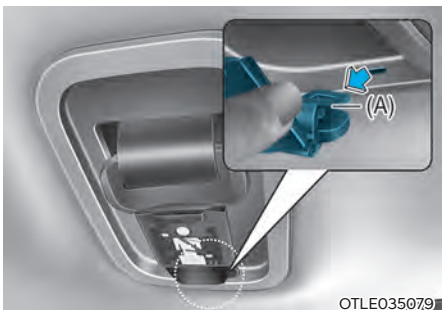


To release your seat belt:

Press the release button (1) in the locking buckle.

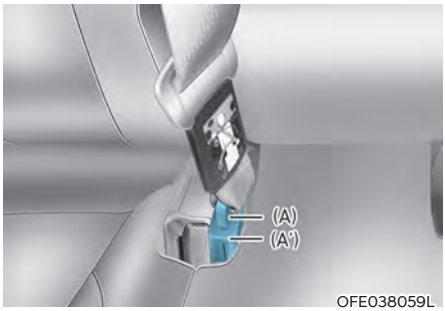
When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor. If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

Rear center seatbelt (3-point rear center seat belt)

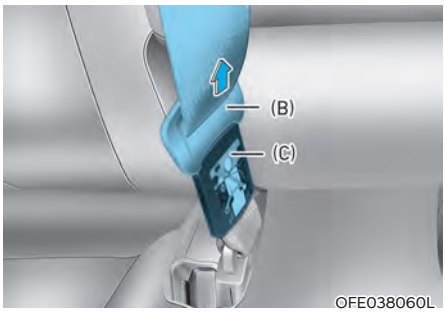


To fasten your seatbelt:

1. Extract the tongue plate (A) from the hole on the belt assembly cover.

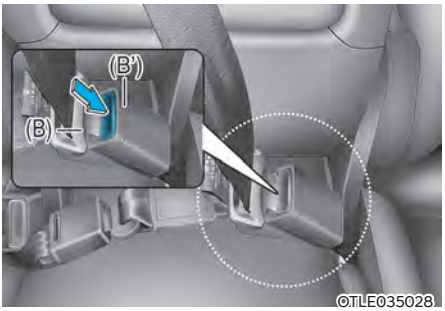


2. Insert the tongue plate (A) into the buckle (A') until an audible “click" is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Make sure the belt is not twisted.



3. Pull out the tongue plate (B) from the pocket (C).

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 30 2020-09-24 7:57:06

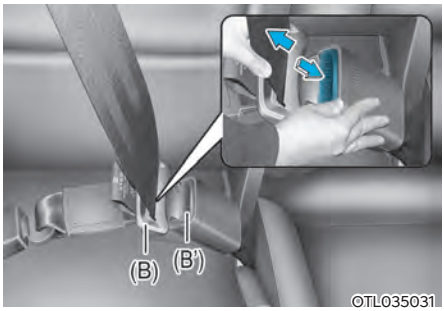


4. Pull the tongue plate (B) and insert it into the buckle (B') until an audible "click" is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

When using the rear center seat belt, the buckle with the "CENTER" mark must be used.

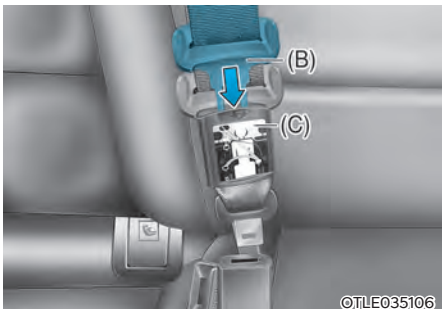
Information

If you are not able to pull out the safety belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. After release, you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.



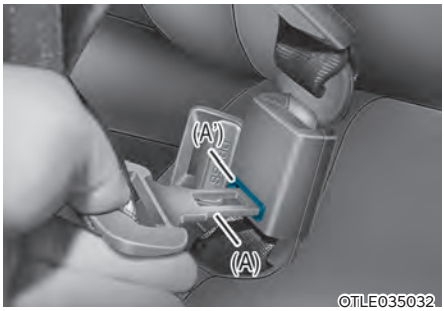
To release your seatbelt:

1. Press the release button on the buckle (B') and remove the tongue plate (B).

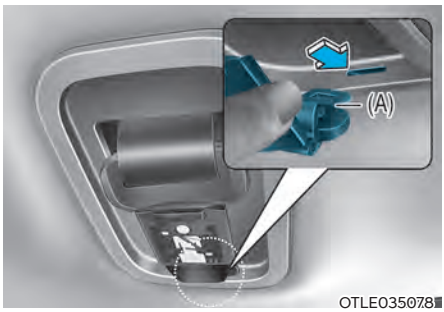


2. Push the pocket (C) to the end of the webbing.
3. Insert the tongue plate (B) into the pocket (C)

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 31 2020-09-24 7:57:07



4. To retract the rear center seatbelt, insert the tongue plate into the web release hole (A'). Pull up on the seat belt web and allow the webbing to retract automatically.



5. Insert the tongue plate (A) into the hole on the belt assembly cover.

Pre-tensioner seat belt



[1] : Retractor pre-tensioner seat belt
Front seat and rear seat (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's and rear passengers Pre-tensioner Seat Belts (Retractor Pre-tensioner). The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal or side collision(s). The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal or side collision(s) is severe enough, together with the air bags.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position.

In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner system activates, the load limiter inside the retractor pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt (if equipped with load limiter).

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 32 2020-09-24 7:57:07

WARNING

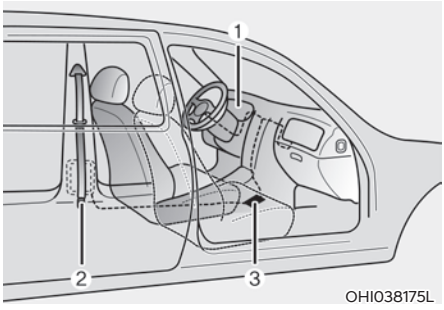
- **Always wear your seat belt and sit properly in your seat.**
- **Do not use the seat belt if it is loose or twisted. A loose or twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.**
- **Do not place anything near the buckle. This may adversely affect the buckle and cause it to function improperly.**
- **Always replace your pre-tensioners after activation or an accident.**
- **NEVER inspect, service, repair or replace the pre-tensioners yourself. We recommend that you have the pre-tensioners inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Do not hit the seat belt assemblies.**

WARNING

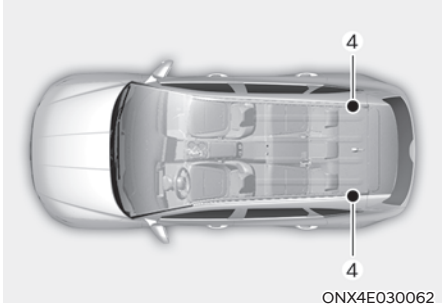
Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated. When the pre-tensioner seat belt mechanism deploys during a collision, the pre-tensioner can become hot and can burn you.

CAUTION

Body work on the front area of the vehicle may damage the pre-tensioner seat belt system. Therefore, we recommend the system to be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.



OHI038175L



ONX4E030062

The Pre-Tensioner Seat Belt System consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration above:

(1) SRS air bag warning light
(2) Retractor pre-tensioner
(3) SRS control module
(4) Rear Retractor pre-tensioner (if equipped)

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 33 2020-09-24 7:57:07

NOTICE

The sensor that activates the SRS control module is connected with the pre–tensioner seat belts. The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument cluster will illuminate for approximately 3~6 seconds after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, and then it should turn off.

If the pre-tensioner is not working properly, the warning light will illuminate even if the SRS air bag is not malfunctioning. If the warning light does not illuminate, stays illuminated or illuminates when the vehicle is being driven, we recommend the pre-tensioner seat belts and/or SRS control module be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

Information

- **Pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in certain frontal or side collisions or rollover situations (if equipped with rollover sensor).**
- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is non-toxic, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be inhaled for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**

Additional seat belt safety precautions

Seat belt use during pregnancy

The seat belt should always be used during pregnancy. The best way to protect your unborn child is to protect yourself by always wearing the seat belt.

Pregnant women should always wear a lap-shoulder seat belt. Place the shoulder belt across your chest, routed between your breasts and away from your neck. Place the lap belt below your belly so that it fits SNUGLY across your hips and pelvic bone, under the rounded part of the belly.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to an unborn child during an accident, pregnant women should NEVER place the lap portion of the seat belt above or over the area of the abdomen where the unborn child is located.

Seat belt use and children

Infant and small children

Most countries have Child Restraint System laws which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint System devices, including booster seats. The age at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling. Infant and Child Restraint System must be properly placed and installed in a rear seat.

For more information refer to the “Child Restraint Systems” section in this chapter.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 34 2020-09-24 7:57:07

WARNING

ALWAYS properly restrain infants and small children in a Child Restraint System appropriate for the child's height and weight.

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to a child and other passengers, NEVER hold a child in your lap or arms when the vehicle is moving. The violent forces created during an accident will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior of the vehicle.

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any Child Restraint System, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standard of your country.

The Child Restraint System must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the Child Restraint System for this information. Refer to "Child Restraint Systems" section in this chapter.

Larger children

Children under age 13 and who are too large for a booster seat should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. A seat belt should lie across the upper thighs and be snug across the shoulder and chest to restrain the child safely. Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. In the event of an accident, children are afforded the best safety restrained by a proper Child Restraint System in the rear seats.

If a larger child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, the child must be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the center of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck, they need to be returned to an appropriate booster seat in the rear seat.

WARNING

- **Always make sure larger children's seat belts are worn and properly adjusted.**
- **NEVER allow the shoulder belt to contact the child's neck or face.**
- **Do not allow more than one child to use a single seat belt.**

Seat belt use and injured people

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. Consult a physician for specific recommendations.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 35 2020-09-24 7:57:07

One person per belt

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

Do not lie down

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and/or air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly.

During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seat back is reclined, the greater the chance for the passenger's hips to slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck to strike the shoulder belt.

WARNING

- **NEVER ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.**
- **Driver and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.**

Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

Periodic inspection

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 36 2020-09-24 7:57:07

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (CRS)

Our recommendation: Children always in the rear

WARNING

Always properly restrain children in the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when riding in the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

Children under age 13 should always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have regulations which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of your country.

Child Restraint System (CRS)

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the seat of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

WARNING

- **Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**
- **Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.**
- **Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.**
- **After an accident, we recommend a HYUNDAI dealer to check the Child Restraint System, seat belts, ISOFIX anchorages and top-tether anchorages.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 37 2020-09-24 7:57:07

Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

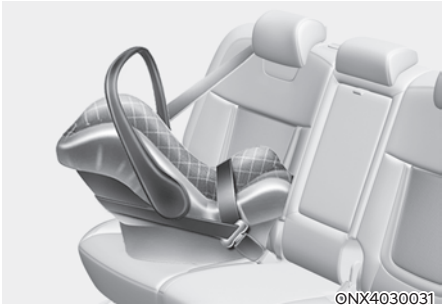
- Make sure the Child Restraint System has a label certifying that it meets applicable Safety Standards of your country.

  A Child Restraint System may only be installed if it was approved in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R44 or ECE-R129.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

Child Restraint System types

There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems: rearward-facing, forward-facing and booster Child Restraint Systems.

They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.



Rearward-facing Child Restraint System

A rearward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the Child Restraint Systems and reduce the stress to the fragile neck and spinal cord.

All children under the age of one year must always ride in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. There are different types of rearward-facing Child Restraint Systems: infant-only Child Restraint Systems can only be used rearward-facing. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Keep using Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as children fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 38 2020-09-24 7:57:07



Forward-facing Child Restraint System

A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

Booster seats

A booster seat is a Child Restraint System designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie comfortable across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie comfortable across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 39 2020-09-24 7:57:07

Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)

WARNING

Before installing your Child Restraint System always:

Read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

Failure to follow all warnings and instructions could increase the risk of the SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if an accident occurs.

WARNING

If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System, the headrest of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.

After selecting a proper Child Restraint System for your child and checking that the Child Restraint System fits properly on the seating position, there are three general steps for a proper installation:

- **Properly secure the Child Restraint System to the vehicle.** All Child Restraint Systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the ISOFIX top-tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage and/or with the support leg.
- **Make sure the Child Restraint System is firmly secured.** After installing a Child Restraint System to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. A Child Restraint System secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected.

  When installing a Child Restraint System, adjust the vehicle seat and seatback (up and down, forward and rearward) so that your child fits in the Child Restraint System in a comfortable manner.
- **Secure the child in the Child Restraint System.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the Child Restraint System according to the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

CAUTION

A Child Restraint System in a closed vehicle can become very hot. To prevent burns, check the seating surface and buckles before placing your child in the Child Restraint System.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 40 2020-09-24 7:57:08

Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems (CRS)according to UN regulations

(Information for use by vehicle users and CRS manufacturers)

- Yes : Suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- No : Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- "-" : Not applicable
- The table is based on LHD vehicle. Except for the front passenger seat, the table is valid for RHD vehicle.For RHD vehicle front passenger seat, please use information for the seating position number 3.

CRS categories		Seating positions						
		1	2	3		4	5	6
				Airbag ON	Airbag Off			
Universal belted CRS	All mass groups	-	-	No	Yes[1)] F, R	Yes F, R	Yes F, R	Yes F, R
i-size CRS	ISOFIX CRF : F2, F2X, R1, R2	-	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
Carry-cot (ISOFIX lateral facing CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: L1, L2	-	-	No	No	No	No	No
ISOFIX infant* CRS (* : ISOFIX baby CRS)	ISOFIX CRF : R1	-	-	No	No	Yes R	No	Yes R
ISOFIX toddler CRS - small	ISOFIX CRF : F2,F2X, R2,R2X	-	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
ISOFIX toddler CRS – large* (* : not booster seats)	ISOFIX CRF : F3,R3	-	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
Booster Seat – reduced Width	ISO CRF : B2	-	-	No	Yes[1)]	Yes	Yes	Yes
Booster Seat – full Width	ISO CRF : B3	-	-	No	Yes[1)]	Yes	Yes	Yes

Note[1)] : To install Universal CRS, 1st row passenger seat back should be at its most upright position

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 41 2020-09-24 7:57:08

Seat Number	Position in the vehicle	Seating positions
1	Front left	
2	Front center	
3	Front right	
4	2nd row left	
5	2nd row center	
6	2nd row right	

✳ If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a CRS, the headrest of the seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed

✳ Never place a rearward facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

Recommended CRS for Vehicle according to UN regulations (For Europe)

Mass group	Name	Manufacturer	Type of Fixation	ECE Approval No.
Group 0+ / I	BABY-SAFE 2 i-SIZE and BABY-SAFE i-SIZE BASE	Britax Romer	ISOFIX with support leg, rearward facing	R129/00 - E1 – 000008
Group I	Duo Plus	Britax Romer	ISOFIX and top-tether	R44/04 - E1 – 04301133
Group II	KidFix2 R	Britax Romer	ISOFIX and vehicle belt, using CRS lap belt guide	R44/04 - E1 – 04301304
Group III	Junior III	Graco	Vehicle belt	R44/04 – E11 – 03.44.164 R44/04 – E11 – 03.44.165

CRS Manufacturer information (For Europe)

Britax : http://www.britax.com

Graco : http://www.gracobaby.com

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 42 2020-09-24 7:57:08

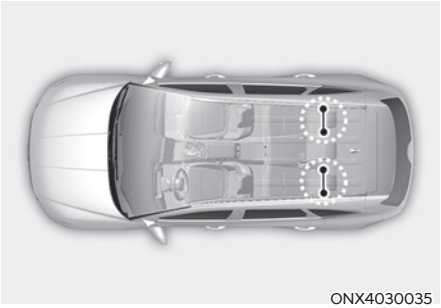
ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children

The ISOFIX system holds a Child Restraint System during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the Child Restraint System easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the Child Restraint System to the rear seats.

ISOFIX anchorages are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that will accommodate a Child Restraint System with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, you must have a Child Restraint System with ISOFIX attachments.

The Child Restraint System manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the Child Restraint System with its attachments for the ISOFIX anchorages.



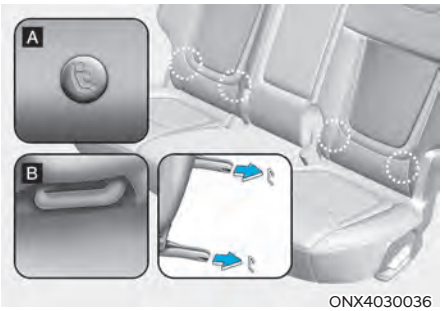
ONX4030035

ISOFIX anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration.

WARNING

Do not attempt to install a Child Restraint System using ISOFIX anchorages in the rear center seating position. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for this seat. Using the outboard seat anchorages, for the CRS installation on the rear center seating position, can damage the anchorages.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 43 2020-09-24 7:57:08



ONX4030036

[A] : ISOFIX Anchorage Position Indicator
(Type A- , Type B-),
[B] : ISOFIX Anchorage

ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions, indicated by the symbols.

In addition, ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the front passenger seat outboard seating positions. (if equipped)

Securing a Child Restraint System with the "ISOFIX Anchorage System"

To install an i-Size or ISOFIX-compatible Child Restraint System in either of the rear outboard seating positions and the front passenger outboard seating positions (if equipped):

1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX anchorages.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the Child Restraint System and the ISOFIX anchorages.
3. Place the Child Restraint System on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the ISOFIX anchorages according to the instructions provided by the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
4. Follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System's manufacturer for proper installation and connection of the ISOFIX attachments on the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages.

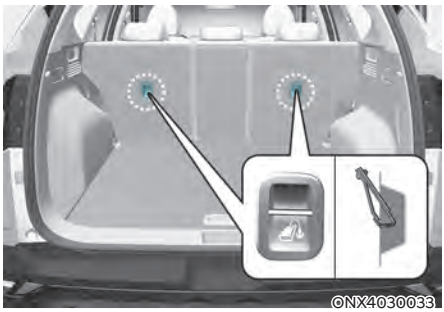
003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 44 2020-09-24 7:57:08

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.**
- **To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. Children can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.**
- **NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single anchorage. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Following an accident, we recommend to have the ISOFIX system inspected by your HYUNDAI dealer. An accident can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the Child Restraint System.**

Securing a Child Restraint System seat with "Top-tether Anchorage" system



Top-tether anchorages for Child Restraint Systems are located on the rear of the seatbacks.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 45 2020-09-24 7:57:08


ONX4030034

1. Route the Child Restraint System top-tether strap over the seatback. Placing the top tether strap, please follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
2. Connect the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchorage, then tighten the top-tether strap according to the instructions of your Child Restraint System's manufacturer to firmly attach the Child Restraint System to the seat.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when installing the top-tether:

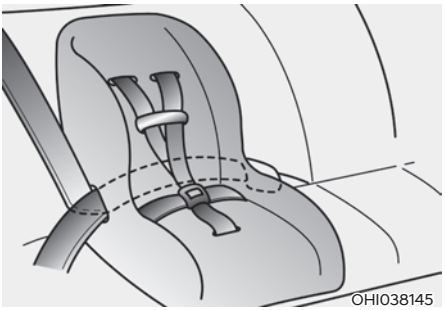
- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.**
- **NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single ISOFIX top-tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Do not attach the top-tether to anything other than the correct top-tether anchorage. It may not work properly if attached to something else.**
- **Child Restraint System anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted Child Restraint System.**

  Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 46 2020-09-24 7:57:08

Securing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

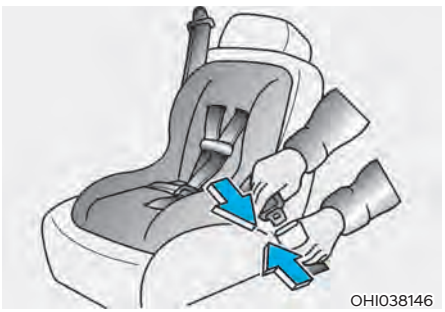
When not using the ISOFIX system, all Child Restraint Systems must be secured to a rear seat with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.


OHI038145

Installing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

To install a Child Restraint System on the rear seats, do the following:

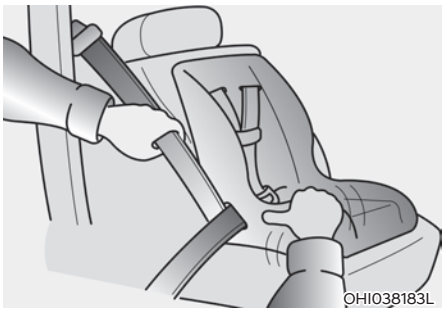
1. Place the Child Restraint System on a rear seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the Child Restraint System, following the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.


OHI038146

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound.

Information

Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.


OHI038183L

3. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the Child Restraint System while feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
4. Push and pull on the Child Restraint System to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.

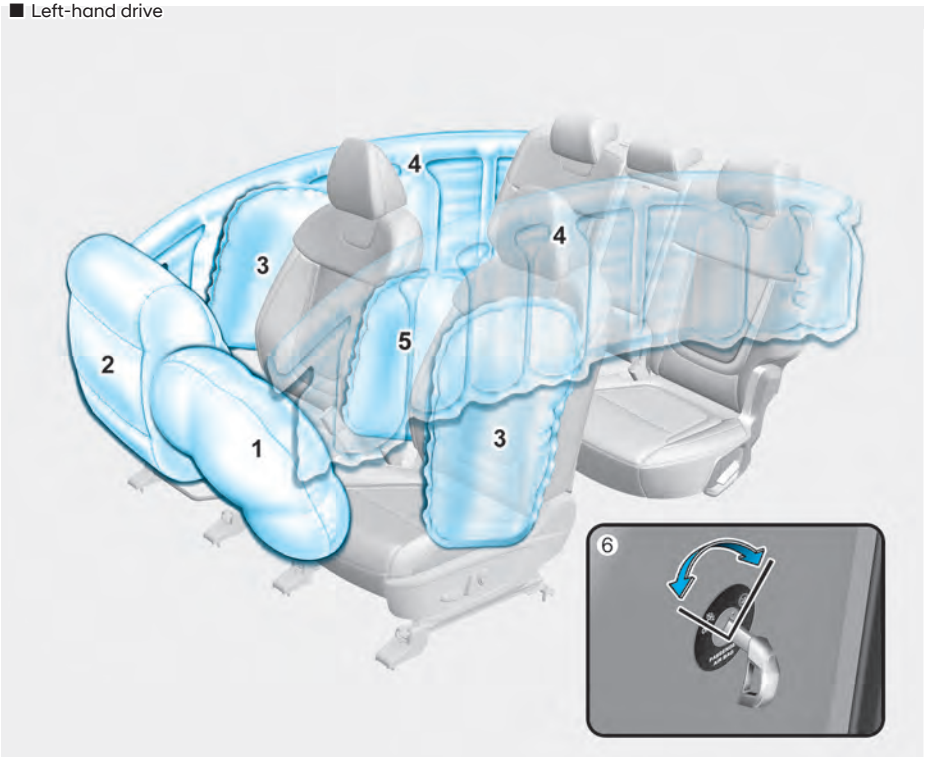
If your Child Restraint System manufacturer recommends the use of a top-tether with the lap/shoulder belt, see page 3-45.

To remove the Child Restraint System, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the Child Restraint System and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 47 2020-09-24 7:57:08

AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Left-hand drive



The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

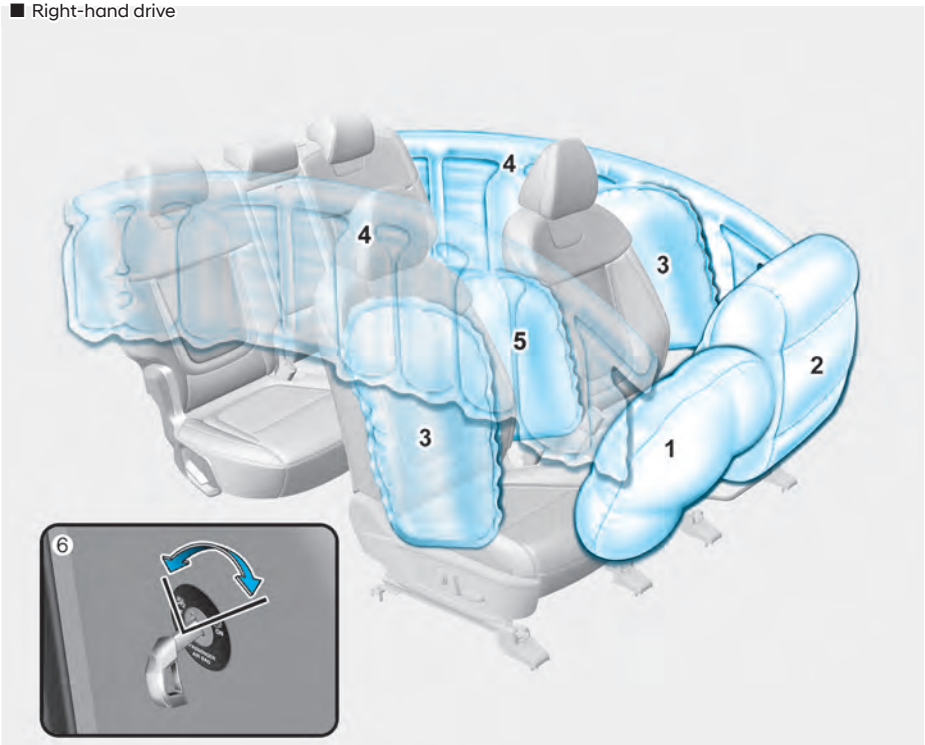
ONX4E030054

1. Driver's front air bag
2. Passenger's front air bag
3. Side air bag*
4. Curtain air bag*
5. Front center air bag *
6. Front passenger air bag ON/OFF switch *

* : if equipped

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 48 2020-09-24 7:57:09

■ Right-hand drive



The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

ONX4E030054R

1. Driver's front air bag
2. Passenger's front air bag
3. Side air bag *
4. Curtain air bag *
5. Front center air bag *
6. Front passenger air bag ON/OFF switch *

* : if equipped

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 49 2020-09-24 7:57:09

The vehicles are equipped with a Supplemental Air Bag System for the driver's seat and front passenger's seats.

The front air bags are designed to supplement the three-point seat belts. For these air bags to provide protection, the seat belts must be worn at all times when driving.

You can be severely injured or killed in an accident if you are not wearing a seat belt. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, but do not replace them. Also, air bags are not designed to deploy in every collision. In some accidents, the seat belts are the only restraint protecting you.

WARNING

AIR BAG SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

ALWAYS use seat belts Child Restraint Systems - every trip, every time, everyone! Even with air bags, you can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if you are improperly belted or not wearing your seat belt when the air bag inflates.

NEVER place a child in any Child Restraint System or booster seat in the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

An inflating air bag could forcefully strike the infant or child causing serious or fatal injuries.

ABC - Always Buckle Children under age 13 in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.

All occupants should sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the vehicle is turned off. If an occupant is out of position during an accident, the rapidly deploying air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.

You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags or lean against the door or center console.

Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 50 2020-09-24 7:57:09

Where are the air bags?

Driver's and passenger's front air bags

■ Driver's front air bag



■ Passenger's front air bag



Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The SRS consists of air bags which are located in the center of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The air bags are labeled with the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the pad covers.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and front passengers with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from inflating front air bags, take the following precautions:

- **Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **Never lean against the door or center console.**
- **Do not allow the front passenger to place their feet or legs on the dashboard.**
- **No objects (such as crash pad cover, mobile phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield glass, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**
- **Do not attach any objects on the front windshield and inside mirror.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 51 2020-09-24 7:57:09



Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

The purpose of the switch is to disable the passenger's front air bag in order to transport occupants who are at increased risk for air bag-related injury due to age, size, or medical condition.



To deactivate the passenger's front air bag:

Insert the key or a similar rigid device into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the OFF position. The passenger air bag OFF indicator () will illuminate and stay on until the passenger's front air bag is reactivated.



To reactivate the passenger's front air bag:

Insert the key or a similar rigid device into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the ON position. The passenger air bag ON indicator () will illuminate.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 52 2020-09-24 7:57:09

Information

The passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the ignition switch is placed in the ON position.

WARNING

Never allow an adult passenger to ride in the front passenger seat when the passenger air bag OFF indicator is illuminated. During a collision, the air bag will not inflate if the indicator is illuminated. Turn on the passenger's front air bag or have your passenger move to the rear seat.

WARNING

If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch malfunctions, the following conditions may occur:

- **The air bag warning light () on the instrument cluster will illuminate.**
- **The passenger air bag OFF indicator () will not illuminate and the ON indicator () will come on. The passenger's front air bag will inflate in a frontal impact even though the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.**
- **We recommend that an authorized HYUNDAI dealer inspect the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and the SRS air bag system as soon as possible.**

Side air bags and front center air bag (if equipped)

■ Side air bag

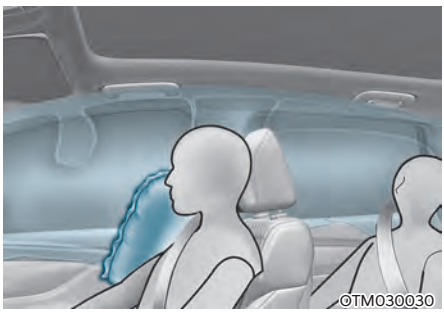


ONX4030039

■ Front center air bag (Driver's seat)



ONX4E030065



OTM030030

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front row seat. Additionally, a front center air bag is provided in the inboard side of the driver seatback. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 53 2020-09-24 7:57:09

The side air bags and front center air bag are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the front center air bag, side and/or curtain air bags and pre-tensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The side air bags and front center air bag are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

WARNING

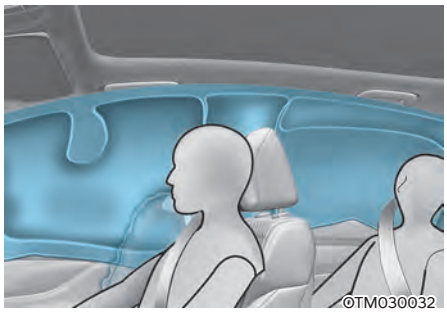
To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating side air bag and front center air bag, take the following precautions:

- **Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.**
- **Hold the steering wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.**
- **Do not use any accessory seat covers. This could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**
- **Do not hang other objects except clothes. In an accident it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury especially when air bag is inflated.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.**
- **Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side air bag inflates.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bags.**
- **Do not cause impact to the doors when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position as this may cause the side air bags to inflate.**
- **If the seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 54 2020-09-24 7:57:09

Curtain air bags (if equipped)





Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and impact.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the side and/or curtain air bags and pre-tensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

WARNING

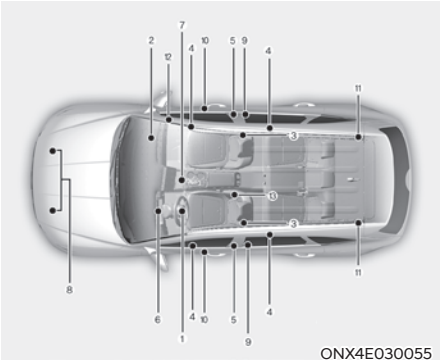
To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating curtain air bag, take the following precautions:

- **All seat occupants must wear seat belts at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Properly secure Child Restraint System as far away from the door as possible.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, roof side rail.**
- **Do not hang other objects except clothes, especially hard or breakable objects.**

  In an accident, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.
- **Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.**
- **Do not open or repair the side curtain air bags.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 55 2020-09-24 7:57:10

How does the air bags system operate?



(1) Driver's front air bag module
(2) Passenger's front air bag module
(3) Side air bag modules*
(4) Curtain air bag modules*
(5) Front retractor pre-tensioner
(6) Air bag warning light
(7) SRS control module (SRSCM)/ Rollover sensor*
(8) Front impact sensors
(9) Side impact sensors (acceleration)*
(10) Side pressure sensors (pressure)*
(11) Rear retractor pre-tensioner*
(12) Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch*
(13) Front center air bag module*

* : if equipped

The SRSCM continually monitors all SRS components while the ignition switch is ON to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

SRS warning light

The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) air bag warning light on the instrument panel displays the air bag symbol depicted in the illustration. The system checks the air bag electrical system for malfunctions. The light indicates that there is a potential problem with your air bag system, which could include your side and/or curtain air bags used for rollover protection (if equipped with rollover sensor).

WARNING

If your SRS malfunctions, the air bag may not inflate properly during an accident increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

If any of the following conditions occur, your SRS is malfunctioning:

- **The light does not turn on for approximately three to six seconds when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately three to six seconds.**
- **The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the engine is running.**

We recommend that an authorized HYUNDAI dealer inspect the SRS as soon as possible if any of these conditions occur.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 56 2020-09-24 7:57:10

During a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration. If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will inflate the front air bags, at the time and with the force needed.

The front air bags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which seat belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the side air bags help provide protection in the event of a side impact or rollover by supporting the side upper body area.

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) when the ignition switch is in the ON position or approximately within 3 minutes after ignition off.
- Air bags inflate in the event of certain frontal or side collisions to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate. Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle impacts during a collision. The determining factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant. It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In addition to inflating in serious side collisions, vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side and/or curtain air bags will inflate if the sensing system detects a rollover.

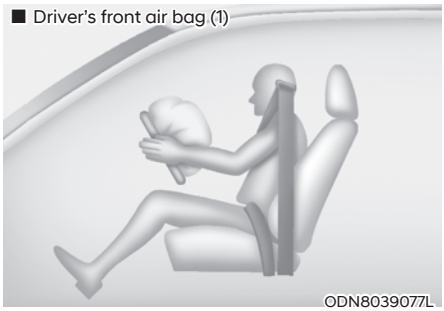
  When a rollover is detected, curtain air bags will remain inflated longer to help provide protection from ejection, especially when used in conjunction with the seat belts. (if equipped with a rollover sensor)
- To help provide protection, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or lifethreatening injuries and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

  However, the rapid air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- There are even circumstances under which contact with the air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the air bag.

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. The greatest risk is sitting too close to the air bag. An air bag needs space to inflate. It is recommended that drivers sit as far as possible between the center of the steering wheel and the chest while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 57 2020-09-24 7:57:10

■ Driver's front air bag (1)



ODN8039077L

When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

■ Driver's front air bag (2)

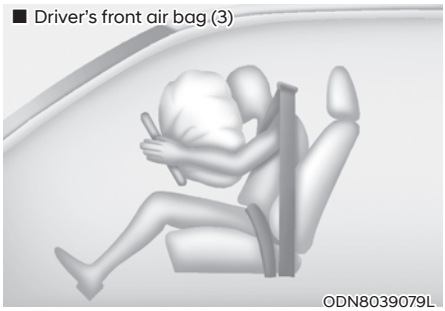


ODN8039078L

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers allows full inflation of the air bags.

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the front passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

■ Driver's front air bag (3)



ODN8039079L

■ Passenger's front air bag



ODN8039080L

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

WARNING

To prevent objects from becoming dangerous projectiles when the passenger's air bag inflates:

- **Do not install or place any objects (drink holder, CD holder, stickers, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box where the passenger's air bag is located.**
- **Do not install a container of liquid air freshener near the instrument cluster or on the instrument panel surface.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 58 2020-09-24 7:57:10

What to expect after an air bag inflates

After a frontal or side air bag inflates, it will deflate very quickly. Air bag inflation will not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer. Curtain air bags may remain partially inflated for some time after they deploy.

WARNING

After an air bag inflates, take the following precautions:

- **Open your windows and doors as soon as possible after impact to reduce prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder released by the inflating air bag.**
- **Do not touch the air bag storage area's internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated. The parts that come into contact with an inflating air bag may be very hot.**
- **Always wash exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and mild soap.**
- **We recommend that an authorized HYUNDAI dealer replace the air bag immediately after deployment. Air bags are designed to be used only once.**

Noise and smoke from inflating air bag

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and may produce smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing because of the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. The powder may aggravate asthma for some people. If you experience breathing problems after an air bag deployment, seek medical attention immediately.

Though the smoke and powder are nontoxic, they may cause irritation to the skin, eyes, nose, throat, etc. If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and seek medical attention if the symptoms persist.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 59 2020-09-24 7:57:11

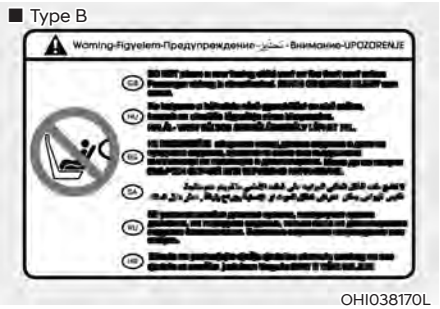
Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat

■ Type A



OHI038169L

■ Type B



OHI038170L

Never install a Child Restraint System in the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated

WARNING

NEVER use a rearward facing Child Restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?

There are certain types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection. These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts. Damage to the vehicle indicates a collision energy absorption, and is not an indicator of whether or not an air bag should have inflated.

Air bag collision sensors

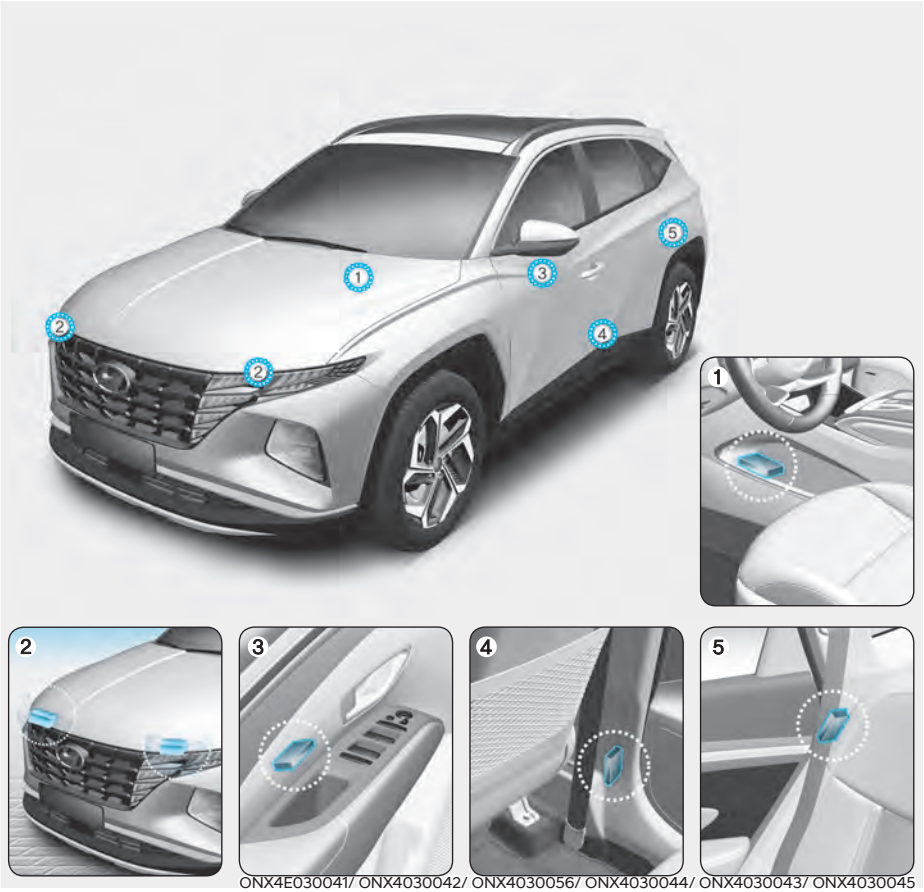
WARNING

To reduce the risk of an air bag deploying unexpectedly and causing serious injury or death:

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bags or sensors are installed.**
- **Do not perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. If the location or angle of the sensors is altered, the air bags may deploy when they should not or may not deploy when they should.**
- **Installing bumper guards with non-genuine Hyundai or non-equivalent parts may adversely affect the collision and airbag deployment performance.**

  To ensure correct function of the airbag system we recommend to replace the bumper with genuine Hyundai part or the equivalent (of the genuine part) specified for your vehicle.
- **Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF or ACC position and wait for 3 minutes when the vehicle is being towed to prevent inadvertent air bag deployment.**
- **We recommend that all air bag repairs are conducted by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 60 2020-09-24 7:57:11



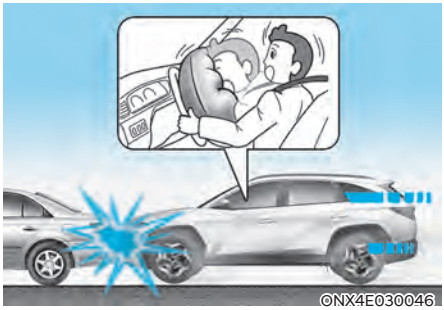
ONX4E030041/ ONX4030042/ ONX4030056/ ONX4030044/ ONX4030043/ ONX4030045

1. SRS control module / Rollover sensor*
2. Front impact sensor
3. Side impact sensor (Pressure)*
4. Side impact sensor (Acceleration)*
5. Side impact sensor (Acceleration)*

* : if equipped

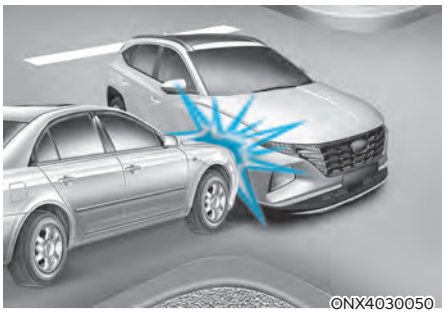
003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 61 2020-09-24 7:57:11

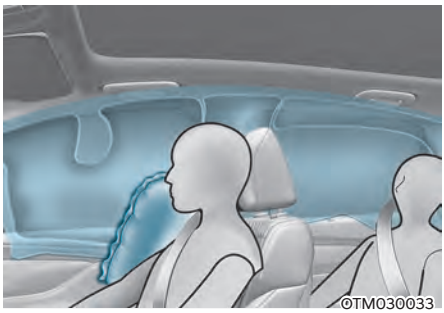
Air bag inflation conditions



Front air bags

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the severity of impact of the front collision.





Side and curtain air bags

Side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the severity, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the driver's and front passenger's air bags are designed to inflate in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

Also, the side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor. (if equipped with rollover sensor)

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 62 2020-09-24 7:57:11

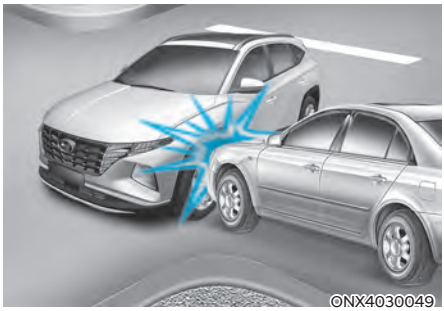
Air bag non-inflation conditions



In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts.

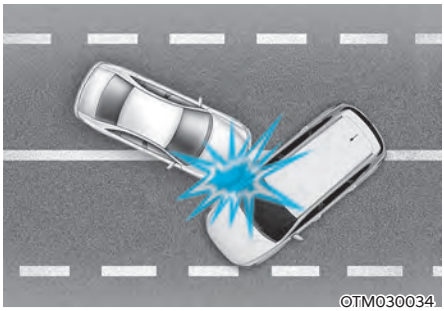


Front air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not provide any additional benefit.



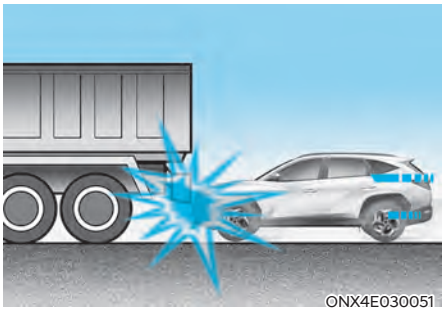
Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move in the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

However, side and curtain air bags and front center air bag may inflate depending on the severity of impact.

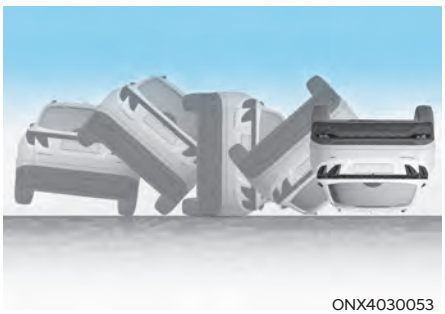


In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 63 2020-09-24 7:57:12


ONX4E030051

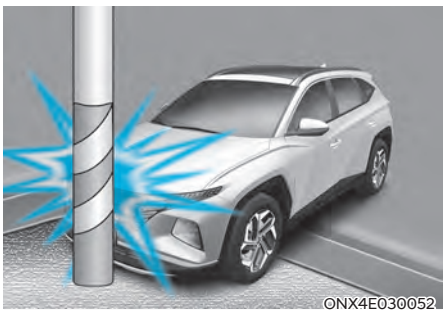
Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this “underride” situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “underride” collisions.


ONX4030053

Front air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

Information

- **Vehicles equipped with rollover sensor**
  The side and curtain air bags may inflate in a rollover situation, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.
- **Vehicles not equipped with rollover sensor**
  The side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.


ONX4E030052

Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated and the collision energy is absorbed by the vehicle structure.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 64 2020-09-24 7:57:12

SRS care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be immediately inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

We recommend any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats and roof rails be performed by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death take the following precautions:

- **Do not attempt to modify or disconnect the SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure.**
- **Do not place objects over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box.**
- **Clean the air bag pad covers with a soft cloth moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **We recommend that inflated air bags be replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions could increase the risk of personal injury.**

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 65 2020-09-24 7:57:12

Additional safety precautions

Passengers should not move out of or change seats while the vehicle is moving. A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or be ejected from the vehicle.

Do not use any accessories on seat belts. Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Do not modify the front seats. Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.

Do not place items under the front seats. Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.

Do not cause impact to the doors. Impact to the doors when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position may cause the air bags to inflate.

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

Air bag warning labels

■ Right-hand drive ■ Left-hand drive



ODN8039057L

Air bag warning labels are attached to alert the passengers of potential risks of the air bag system.

Be sure to read all of the information about the air bags that are installed on your vehicle in this Owner's Manual.

003_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 66 2020-09-24 7:57:12

4. Instrument cluster

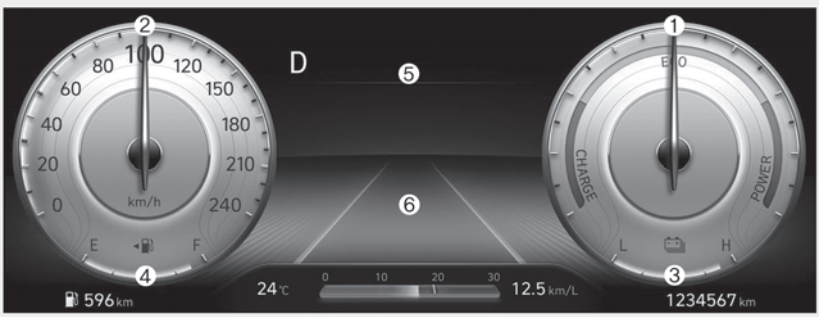
Instrument cluster 4-2
Instrument cluster control 4-3
Instrument panel illumination 4-3
Gauges and meters 4-3
Speedometer 4-3
Power gauge 4-4
Fuel gauge 4-4
Hybrid battery SOC (State of Charge) gauge 4-5
Outside temperature gauge 4-6
Odometer 4-6
Distance to empty 4-7
Fuel economy (for 10.25-inch cluster) 4-7
Icy Road Warning Light 4-8
Transmission shift indicator 4-8
Automatic transmission shift indicator 4-8
Automatic transmission shift indicator in Manual Shift mode (for Europe) 4-9
Warning and indicator lights 4-9
LCD display 4-26
LCD display control 4-26
LCD display modes 4-27
Trip computer mode 4-28
Turn by turn (TBT) mode 4-28
Assist mode 4-28
Master warning group 4-29
User settings mode 4-30
Trip computer (4.2-inch) 4-37
Trip modes 4-37
Trip computer (10.25-inch) 4-39
Trip modes 4-39
Vehicle settings (infotainment system) 4-42
Setting your vehicle 4-42

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

■ 4.2-inch



■ 10.25-inch



The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more information, refer to "Gauges and meters" section in this chapter.

ONX4EH040007/ ONX4H040002

1. Power gauge
2. Speedometer
3. Battery SOC (State of Charge) gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. LCD display (including Trip computer)

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 2 2020-09-24 7:57:28

Instrument cluster control

Instrument panel illumination



OCN7040019L

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination form the User Settings Mode on the LCD display when the ignition switch is on ('Lights → Illumination'). When the vehicle's parking lights or headlamps are on, interior switch illumination intensity and mood lamps are also adjusted.

If your vehicle is equipped with additional navigation, please refer to the infotainment system manual separately supplied.

WARNING

Never adjust the instrument cluster while driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or vehicle damage.

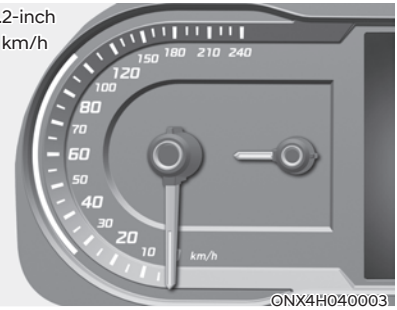
- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, a chime will sound.

Gauges and meters

Speedometer

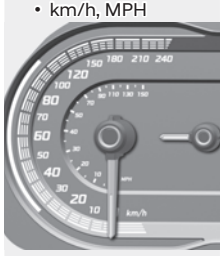
■ 4.2-inch

• km/h



ONX4H040003

• km/h, MPH


ONX4EH040003

• MPH, km/h


ONX4EH040004

■ 10.25-inch

• km/h


OCN7040005

• MPH, km/h


OCN7040005L

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in kilometers per hour (km/h) and/or miles per hour (MPH).

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 3 2020-09-24 7:57:31

Power gauge

■ 4.2-inch



ONX4H040004

■ 10.25-inch



OCN7H040002

The power gauge indicates whether the current driving condition is fuel efficient or not.

- CHARGE : Shows that the energy made by the vehicle is being converted to electrical energy. (Regenerated energy)
- ECO : Shows that the vehicle is being driven in an Eco-friendly manner.
- POWER : Shows that the vehicle is exceeding the Eco-friendly range.

Information

Accordance to the power gauge area the "EV" indicator comes on or off.

- **"EV" indicator ON : Vehicle is driven using the electric motor or the gasoline engine is stopped.**
- **"EV" indicator OFF : Vehicle is driven using the gasoline engine.**

Fuel gauge

■ 4.2-inch

• Type A



ONX4040008

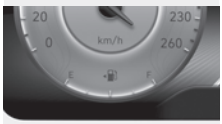
• Type B



ONX4E040008

■ 10.25-inch

• Type A



OTM040012

• Type B



OTM040012L

This gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 4 2020-09-24 7:57:38

Information

- **The fuel tank capacity is given in chapter 2.**
- **The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.**
- **On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.**

WARNING

Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.

You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "0 or E (Empty)" level.

NOTICE

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.

Hybrid battery SOC (State of Charge) gauge

■ 4.2-inch

• Type A



ONX4EH040008

• Type B



ONX4EH040005

■ 10.25-inch

• Type A



OCN7H040003

• Type B



ONX4EH040006

This gauge indicates the remaining hybrid battery power. If the SOC is near the "0 or L (Low)" level, the vehicle automatically operates the engine to charge the battery.

However, if the Service Indicator (HEV) and Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) turn on when the SOC gauge is near the "0 or L (Low)" level, we recommend the vehicle be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

NOTICE

Never try to start the vehicle if the fuel tank is empty. In this condition, the engine cannot charge the high voltage battery of the hybrid system. If you try to start the vehicle when the fuel is empty, the high voltage battery will become discharged and be damaged.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 5 2020-09-24 7:57:42

Outside temperature gauge

■ 4.2-inch



OTM040015

■ 10.25-inch



OTM040013

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°C (1°F).

Note that the temperature indicated on the LCD display may not change as quickly as the outside temperature (there may be a slight delay before the temperature changes.)

You can change the temperature unit from °C to °F ° or F to °C in the Settings menu in the cluster or infotainment system screen :

- Go to Setup → Unit → Temperature unit.

Both the temperature unit on the cluster LCD display and climate control screen will change.

Odometer

■ 4.2-inch



OTM040017

■ 10.25-inch



OTM040019

The odometer indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 6 2020-09-24 7:57:42

Distance to empty

■ 4.2-inch



OTM040018

■ 10.25-inch



OTM040020

- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
- If the estimated distance is below 1 km (1 mi.), the trip computer will display "---" as distance to empty.

Information

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.**
- **The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.**
- **The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 liters (1.5 gallon) of fuel are added to the vehicle.**
- **The distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**

Fuel economy (for 10.25-inch cluster)



OTM040062L

The average fuel economy (1) and instant fuel economy (2) is displayed at the bottom of the cluster.

Automatic reset

To automatically reset the average fuel economy, select between "After Ignition" or "After Refueling" from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 7 2020-09-24 7:57:43

Icy Road Warning Light (if equipped)



OHCR049127L

This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy.When the temperature on the outside temperature gauge is approximately below 4°C (40°F), the Icy Road Warning Light and Outside Temperature Gauge blinks 10 times, and then illuminates. Also, the warning chime sounds 3 times.

Information

If the icy road warning light appears while driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.

Transmission shift indicator

Automatic transmission shift indicator (if equipped)

■ 4.2-inch



OTM040016

■ 10.25-inch



OCN7040013

This indicator informs the current gear engaged.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 8 2020-09-24 7:57:44

Automatic transmission shift indicator in Manual Shift mode (for Europe, if equipped)

■ 4.2-inch



OTM040016L

■ 10.25-inch



OCN7040014

In the manual shift mode, this indicator informs which gear is desired while driving to save fuel.

- Shifting up : ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6
- Shifting down : ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5

For example

3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is recommended (currently the vehicle is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

3: Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is recommended (currently the vehicle is in the 4th, 5th, or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.

Warning and indicator lights

Information

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the engine. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

Seat belt warning light

This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

For more details, refer to “Seat Belts” section in chapter 3.

Air bag warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The air bag warning light illuminates for about 3 ~ 6 seconds and then turns off when all checks have been performed.
- The air bag warning light will remain illuminated if there is a malfunction with the Safety Restraint System (SRS) air bag operation.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 9 2020-09-24 7:57:46

Parking brake & Brake fluid warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The parking brake light illuminates for about 3 seconds and will then turn off once the parking brake is released.
- Whenever the parking brake is applied.
- Whenever the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
- Whenever the regenerative brake does not operate.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required **(For more details, refer to "Brake Fluid" section in chapter 9)**. After adding brake fluid, check all brake components for fluid leaks. If a brake fluid leak is found, or if the warning light remains on, or if the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Dual-diagonal braking system

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking system. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure is required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail while you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

WARNING

Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light

Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 10 2020-09-24 7:57:46

Regenerative brake warning light



This warning light illuminates:

When the regenerative brake does not operate and the brake does not perform well. This causes the Brake Warning light (red) and Regenerative Brake Warning Light (yellow) to illuminate simultaneously.

If this occurs, drive safely and we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

The operation of the brake pedal may be more difficult than normal and the braking distance may increase.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The ABS warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the ABS.

  Note that the hydraulic braking system will still be operational even if there is a malfunction with the ABS.

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light



When the ABS warning and Parking Brake warning lights are on simultaneously, it may indicate a problem with the Electronic Brake Force Distribution system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

If this occurs, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 11 2020-09-24 7:57:46

Information - Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light

When the ABS warning light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or tripmeter may not work. Also, the EPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

Electric Power Steering (EPS) warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The electric power steering Warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the EPS.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorized HYUNDAI dealer or a service station and have the system checked as soon as possible.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The malfunction indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with either the emission control system or the engine or the vehicle powertrain.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

NOTICE

Driving with the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on may cause damage to the emission control system which could affect drivability and/or fuel economy.

NOTICE

- **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power.**

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.
- **If the oil pressure lowers due to insufficient engine oil, etc., the engine oil pressure warning light turns on and an enhanced engine protection system that limits the engine's power is activated. After that, engine warning light turns on if driving repeatedly and continuously.**

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 12 2020-09-24 7:57:46

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light (if equipped)

EPB

This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The EPB warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the EPB.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Information

The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly (This does not indicate malfunction of the EPB).

AUTO HOLD indicator light

AUTO HOLD

This indicator light illuminates:

- [White] When you activate the auto hold system by pressing the AUTO HOLD switch.
- [Green] When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal with the Auto Hold system activated.
- [Yellow] Whenever there is a malfunction with the Auto Hold system.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

For more details, refer to “Auto Hold” section in chapter 6.

Charging system warning light

This warning light illuminates:

When the battery is not being charged while the engine is running. Immediately turn OFF all electrical accessories. Try not to use electrically operated controls, such as the power windows. Keep the engine running.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

Engine oil pressure warning light

If the oil pressure lowers due to insufficient engine oil, etc., the engine oil pressure warning light turns on and an enhanced engine protection system that limits the engine’s power is activated.

If this warning light turns on while driving, drive carefully to the side of the road and stop the vehicle, check the engine oil level, and add if insufficient.

If the engine oil isn’t insufficient, or if the warning light does not turn off even after adding, we recommend to visit an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Driving with the warning light on may cause engine failure.

✳ When oil pressure is restored to an optimal level, the oil pressure warning light and the protection system that limits engine power will turn off. Even if the oil pressure returns to normal, check the engine once again in a safe place.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 13 2020-09-24 7:57:46

NOTICE

- **If the engine does not stop immediately after the Engine Oil Pressure warning light is illuminated, severe damage could result.**
- **If the warning light stays on while the engine is running, it indicates that there may be serious engine damage or malfunction. In this case:**
  1. **Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.**
  2. **Turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level.**
  3. **Start the engine again. If the warning light stays on after the engine is started, turn the engine off immediately. If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

Low fuel level warning light



This warning light illuminates:

When the fuel tank is nearly empty.

Add fuel as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Driving with the Low Fuel Level warning light on or with the fuel level below "0 or E" can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter.

Service warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The service warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then turns off when all checks have been performed.
- When there is a problem with the hybrid vehicle control system or hardware.

When the warning light illuminates while driving, or does not go OFF after starting the vehicle, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Exhaust system (GPF) warning light



- This warning light illuminates, when accumulated soot reaches a certain amount.
- When this warning light illuminates, it may turn off after driving the vehicle at more than 80 km/h (50 mph) for about 30 minutes (above 3rd gear with 1500 ~ 4000 engine rpm).

  If this warning light blinks in spite of the procedure (at this time LCD warning message will be displayed), we recommend that you have the GPF system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

NOTICE

If you continue to drive with the GPF warning light blinking for a long time, the GPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can worsen.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 14 2020-09-24 7:57:47

Overspeed warning light (if equipped)



This warning light blinks:

- When you drive the vehicle more than 120 km/h.
  - This is to prevent you from driving your vehicle with overspeed.
  - The overspeed warning chime also sound for approximately 5 seconds.

Master warning light



This warning light illuminates:

When there is a malfunction in operation in any of the following systems:

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision Warning malfunction (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision Warning radar blocked (if equipped)
- LED headlamp malfunction (if equipped)
- High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control radar blocked (if equipped)
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction

To identify the details of the warning, look at the LCD display.

Low tire pressure warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The low tire pressure warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. (The location of the underinflated tires are displayed on the LCD display.)

For more details, refer to “Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” section in chapter 8.

This warning light remains ON after blinking for approximately 60 seconds, or repeatedly blinks ON and OFF in 3 second intervals:

When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

For more details, refer to “Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” section in chapter 8.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 15 2020-09-24 7:57:47

WARNING

Safe Stopping

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors.**
- **If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

Forward Safety warning light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The Forward Safety warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

For more details, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in chapter 7.

Lane Safety indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- [Green] When the system operating conditions are satisfied.
- [White] When the system operating conditions are not satisfied.
- [Yellow] Whenever there is a malfunction with Lane Keeping Assist.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

For more details, refer to “Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)” section in chapter 7.

4 Wheel Drive (4WD) warning light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

Whenever there is a malfunction with the 4WD system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

For more details, refer to "4 Wheel Drive (4WD)" section in chapter 6.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 16 2020-09-24 7:57:47

LED headlight warning light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The LED headlight warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the LED headlight.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

This warning light blinks:

Whenever there is a malfunction with a LED headlight related part.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

NOTICE

Continuous driving with the LED Headlight warning light on or blinking can reduce LED headlight life.

Ready indicator



This indicator illuminates:

When the vehicle is ready to be driven.

- ON : Normal driving is possible.
- OFF : Normal driving is not possible, or a problem has occurred.
- Blinking : Emergency driving.

When the ready indicator goes OFF or blinks, there is a problem with the system. If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EV mode indicator



This indicator illuminates:

When the vehicle is driven by the electric motor.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 17 2020-09-24 7:57:47

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light (If equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The Electronic Stability Control indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

This indicator light blinks:

While the ESC is operating.

For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" section in chapter 6.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The ESC OFF indicator light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" section in chapter 6.

Immobilizer indicator light (without smart key) (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

When the vehicle detects the immobilizer in the key with the ignition switch in the ON position.

- At this time, you can start the engine.
- The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

This indicator light blinks:

When there is a malfunction with the immobilizer system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Immobilizer indicator light (with smart key) (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:

When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC or ON position.

- Once the smart key is detected, you can start the engine.
- The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:

When the smart key is not in the vehicle.

- If the smart key is not detected, you cannot start the engine.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 18 2020-09-24 7:57:47

This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:

If the smart key is in the vehicle and the Engine Start/Stop button is ON, but the vehicle cannot detect the smart key.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

This indicator light blinks:

When there is a malfunction with the immobilizer system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Downhill Brake Control (DBC) indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you set the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The downhill brake control indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you activate the system by pressing the DBC button.

This indicator light blinks:

When Downhill Brake Control system is operating.

This indicator light illuminates yellow:

Whenever there is a malfunction with Downhill Brake Control system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

For more details, refer to "Downhill Brake Control (DBC)“ section in chapter 6.

Turn signal indicator light



This indicator light blinks:

When you operate the turn signal indicator stalk.

If any of the following occur, there may be a malfunction with the turn signal system.

- The turn signal indicator light illuminates but does not blink
- The turn signal indicator light blinks rapidly
- The turn signal indicator light does not illuminate at all

If any of these conditions occur, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

High beam indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlights are on and in the high beam position
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

Low beam indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

When the headlamps are on.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 19 2020-09-24 7:57:47

Light ON indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

When the tail lights or headlights are on.

Rear fog indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

When the rear fog lights are on.

High Beam Assist indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the high-beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO light position.
- If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, High Beam Assist system will switch the high beam to low beam automatically.

For more details, refer to “High Beam Assist (HBA)” section in chapter 5.

Cruise indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

When the cruise control system is enabled.

For more details, refer to "Cruise Control System" in chapter 7.

SPORT Mode indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates

When you select "SPORT" mode as drive mode.

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 6.

ECO Mode indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates

When you select "ECO" mode as drive mode.

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 6.

SMART Mode indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

When you select "SMART" mode as drive mode.

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 6.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 20 2020-09-24 7:57:48

LCD display messages

Shift to P (for smart key system)

This message is displayed if you try to turn off the vehicle without the gear in the P (Park) position.

If this occurs, the Engine Start/Stop button turns to the ACC position.

Low key battery (for smart key system)

This message is displayed if the battery of the smart key is discharged while changing the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Press START button while turning wheel (for smart key system)

This message is displayed if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed.

You should press the Engine Start/Stop button while turning the steering wheel right and left.

Check steering wheel lock system (for smart key system)

This message is displayed if the steering wheel does not lock normally while the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position.

Press brake pedal to start engine (for smart key system)

This message is displayed if the Engine Start/Stop button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.

You can start the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal and then pressing the Engine Start/Stop button.

Key not in vehicle (for smart key system)

This message is displayed if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you leave the vehicle with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON or Start position.

Always turn off the engine before leaving your vehicle.

Key not detected (for smart key system)

This message is displayed if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop button.

Press START button again (for smart key system)

This message is displayed if you were unable to start the vehicle when the Engine Start/Stop button was pressed.

If this occurs, attempt to start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/ Stop button again.

If the warning message appears each time you press the Engine Start/Stop button, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 21 2020-09-24 7:57:48

Press START button with key (for smart key system)

This message is displayed if you press the Engine Start/Stop button while the warning message “Key not detected” is displayed.

At this time, the immobilizer indicator light blinks.

Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse (for smart key system)

This message is displayed if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.

You need to replace the fuse with a new one before starting the engine.

If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/ Stop button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

12V battery discharging due to additional electrical devices

This message is displayed if the 12V battery voltage is weak due to any non-factory electrical accessories (ex. dashboard camera) while parking. Be careful that the battery is not discharged.

If the message appears after removing the non-factory electrical accessories, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Door, Hood, Tailgate open indicator



ONX4040009

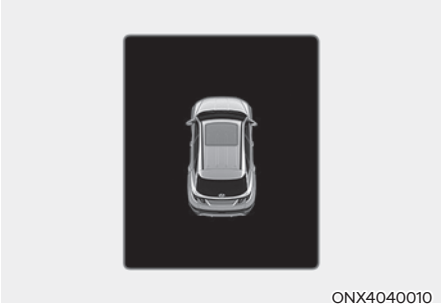
This warning is displayed if any door or hood or tailgate is left open. The warning will indicate which door is open in the display.

CAUTION

Before driving the vehicle, you should confirm that the door/ hood/tailgate is fully closed.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 22 2020-09-24 7:57:49

Sunroof open indicator (if equipped)



ONX4040010

This warning is displayed if you turn off the engine when the sunroof is open.

Close the sunroof securely before leaving your vehicle.

Low tire pressure



ONX4E040019

This warning message is displayed if the tire pressure is low. The corresponding tire on the vehicle will be illuminated.

For more details, refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" section in chapter 8.

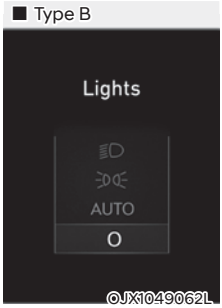
Lights

■ Type A



OJX1049007L

■ Type B



OJX1049062L

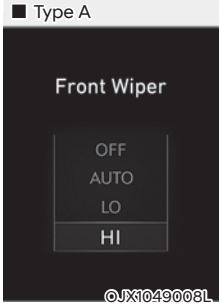
This indicator displays which exterior light is selected using the lighting control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/ Lights display function from the User Settings menu in the cluster LCD display. Select:

- Setup → User settings → Cluster → Wiper/Lights display

Wiper

■ Type A



OJX1049008L

■ Type B



OJX1049063L

This indicator displays which wiper speed is selected using the wiper control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/ Lights display function from the User Settings menu in the cluster LCD display.

Select:

- Setup → User settings → Cluster → Wiper/Lights display

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 23 2020-09-24 7:57:51

Low washer fluid (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.

Have the washer fluid reservoir refilled.

Low fuel

This message is displayed if the fuel tank is almost out of fuel.

When this message is displayed, the low fuel level warning light in the cluster will come on.

It is recommended to look for the nearest fueling station and refuel as soon as possible.

Engine has overheated

This message is displayed when the engine coolant temperature is above 120°C (248°F). This means that the engine is overheated and may be damaged.

If your vehicle is overheated, refer to "Overheating" section in chapter 7.

Check exhaust system (if equipped)

This message is displayed if there is a problem with the GPF system. At this time, the GPF warning light will also blink. If this occurs, we recommend that you have the GPF system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

GPF : Gasoline Particulate Filter

Check headlight (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the headlights are not operating properly. A headlight bulb may need to be replaced.

Make sure to replace the burned out bulb with a new one of the same wattage rating.

Check turn signal (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the turn signal lamps are not operating properly. A lamp may need to be replaced.

Make sure to replace the burned out bulb with a new one of the same wattage rating.

Check brake light (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the stop lamps are not operating properly. A lamp may need to be replaced.

Make sure to replace the burned out bulb with a new one of the same wattage rating.

Check fog light (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the fog lamps are not operating properly. A lamp may need to be replaced.

Make sure to replace the burned out bulb with a new one of the same wattage rating.

Check headlamp LED (if equipped)

This message is displayed if there is a problem with the LED headlamp. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Check Active Air Flap system

This message is displayed in the following situations:

- There is a malfunction with the actuator flap
- There is a malfunction with the actuator air flap controller
- The air flap does not open

When all of the above conditions are fixed, the warning will disappear.

Ready to start driving

This message is displayed when the vehicle is ready to be driven.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 24 2020-09-24 7:57:51

Check regenerative brakes

This message is displayed when the brake performance is low or the regenerative brake does not work properly due to a failure in the brake system.

If this occurs, it may take longer for the brake pedal to operate and the braking distance may become longer.

Stop vehicle and check brakes

This message is displayed when a failure occurs in the brake system.

If this occurs, park the vehicle in a safe location and we recommend that you tow your vehicle to the nearest authorized HYUNDAI dealer and have the vehicle inspected.

Check Hybrid system

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the hybrid system. Refrain from driving when the warning message is displayed.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Stop safely and check Hybrid system

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the hybrid system. The "" indicator will blink and a warning chime will sound until the problem is solved. Refrain from driving when the warning message is displayed.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Check Hybrid system. Do not start engine

This message is displayed when the hybrid battery power (SOC) level is low. A warning chime will sound until the problem is solved. Refrain from driving when the warning message is displayed.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Stop safely and check power supply

This message is displayed when a failure occurs in the power supply system.

If this occurs, park the vehicle in a safe location and recommend you to have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized HYUNDAI dealer and have the vehicle inspected.

Check virtual engine sound system

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS).

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Refuel to prevent Hybrid battery damage

This message is displayed when the fuel tank is nearly empty.

You should refill the fuel tank to prevent hybrid battery damage.

Refill inverter coolant

This message is displayed when the inverter coolant is nearly empty.

You should refill the inverter coolant.

Park with engine On to charge battery

This message is displayed when the hybrid battery power (SOC) level is low.

If this occurs, park the vehicle in a safe location and wait until the hybrid battery is charged.

Start engine to avoid battery discharge

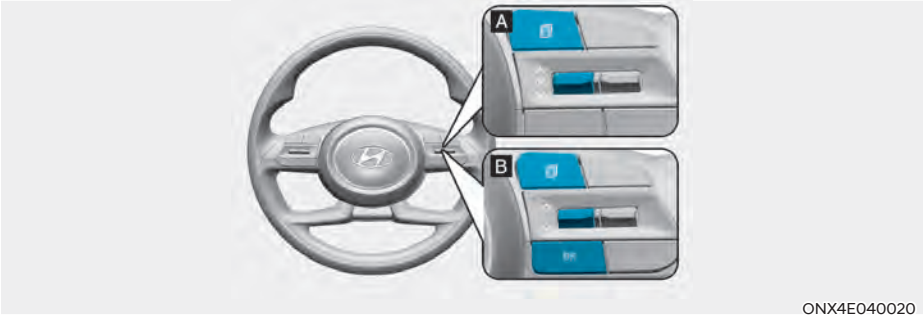
This message is displayed to inform the driver the 12V battery may be discharged if the ignition switch is in ON position (without the indicator ON).

Set the vehicle to the ready () mode to prevent the 12V battery from being discharged.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 25 2020-09-24 7:57:52

LCD DISPLAY

LCD display control



The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons.

Switch	Function
	MODE button for changing modes
∧, ∨	MOVE switch for changing items
OK	SELECT/RESET button for setting or resetting the selected item

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 26 2020-09-24 7:57:52

LCD display modes

Modes	Symbol	Explanation
Trip Computer		This mode displays driving information such as the tripmeter, fuel economy, etc. For more details, refer to "Trip Computer" in this chapter.
Turn By Turn (TBT)		This mode displays the state of the navigation.
Driving Assist		- Smart Cruise Control (SCC) - Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) - Lane Following Assist (LFA) - Driver Attention Warning (DAW) - Driving force distribution (4WD)
User Settings		In this mode, you can change settings of the doors, lamps, etc.
Warning		This mode displays warning messages related to the lamp malfunction, etc. This mode displays information related to the tire pressure (TPMS), the state of driving force distribution.

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 27 2020-09-24 7:57:52

Trip computer mode



ONX4E040022

The trip computer mode displays information related to vehicle driving parameters including fuel economy, tripmeter information and vehicle speed.

For more information, refer to "Trip Computer" in this chapter.

Turn By Turn (TBT) mode



OCN7060149

Turn-by-turn navigation, distance/time to destination information is displayed when Turn by Turn view is selected.

Driving Assist mode



ONX4040013

SCC/HDA/LKA

This mode displays the state of Smart Cruise Control (SCC), Highway Driving Assist (HDA) and Lane Keeping Assist (LKA).

For more details, refer to each system information in chapter 7.



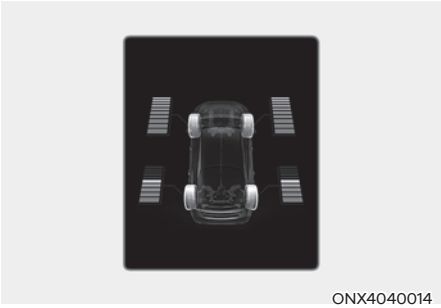
OIG059288L

Driver Attention Warning

This mode displays the state of the Driver Attention Warning (DAW).

For more details, refer to “Driver Attention Warning (DAW)” in chapter 7.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 28 2020-09-24 7:57:53



ONX4040014

Driving force distribution (4WD)

This mode displays information related to 4WD driving force.

For detailed information, refer to the "Four Wheel Drive" in the chapter 6.

Master warning group



OIG059097L

This warning light informs the driver the following situations.

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision Warning malfunction (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision Warning radar blocked (if equipped)
- LED headlamp malfunction (if equipped)
- High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go radar blocked (if equipped)
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction

The Master Warning Light illuminates if one or more of the above warning situations occur.

At this time, a Master Warning icon (⚠) will appear beside the User Settings icon (⚙), on the LCD display.

If the warning situation is solved, the master warning light will be turned off and the Master Warning icon will disappear.



ONX4E040023

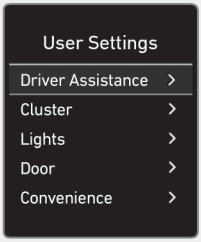
Tire Pressure

This mode displays information related to Tire Pressure.

For more details, refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 8.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 29 2020-09-24 7:57:56

User settings mode



ONX4E040026

In this mode, you can change the settings of the instrument cluster, doors, lamps, etc.

1. Driver Assistance
2. Cluster
3. Lights
4. Door
5. Convenience
6. ECO vehicle
7. Units
8. Reset

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

Shift to P to edit settings

This warning message illuminates if you try to select an item from the User Settings mode while driving.

- For your safety, change the User Settings after parking the vehicle, applying the parking brake and shifting the gear to P (Park).

Quick guide (Help)

This mode provides quick guides for the systems in the User Settings mode.

Select an item, press and hold the OK button.

For more details about each system, refer to this Owner's Manual.

Information

When the infotainment system is applied, only the User's Setting mode on the infotainment system is supported but the User's Setting mode on the instrument cluster is not supported.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 30 2020-09-24 7:57:56

1. Driver Assistance

Items	Explanation
Driving Convenience	• Lane Following Assist To activate or deactivate the Lane Following Assist. **For more details, refer to the "Lane Following Assist (LFA)" in chapter 7.** • Highway Driving Assist To activate or deactivate the Highway Driving Assist. **For more details, refer to the "Highway Driving Assist (HDA)" in chapter 7.** • Auto Highway Speed Control To activate or deactivate the Auto Highway Speed Control. **For more details, refer to the "Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC)" in chapter 7.** • Speed Limit Warning To activate or deactivate the Speed Limit Warning. **For more details, refer to the "Speed Limit Assist" in chapter 7.**
Warning Timing	To adjust the warning timing of the driver assistance system. • Normal / Late
Warning Volume	To adjust the warning volume of the driver assistance system. • High / Medium / Low / Off
Driver Attention Warning	• Leading Vehicle Departure Alert To activate or deactivate the Leading Vehicle Departure Alert. • Inattentive Driving Warning To alert the driver's inattentive driving. **For more details, refer to the "Driver attention Warning (DAW)" in chapter 7.**
Forward Safety	To adjust Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) • Active Assist • Warning Only • Off **For more details, refer to the "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" in chapter 7.**
Lane Safety	To adjust Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) function. • Assist • Warning Only • Off **For more details, refer to the "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" in chapter 7.**

✳ The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 31 2020-09-24 7:57:56

Items	Explanation
Blind-spot safety	• Blind-Spot View To activate or deactivate Blind-Spot View Monitor. **For more details, refer to the "Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM)" in chapter 7.** • Safe Exit Warning (SEW) To activate or deactivate the Safe Exit Warning. **For more details, refer to the "Safe Exit Warning (SEW)" in chapter 7.** • Active Assist • Warning Only • Off To activate or deactivate Blind-Spot View Monitor. **For more details, refer to the "Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM)" in chapter 7.**
Parking Safety	• Surround View Monitor Auto On To activate or deactivate the Surround View Monitor Auto On. **For more details, refer to the "Surround View Monitor (SVM)" in chapter 7.** • Parking Distance Warning Auto On To activate or deactivate the Parking Distance Warning Auto On. **For more details, refer to the "Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW)" in chapter 7.** • Rear Cross-Traffic Safety To activate or deactivate the Rear Cross-Traffic Safety. **For more details, refer to the "Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)" in chapter 7.**

✳ The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 32 2020-09-24 7:57:56

2. Cluster

Items	Explanation
Reset fuel economy	• At vehicle start • After refueling • Manually To reset the fuel economy displayed.
Wiper/Lights Display	To activate or deactivate the Wiper/ Light mode. When activated, the LCD display shows the selected Wiper/Light mode whenever you changed the mode.
Traffic Signs	To set the traffic signs displayed.
Cluster Voice Guidance Volume	To adjust the cluster voice guidance volume.
Icy Road Warning	To activate or deactivate the icy road warning.
Theme Selection	You can select the theme of the cluster. • Type A Cluster : Theme A / Theme B / Theme C • Type B Cluster : Link to Drive Mode /CLASSIC A/CLASSIC B/CLASSIC C/ CUBE
Blind-Spot View	To Activate or deactivate Blind-Spot View.

3. Lights

Items	Explanation
Illumination	To adjust the illumination level. • Level 1~20
One Touch Turn Signal	• Off : The one touch turn signal function will be deactivated. • 3, 5, 7 Flashes : The turn signal indicator will blink 3, 5, or 7 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly. **For more details, refer to “Lighting” in chapter 5.**
Ambient Light Brightness (if equipped)	• Off • Level 1/2/3/4
Ambient Light Color (if equipped)	• Polar White/Moon White/Ice Blue/Ocean Blue/Jade Green/Orchid Green/ Freesia Yellow/ Sunrise Red/Aurora Purple/Lightening Violet
Headlight Delay	To activate or deactivate the headlamp delay function. **For more details, refer to "Lighting" in chapter 5.**
High Beam Assist	To activate or deactivate High Beam Assist function. **For more details, refer to "High Beam Assist (HBA)" in chapter 5.**

✳ The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 33 2020-09-24 7:57:56

4. Door

Items	Explanation
Automatically Lock	• Enable on Shift : All doors will be automatically locked if the gear is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position. (Only when the engine is running.) • Enable on Speed : All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h (9.3mph). • Off : The auto door lock operation will be deactivated.
Automatically Unlock	• On Shift to P: All doors will be automatically unlocked if the gear is shifted to the P (Park) position. (Only when the engine is running.) • On key out/On vehicle off : All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button is set to the OFF position. • Off : The auto door unlock operation will be canceled.
Two Press Unlock	To Activate or deactivate Two Press Unlock function.
Power Tailgate	If this item is checked, the power tailgate function will be activated. **For more details, refer to "Power tailgate" in chapter 5.**
Power Tailgate Opening Speed	To adjust the power tailgate speed. • Fast/Normal **For more details, refer to "Power tailgate" in chapter 5.**
Power Tailgate Opening Height	To adjust the Power Tailgate Opening Height. • Full Open/Level 3/Level 2/Level 1/User Height Setting
Tailgate Auto Close	-
Smart Tailgate	To activate or deactivate the smart tailgate. **For more details, refer to "Smart tailgate" in chapter 5.**

✳ The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 34 2020-09-24 7:57:56

5. Convenience

Items	Explanation
Seat Easy Access	• Off : The seat easy access function is deactivated. • Normal/Extended : When you turn off the engine, the driver's seat will automatically move rearward short (Normal) or long (Extended) for you to enter or exit the vehicle more comfortably. **For more details, refer to "Driver Position Memory System" in chapter 5.**
Rear Occupant Alert	To activate or deactivate the Rear Occupant Alert. **For more details, refer to "Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) system" in chapter 5.**
Welcome Mirror/Light	• On door unlock : The outside rearview mirrors are unfolded and the welcome light turns on automatically when the doors are unlocked. • On driver approach : The outside rearview mirrors are unfolded and the welcome light turns on automatically when the vehicle is approached with the smart key. **For more details, refer to "Welcome System" in chapter 5."**
Wireless Charging System	To activate or deactivate the wireless charging system in the front seat. **For more details, refer to "Wireless cellular phone charging system" in chapter 5.**
Auto Rear Wiper (in R)	To activate or deactivate the Auto Rear Wiper function. If you move the gear from D to R when the front wiper operates, the rear wiper will operate automatically. Then, if you move the gear from R to D, the rear wiper will stop."
Advanced Anti-Theft	To activate or deactivate the Advanced Anti-Theft function.
Service Interval	• Service Interval To activate or deactivate the service interval function. • Adjust Interval If the service interval menu is activated, you may adjust the time and distance. • Reset To reset the service interval.

✳ The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 35 2020-09-24 7:57:56

6. ECO vehicle

Items	Explanation
Utility Mode	To activate or deactivate the Utility Mode. * Utility Mode: This is a mode for using electricity from high voltage battery. (not possible to drive) It's useful while camping, etc.
Green Zone EV Drive	To activate or deactivate the Green Zone EV Drive. * Green Zone EV Drive : When user select "Green Zone Drive", vehicle drives with EV mode as much as possible for protect atmospheric environment. (based on map info - School zone, park, indoor parking lots, etc.)
Coasting Guide	• Enable Coasting Guide : On/Off To inform driver when taking foot off from accelerator pedal by getting information from Navigation system. • Sound To adjust the sound of coasting guide.
Start Coasting	• Early/Normal/Late To select options when Coasting Pop-up is displayed.
Eco Coasting	To activate or deactivate the Eco Coasting.

7. Units

Items	Explanation
Speed Unit	To select the speed unit. (km/h, MPH)
Temperature Unit	To select the temperature unit. (°C,°F)
Fuel Economy Unit	To select the fuel economy unit. (km/L, L/100km, MPG)
Tire Pressure Unit	To select the tire pressure unit. (psi, kPa, bar)

8. Reset

✳ The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 36 2020-09-24 7:57:56

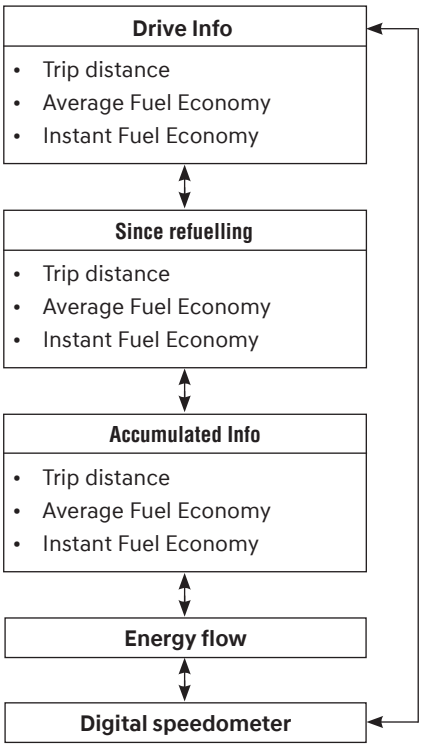
Trip computer (4.2-inch)

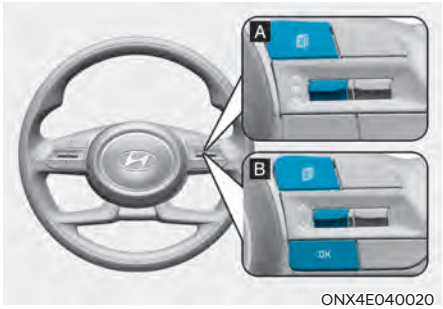
The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

Information

Some driving information stored in the trip computer (for example Average Vehicle Speed) resets if the battery is disconnected.

Trip modes





ONX4E040020

To change the trip mode, toggle the "∧, ∨" switch on the steering wheel

- Manual reset

  To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the OK switch on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the Average Fuel Economy is displayed.
- Automatic reset

  To automatically reset the average fuel economy, select between 'After Ignition' or 'After Refueling' from the Settings menu in the instrument cluster.
  - After Ignition: When the engine has been OFF for 3 minutes or longer the average fuel economy will reset automatically.
  - After Refueling: The average fuel economy will reset automatically after adding 6 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel or more and after driving speed exceeds 1 km/h (1 mph).

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 37 2020-09-24 7:57:56

■ Type A



OTM040063L

■ Type B



OTM040064L

Drive info

Trip distance (1), average fuel economy (2), and instant fuel economy (3) are displayed.

The information is combined for each ignition cycle. However, when the engine has been OFF for 3 minutes or longer the Drive Info screen will reset.

To reset manually, press the OK switch on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when ‘Drive Info’ is displayed.

■ Type A



OTM040065L

■ Type B



OTM040066L

Since refuel(l)ing

Trip distance (1), average fuel economy (2), and instant fuel economy (3) after the vehicle has been refueled are displayed.

To reset manually, press the OK switch on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when ‘Since Refueling’ is displayed.

■ Type A



OTM040067L

■ Type B



OTM040068L

Accumulated info

Accumulated trip distance (1), average fuel economy (2), and instant fuel economy (3) are displayed.

The information is accumulated starting from the last reset.

To reset manually, press the OK switch on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when ‘Accumulated Info’ is displayed.



ONX4EHQ010006

Energy flow

The hybrid system informs the drivers its energy flow in various operating modes. While driving, the current energy flow is specified in 11 modes.

For more details, refer to the "Hybrid system" in chapter 1.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 38 2020-09-24 7:57:58



Digital speedometer

Digital speedometer display shows the speed of the vehicle.

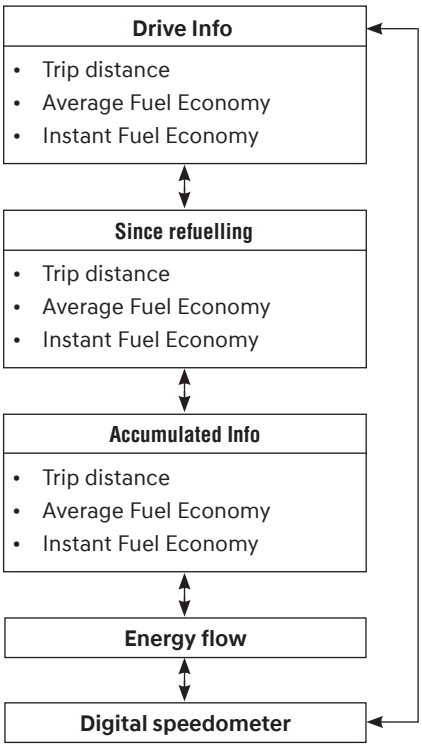
Trip computer (10.25-inch)

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

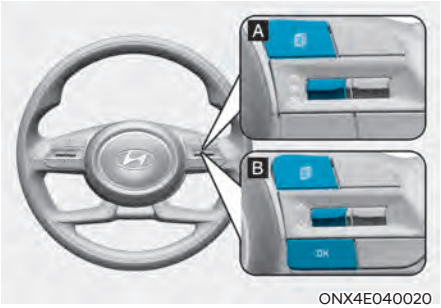
Information

Some driving information stored in the trip computer (for example Average Vehicle Speed) resets if the battery is disconnected.

Trip modes



004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 39 2020-09-24 7:57:58



ONX4E040020

To change the trip mode, toggle the "∧, ∨" switch on the steering wheel

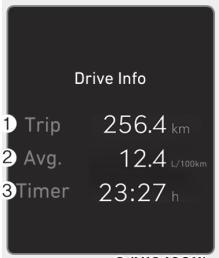
- Manual reset

  To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the OK switch on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the Average Fuel Economy is displayed.
- Automatic reset

  To automatically reset the average fuel economy, select between 'After Ignition' or 'After Refueling' from the Settings menu in the instrument cluster.
  - After Ignition: When the engine has been OFF for 3 minutes or longer the average fuel economy will reset automatically.
  - After Refueling: The average fuel economy will reset automatically after adding 6 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel or more and after driving speed exceeds 1 km/h (1 mph).

✳ For 10.25-inch instrument cluster, you can check the fuel economy in the center bottom of the cluster.

■ Type A



OJX1049011L

■ Type B



OTM040061L

Drive info

Trip distance (1), average fuel economy (2), and total driving time (3) are displayed.

The information is combined for each ignition cycle. However, when the engine has been OFF for 3 minutes or longer the Drive Info screen will reset.

To reset manually, press the OK switch on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when 'Drive Info' is displayed.

■ Type A



OJX1049013L

■ Type B



OJX1049066L

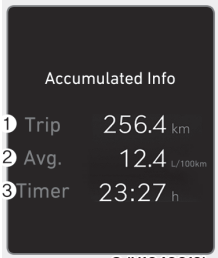
Since refuel(l)ing

Trip distance (1), average fuel economy (2), and total driving time (3) after the vehicle has been refueled are displayed.

To reset manually, press the OK switch on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when 'Since Refueling' is displayed.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 40 2020-09-24 7:57:58

■ Type A



OJX1049012L

■ Type B



OJX1049067L

Accumulated info

Accumulated trip distance (1), average fuel economy (2), and total driving time (3) are displayed.

The information is accumulated starting from the last reset.

To reset manually, press the OK switch on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when 'Accumulated Info' is displayed.



OTM040069L

Digital speedometer

Digital speedometer display shows the speed of the vehicle.



ONX4EHQ010006

Energy flow

The hybrid system informs the drivers its energy flow in various operating modes. While driving, the current energy flow is specified in 11 modes.

For more details, refer to the "Hybrid system" in chapter 1.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 41 2020-09-24 7:58:00

VEHICLE SETTINGS (INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM) (IF EQUIPPED)


ONX4E040028

Vehicle Settings in the infotainment system provides user options for a variety of settings including door lock/unlock features, convenience features, driver assistance settings, etc.

Vehicle Settings menu

- Driver Assistance
- Cluster
- Climate
- Seat
- Lights
- Door
- Convenience

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

WARNING

Do not operate the Vehicle Settings while driving. This may cause distraction resulting in an accident.

Setting your vehicle


ONX4050067

1. Press the SETUP button on the head unit of the infotainment system.


ONX4E040027

2. Select ‘Vehicle’ and change the setting of the features.

For detailed information, please refer to the infotainment system manual separately supplied.

004_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 42 2020-09-24 7:58:00

5. Convenient features

Accessing your vehicle 5-4
- Remote key 5-4
- Smart key 5-7
- Immobilizer system 5-12

Door locks 5-13
- Operating door locks from outside the vehicle 5-13
- Operating door locks from inside the vehicle 5-15
- Deadlocks 5-17
- Auto door lock/unlock features 5-17
- Child-protector rear door locks 5-17

Theft-alarm system 5-18

Integrated memory system 5-19
- Storing memory positions 5-19
- Recalling memory positions 5-20
- Resetting the system 5-20
- Easy access function 5-21

Steering wheel 5-22
- Electric power steering (EPS) 5-22
- Tilt / telescopic steering 5-23
- Heated steering wheel 5-23
- Horn 5-24

Mirrors 5-25
- Inside rearview mirror 5-25
- Outside rearview mirrors 5-26

Windows 5-29
- Power windows 5-31

Panorama sunroof 5-34
- Sunshade 5-35
- Sliding the sunroof 5-35
- Tilting the sunroof 5-36
- Closing the sunroof 5-36
- Resetting the sunroof 5-37
- Sunroof open warning 5-38

Exterior features 5-39
Hood 5-39
Tailgate 5-40
Power tailgate 5-42
Smart tailgate 5-48
Fuel filler door 5-50
Lighting 5-53
Exterior lights 5-53
High beam assist (HBA) 5-59
System settings 5-59
System operation 5-60
System malfunction and limitations 5-60
Interior lights 5-62
Interior lamp auto cut 5-62
Front lamps 5-62
Rear lamps 5-63
Vanity mirror lamp 5-63
Glove box lamp 5-63
Luggage compartment lamp 5-64
Welcome system 5-64
Wipers and washers 5-66
Windshield wipers 5-67
Front windshield washers 5-68
Rear window wiper and washer 5-69
Automatic climate control system 5-70
Automatic heating and air conditioning 5-72
Manual heating and air conditioning 5-73
Multi air mode 5-80
System operation 5-81
System maintenance 5-83
Windshield defrosting and defogging 5-86
Automatic climate control system 5-86
Auto defogging system (only for automatic climate control system) 5-87
Rear window defroster 5-88

5

5. Convenient features

Climate control additional features 5-89
- Auto defogging system 5-89
- Auto dehumidify 5-90
- Recirculating air when washer fluid is used 5-90
- Sunroof inside air recirculation 5-90
- Auto. Controls that use climate control settings (for driver's seat) 5-90

Storage compartment 5-91
- Center console storage 5-91
- Glove box 5-91
- Luggage tray 5-92

Interior features 5-93
- Cup holder 5-93
- Ashtray 5-94
- Sunvisor 5-94
- Power outlet 5-95
- Usb charger 5-96
- Wireless smart phone charging system 5-96
- Clock 5-99
- Coat hook 5-99
- Floor mat anchor(s) 5-99
- Side curtain 5-100
- Luggage net holder 5-101
- Cargo security screen 5-101

Exterior features 5-104
- Roof rack 5-104

Infotainment system 5-105
- Usb port 5-105
- Antenna 5-105
- Steering wheel remote controls 5-105
- Infotainment system 5-106
- Voice recognition 5-106
- Bluetooth® wireless technology 5-107
- How vehicle radio works 5-107

ACCESSING YOUR VEHICLE

Remote key (if equipped)



OPDE046001

Your HYUNDAI uses a remote key, which you can use to lock or unlock the driver and passenger doors or the tailgate.

1. Door Lock
2. Door Unlock
3. Tailgate Unlock

Locking

To lock :

1. Close all doors, engine hood and tailgate.
2. Press the Door Lock button (1) on the remote key.
3. The doors will lock. The hazard warning lights will blink. Also, the outside rearview mirror will fold, if 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock' is selected from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. **For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in chapter 4.**
4. Make sure the doors are locked by checking the position of the door lock button inside the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unattended children could place the key in the ignition switch and may operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious injury or death.

Unlocking

To unlock:

1. Press the Door Unlock button (2) on the remote key.
2. The doors will unlock. The hazard warning lights will blink two times. Also, the outside rearview mirror will unfold, if 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock' is selected from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. **For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in chapter 4.**

Information

After unlocking the doors, the doors will lock automatically after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

Tailgate unlocking

To unlock:

1. Press the Tailgate Unlock button (3) on the remote key for more than one second.
2. The hazard warning lights will blink two times. Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 4 2020-09-24 7:58:46

Information

- **After unlocking the tailgate, the tailgate will lock automatically.**
- **The word "HOLD" is written on the button to inform you that you must press and hold the button for more than one second.**

Start-up

For detailed information refer to "Key Ignition Switch" in chapter 6.

NOTICE

To prevent damaging the remote key:

- **Keep the remote key away from water or any liquid and fire. If the inside of the remote key gets damp (due to drinks or moisture), or is heated, internal circuit may malfunction, excluding the car from the warranty.**
- **Avoid dropping or throwing the remote key.**
- **Protect the remote key from extreme temperatures.**

Mechanical key



OPDE046003

If the remote key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the door by using the mechanical key.

To unfold the key, press the release button then the key will unfold automatically.

To fold the key, fold the key manually while pressing the release button.

NOTICE

Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.

Remote key precautions

The remote key will not work if any of the following occur:

- The key is in the ignition switch.
- You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).
- The remote key battery is weak.
- Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- The weather is extremely cold.
- The remote key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the remote key.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 5 2020-09-24 7:58:46

When the remote key does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the remote key, it is recommended that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

If the remote key is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phone's normal operational signals.

This is especially important when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/ or sending/receiving emails.

Avoid placing the remote key and your mobile phone in the same location and always try to maintain an adequate distance between the two devices.

Information

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

NOTICE

Keep the remote key away from electromagnetic materials that block electromagnetic waves to the key surface.

Battery replacement



OPD046002

Battery Type: CR2032

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the cover.
2. Remove the old battery and insert the new battery. Make sure the battery position is correct.
3. Reinstall the rear cover of the remote key.

If you suspect your remote key might have sustained some damage, or you feel your remote key is not working correctly, it is recommended that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Information



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) and regulation.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 6 2020-09-24 7:58:46

Smart key (if equipped)

■ Type A



OTM050228L

■ Type B



OTM050221L

■ Type C

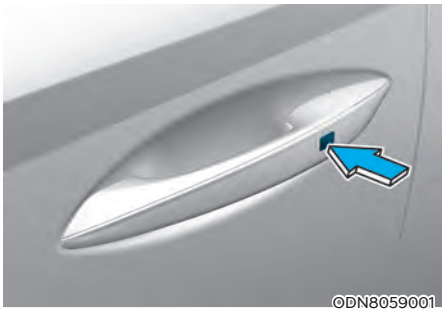


OTM050229L

Your HYUNDAI uses a smart key, which you can use to lock or unlock a door (and tailgate) and even start the engine even just carrying the key.

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Tailgate lock / unlock (Tailgate)
   Tailgate open / close (Power tailgate)
4. Remote Smart parking Assist (Forward)
5. Remote Smart parking Assist (Rearward)
6. Remote start

Locking your vehicle



ODN8059001

To lock :

1. Close all doors, engine hood and tailgate.
2. Carry the smart key.
3. Either press the door handle button or press the Door Lock button on the smart key.
4. The hazard warning lights will blink. Also, the outside rearview mirror will fold, if 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock or On driver approach' is selected from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. **For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in chapter 4.**
5. Make sure the doors are locked by pulling the door outside handle.

i Information

The door handle button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the outside door handle.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 7 2020-09-24 7:58:46

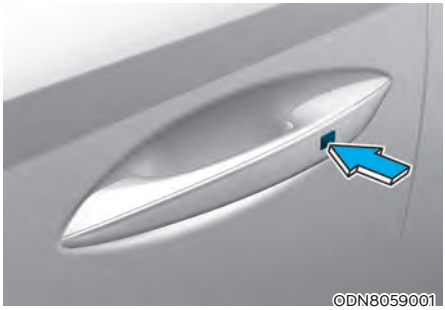
Even though you press the outside door handle button, the doors will not lock and the chime will sound for three seconds if any of the following occur:

- The Smart Key is in the vehicle.
- The Engine Start/Stop button is in ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the tailgate is open.

WARNING

Do not leave the Smart Key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unattended children could press the Engine Start/ Stop button and may operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious injury or death.

Unlocking your vehicle



To unlock:

1. Carry the Smart Key.
2. Either press the door handle button or press the Door Unlock button on the smart key.
3. The doors will unlock. The hazard warning lights will blink two times. Also, the outside rearview mirror will unfold, if 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock or On driver approach' is selected from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. **For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in chapter 4.**

Information

- **The door handle button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the outside door handle. Other people can also open the doors without the smart key in possession.**
- **After unlocking the doors, the doors will lock automatically after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 8 2020-09-24 7:58:46

Opening the tailgate

To unlock:

1. Carry the smart key.
2. Either press the tailgate handle button or press the Tailgate Unlock button (3) on the smart key for more than one second.
3. The hazard warning lights will blink two times.

Information

- **The Tailgate Unlock button (3) will only unlock the tailgate. It will not release the latch and open the tailgate automatically. If the Tailgate Unlock button is used, someone must still press the tailgate handle button to open the tailgate.**
- **After unlocking the tailgate, the tailgate will lock automatically after 30 seconds unless the tailgate is opened.**

Remotely starting vehicle (if equipped)

You can start the vehicle using the Remote Start button (6) on the smart key.

To start the vehicle remotely:

1. Press the door lock button on the smart key within 10 m (32 feet) from the vehicle.
2. Press the Remote Start button (6) for more than 2 seconds within 4 seconds after pressing the door lock button.
3. The hazard warning lights will blink and the engine will start.
4. To turn off the remote start function, press the Remote Start button (6) once.

Information

- **The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the remote start function to start.**
- **The engine turns off if you get on the vehicle without a registered smart key.**
- **The engine turns off if you do not get on the vehicle within 10 minutes after remotely starting the vehicle.**
- **The Remote Start button (6) may not operate if the smart key is not within 10 m (32 feet).**
- **The vehicle will not remotely start if the engine hood or tailgate is opened.**
- **Do not idle the engine for a long period.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 9 2020-09-24 7:58:46

Remotely moving vehicle forward or reverse (if equipped)

With the smart key, the driver can move the vehicle forward or reverse using the Forward or Reverse button (4, 5) on the smart key.

For more details, refer to "Remote Smart Parking Assist (RSPA)" section in chapter 7.

Start-up

You can start the vehicle without inserting the key.

For more details, refer to the "Engine Start/Stop Button" section in chapter 6.

Information

If the smart key is not moved for some time, the detection function for smart key operation will pause. Lift the smart key to activate the detection again.

NOTICE

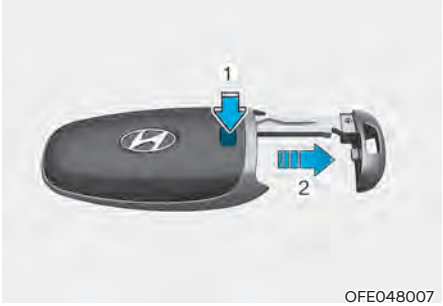
To prevent damaging the smart key:

- **Keep the smart key in a cool, dry place to avoid damage or malfunction. Exposure to moisture or high temperature may cause the internal circuit of the smart key to malfunction which may not be covered under warranty.**
- **Avoid dropping or throwing the smart key.**
- **Protect the smart key from extreme temperatures.**

Mechanical key

If the Smart Key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the driver's door by using the mechanical key.

To remove the mechanical key from the smart key FOB:



OFE048007

Press and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2). Insert the mechanical key into the key hole on the door.

To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 10 2020-09-24 7:58:46

Loss of a smart key

A maximum of two smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you happen to lose your smart key, it is recommended that you should immediately take the vehicle and remaining key to your authorized HYUNDAI dealer or tow the vehicle, if necessary.

Smart key precautions

The smart key may not work if any of the following occur:

- The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
- Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.

If the smart key does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, it is recommended to contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

If the smart key is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phone's normal operational signals. This is specifically relevant when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. When possible, avoid keeping the smart key and your mobile phone in the same location such as a pants or jacket pocket in order to avoid interference between the two devices.

Information

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

NOTICE

- **Keep the smart key away from electromagnetic materials that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.**
- **Always have the smart key with you when leaving the vehicle. If the smart key is left near the vehicle, the vehicle battery may be discharged.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 11 2020-09-24 7:58:47

Battery replacement

If the Smart Key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one.

Battery Type: CR2032

To replace the battery:



If the Smart Key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one.

Remove the smart key cover by turning the screwdriver clockwise by inserting the screwdriver (-) into the hole.

Battery Type: CR2032

To replace the battery:

1. Remove the mechanical key.
2. Use a slim tool to pry open the rear cover of the smart key.
3. Remove the old battery and insert the new battery. Make sure the battery position is correct.
4. Reinstall the rear cover of the smart key.

If you suspect your smart key might have sustained some damage, or you feel your smart key is not working correctly, it is recommended that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Information

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

Immobilizer system

The immobilizer system helps protect your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

When the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the immobilizer system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, the system does not recognize the coding of the key.

Place the ignition switch to the LOCK/OFF position, then place the ignition switch to the ON position again.

The system may not recognize your key's coding if another immobilizer key or other metal object (i.e., key chain) is near the key. The engine may not start because the metal may interrupt the transponder signal from transmitting normally.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of the key, it is recommended that you contact your HYUNDAI dealer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your immobilizer password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential.

NOTICE

The transponder in your key is an important part of the immobilizer system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobilizer system malfunction could occur.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 12 2020-09-24 7:58:47

DOOR LOCKS

Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

Mechanical key



1. Pull out the door handle.
2. Press the lever (1) located inside the bottom part of the cover with a mechanical key or flat-head screwdriver.
3. Push out the cover (2) while pressing the lever.
4. Turn the mechanical key (3) toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock.

Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

Information

- **Be careful when locking the door by mechanical key operation, only the driver's door can be locked/unlocked.**
- **When all doors are locked with the mechanical key, lock all doors by using the central door lock switch inside the vehicle. Open the door using the driver's inner door handle, and then close the door and lock the driver's door with mechanical key operation.**
- **Refer to Chapter 5 "Operating door locks from inside the vehicle" to lock from inside the vehicle.**

Information

- **When removing the cover, be careful not to lose cover and any scratches.**
- **When the key cover freezes and does not open, lightly tap or indirectly warm(hand temperature, etc.) it.**
- **Do not apply excessive force to the door and door handle. It may be damaged.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 13 2020-09-24 7:58:47

Remote key



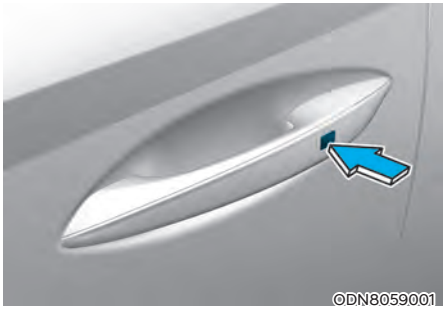
To lock the doors, press the Door Lock button (1) on the remote key.

To unlock the doors, press the Door Unlock button (2) on the remote key.

Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

Smart key



To lock the doors, press the button on the outside door handle while carrying the smart key with you or press the door lock button on the smart key.

To unlock the doors, press the button on the outside door handle while carrying the smart key with you or press the door unlock button on the smart key.

Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

i Information

- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 14 2020-09-24 7:58:47

Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

With the door inside handle



Driver door & Passenger door

If the inner door handle is pulled when the door is locked, the door will unlock and open.

Rear door

If the inner door handle is pulled once when the door is locked, the door will unlock. If the inner door handle is pulled once more, the door will open.

Information

If a power door lock ever fails to function while you are in the vehicle try one or more of the following techniques to exit:

- **Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) while simultaneously pulling on the door handle.**
- **Operate the other door locks and handles.**
- **Lower a front window and use the mechanical key to unlock the door from outside.**

With the central door lock/unlock switch



- When pressing the (🔒) portion (1) on the switch, all vehicle doors will lock.
  - If any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the lock button (1) of the central door lock switch is pressed.
  - If the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the lock button (1) of the central door lock switch is pressed.
- When pressing the (🔓) portion (2) on the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.
- Doors indicating light (3)

  When all vehicle doors are locked, the indicating lights on the driver's door and passenger's door will turn on. If any door is unlocked, it would go off.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 15 2020-09-24 7:58:47

WARNING

- The doors should always be fully closed and locked while the vehicle is in motion. If the doors are unlocked, the risk of being thrown from the vehicle in a crash is increased.
- Do not pull the inner door handle of the driver's or passenger's door while the vehicle is moving.

WARNING

Do not leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or serious injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle.

WARNING

Always secure your vehicle.

Leaving your vehicle unlocked increases the potential risk to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle.

To secure your vehicle, while depressing the brake, shift the gear to the P (Park) position, engage the parking brake, and place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position, close all windows, lock all doors, and always take the key with you.

CAUTION

Opening a door when something is approaching may cause damage or injury. Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door.

WARNING

If you stay in the vehicle for a long time while the weather is very hot or cold, there are risks of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when someone is in the vehicle.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 16 2020-09-24 7:58:47

Deadlocks (if equipped)

Some vehicles are equipped with a deadlock system. Deadlocks prevent opening of a door from either inside or outside the vehicle once the deadlocks have been activated providing an additional measure of vehicle security.

To lock the vehicle using the deadlock function, the doors must be locked by using the remote key or smart key. To unlock the vehicle, the transmitter or smart key must be used again.

Auto door lock/unlock features

Impact sensing door unlock system

All doors will be automatically unlocked when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

Speed sensing door lock system (if equipped)

All doors will be automatically locked when vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h (9 mph).

You can activate or deactivate the Auto Door Lock/Unlock features from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. **For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in chapter 4. If your vehicle is equipped with additional navigation, please refer to the infotainment system manual separately supplied.**

Child-protector rear door locks



ONX4E050006

The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door will not open if the inner door handle is pulled.

To lock the child safety lock, insert a small flat blade tool (like a screwdriver or similar) (1) into the slot and turn it to the lock position as shown.

To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle (2), unlock the child safety lock.

WARNING

If children accidently open the rear doors while the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should always be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 17 2020-09-24 7:58:47

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM

This system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables. The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously if any of the following occur:

- A door is opened without using the smart key.
- The tailgate is opened without using the smart key.
- The engine hood is opened.

The alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets. To turn off the alarm, unlock the doors with the smart key.

The Theft Alarm System automatically sets 30 seconds after you lock the doors and the tailgate. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the tailgate from outside the vehicle with the smart key or by touching the touch sensor on the outside of the door handle with the smart key in your possession.

The hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound once to indicate the system is armed.

Once the security system is set, opening any door, the tailgate, or the hood without using the smart key will cause the alarm to activate.

The Theft Alarm System will not set if the hood, the tailgate, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, check the hood, the tailgate, or the doors are fully closed.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

Information

- **Do not lock the doors until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the remaining passenger leaves the vehicle when the system is armed, the alarm will be activated.**
- **If the vehicle is not disarmed with the smart key, open the doors by using the mechanical key and start the engine by directly pressing the Engine Start/Stop button with the smart key.**
- **If the system is disarmed by unlocking the vehicle, but neither a door or the tailgate is opened within 30 seconds, the doors will relock and the system will rearm automatically.**

Information



Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system will have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:

1. **WARNING**
2. **SECURITY SYSTEM**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 18 2020-09-24 7:58:48

INTEGRATED MEMORY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



Integrated Memory System for the driver's seat is provided to store and recall the following memory settings with a simple button operation.

- Driver's seat position

WARNING

Never attempt to operate the integrated memory system while the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

Information

- **If the battery is disconnected, the memory settings will be erased.**
- **If integrated memory system does not operate normally, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

Storing memory positions

1. Shift to P (Park) while the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Adjust the driver's seat position, steering wheel position, instrument panel illumination intensity and head-up display height/brightness to the desired position.
3. Press the SET button. The system will beep once and notify you 'Press button to save settings' on the cluster LCD display.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 4 seconds. The system will beep twice when the memory has been successfully stored.
5. 'Driver 1 (or 2) settings saved' will appear on the cluster LCD display. The message appears only for the driver's seat position memory setting.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 19 2020-09-24 7:58:48

Recalling memory positions

1. Shift to P (Park) while the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, and then the driver's seat position, steering wheel position, instrument panel illumination intensity will automatically adjust to the stored positions.
3. 'Driver 1 (or 2) settings applied' will appear on the cluster LCD display.

Information

- **If you press the SET button or the corresponding button which the setting is being recalled, the setting will temporarily deactivate. If you press the other buttons, the setting of the pressed button will activate.**

  For example, if you press the SET button or number 1 button with the number 1 setting in operation, the setting will temporarily deactivate. If you press the number 2 button, the number 2 setting will activate.
- **If you adjust the seat, steering wheel or instrument panel illumination while recalling the stored positions, the pre-set settings will become ineffective.**

Resetting the system

Take the following procedures to reset integrated memory system, when it does not operate properly.

Resetting integrated memory system

1. Stop the vehicle and open the driver's door with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park).
2. Adjust the driver's seat and seatback to the foremost position.
3. Press the SET button and push forward the driver's seat movement switch over 2 seconds simultaneously.

While resetting integrated memory system

1. Resetting starts with a notification sound.
2. The driver's seat and seatback is adjusted to the rearward position with the notification sound.
3. The driver's seat and seatback is re-adjusted to the default position (central position) with the notification sound.

However, in the following cases, the resetting procedure and the notification sound may stop.

- The memory button is pressed.
- The seat control switch is operated.
- The gear is shifted out of P (Park).
- The driving speed exceeds 3 km/h (2 mph).
- The driver's door is closed.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 20 2020-09-24 7:58:48

NOTICE

- **While integrated memory system is being reset, if the resetting and notification sound stops incompletely, restart the resetting procedure again.**
- **Make sure that there is no objects around the driver's seat in advance of resetting the integrated memory system.**

Easy access function

The system will move the driver's seat automatically as follows:

- With remote key
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the ignition key is removed.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the ignition key is inserted.
- With smart key
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ACC or START position.

You can activate or deactivate the Easy Access Function from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. 'Convenience → Seat Easy Access → Off/Normal/Extended'.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display" In chapter 4.

CAUTION

Driver should be cautious when using this function to assure no injury to passenger or child on the back seat. In case of emergency the driver has to stop movement of front seat (when easy access feature is activated) by pressing SET button or any of the driver seat control switches.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 21 2020-09-24 7:58:48

STEERING WHEEL

Electric Power Steering (EPS)

The system assists you with steering the vehicle. If the vehicle is turned off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, you may still steer the vehicle, but it will require increased steering effort.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

CAUTION

If Electric Power Steering does not operate normally, the warning light and the message 'Check motor driven power steering' will illuminate on the instrument cluster. You may steer the vehicle, but it will require increased steering efforts. We recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorized HYUNDAI dealer or to a service station and have the system checked as soon as possible.

Information

The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:

- **The steering effort may be high immediately after pressing the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.**

  This happens as the system performs the EPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics are completed, the steering wheel effort will return to its normal condition.
- **When the battery voltage is low, you might have to put more steering effort. However, it is a temporary condition so that it will return to normal condition after charging the battery.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or OFF position.**
- **Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **When you operate the steering wheel in low temperatures, abnormal noise may occur. If the temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.**
- **When an error is detected from EPS, the steering effort assist function will not be activated in order to prevent fatal accidents. Instrument cluster warning lights may be on or the steering effort may be high. If these symptoms occur, drive the vehicle to a safe area as soon as it is safe to do so. We recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 22 2020-09-24 7:58:48

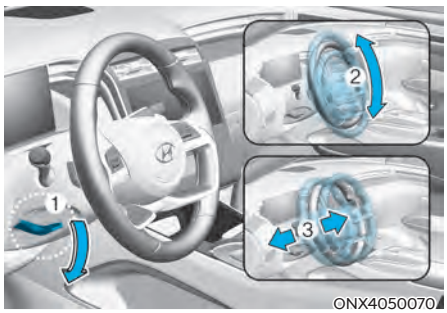
Tilt / Telescopic steering

When adjusting the steering wheel to a comfortable position, adjust the steering wheel so that it points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument cluster warning lights and gauges. After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.

Always adjust the position of the steering wheel before driving.

WARNING

NEVER adjust the steering wheel while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.



To adjust the steering wheel angle and height:

1. Pull down the lock-release lever (1).
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and distance forward/back (3).
3. Pull up the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place.

Information

Sometimes the lock release lever may not engage completely. This may occur when the gears of the locking mechanism do not completely mesh. If this occurs, pull down on the lock-release lever, readjust the steering wheel again, and then pull back up on the release lever to lock the steering wheel in place.

Heated steering wheel (if equipped)



When the ignition switch is in the ON position or when the engine is running, press the heated steering wheel button to warm the steering wheel.

The indicator on the button will illuminate.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 23 2020-09-24 7:58:48

To turn the heated steering wheel off, press the button again. The indicator on the button will turn off.

- Auto Comfort Control (for driver's seat) (if equipped)
  - The heated steering wheel automatically controls the steering wheel temperature depending on the ambient temperature and the set climate control temperature when the engine is running. If the heated steering wheel switch is pushed, the heated steering wheel will have to be controlled manually.

    To use this function, it must be activated from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.
  - The heated steering wheel defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is ON. However, if the Auto Comfort Control function is ON, the heated steering wheel will turn on and off depending on the ambient temperature and the set climate control temperature.

For more details, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

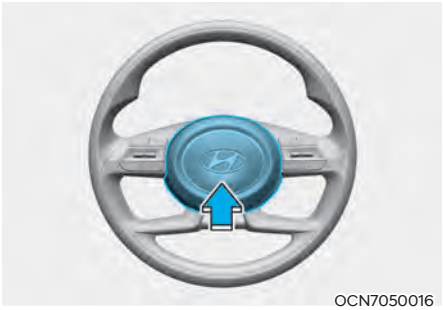
Information

The heated steering wheel will turn off automatically approximately 30 minutes after the heated steering wheel is turned on.

NOTICE

Do not install any cover or accessory on the steering wheel. This cover or accessory could cause damage to the heated steering wheel system.

Horn



OCN7050016

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.

NOTICE

Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 24 2020-09-24 7:58:48

MIRRORS

Inside rearview mirror

Before driving your vehicle, check to see that your inside rearview mirror is properly positioned. Adjust the rearview mirror so that the view through the rear window is properly centered.

WARNING

Make sure your line of sight is not obstructed. Do not place objects in the rear seat, cargo area, or behind the rear headrests which could interfere with your vision through the rear window.

WARNING

To prevent serious injury during an accident or deployment of the air bag, do not modify the rearview mirror and do not install a wide mirror.

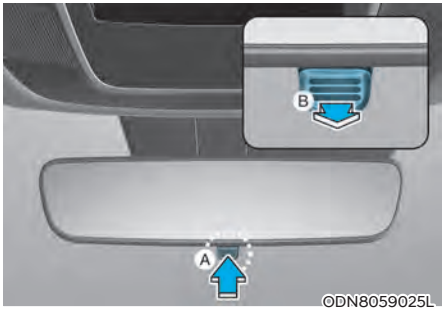
WARNING

NEVER adjust the mirror while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as this may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Day/night rearview mirror (if equipped)



[A] : Day, [B] : Night

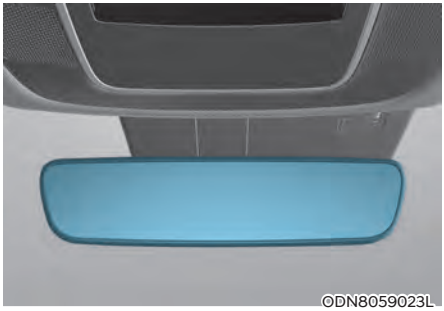
Make this adjustment before you start driving and while the day/night lever is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever towards you to reduce glare from the headlamps of the vehicles behind you during night driving.

Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 25 2020-09-24 7:58:48

Electric Chromic Mirror (ECM) (if equipped)



[A] : Indicator

The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlamp of the vehicle behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror. The sensor detects the light level around the vehicle, and automatically adjusts to control the headlamp glare from vehicles behind you.

Whenever the the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the driver's view behind the vehicle.

Outside rearview mirrors



Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the mirror adjustment control switch. The outside rearview mirrors can be folded to help prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash or when passing through a narrow street.

The right outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.

Use the inside rear view mirror or look back directly to determine the actual distance of other vehicles prior to changing lanes.

Make sure to adjust the outside rearview mirrors to your desired position before you begin driving.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 26 2020-09-24 7:58:48

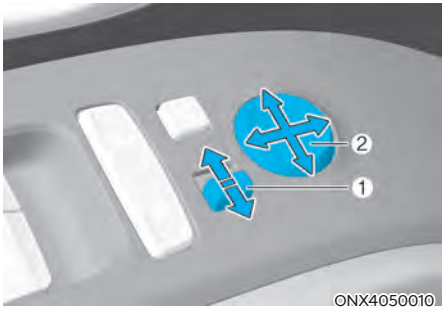
WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

- **Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass.**
- **If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.**
- **Do not clean the mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum based cleaning products.**

Adjusting the rearview mirrors



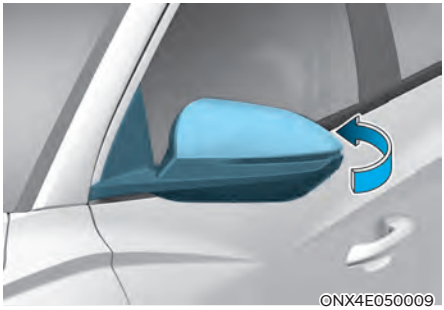
1. Move the lever (1) either to the L (left side) or R (right side) to select the rearview mirror you would like to adjust.
2. Use the mirror adjustment control (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.
3. After adjustment, move the lever (1) to the middle to prevent inadvertent adjustment.

NOTICE

- **The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate while the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, because this can damage the motor.**
- **Do not attempt to adjust the rearview mirrors by hand, because this can damage the motor.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 27 2020-09-24 7:58:48

Folding the outside rearview mirror



Manual type

To fold the outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of the mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.



Electric type

The outside rearview mirror can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch.

- If 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock' is selected in the User Settings mode on the LCD display, the outside mirror will fold or unfold automatically as follows:
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key.
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the button on the outside door handle.
- If 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock' and 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On driver approach' is selected in the User Settings mode on the LCD display, the outside mirror will unfold automatically when you approach the vehicle (all doors closed and locked) with a smart key in possession.

NOTICE

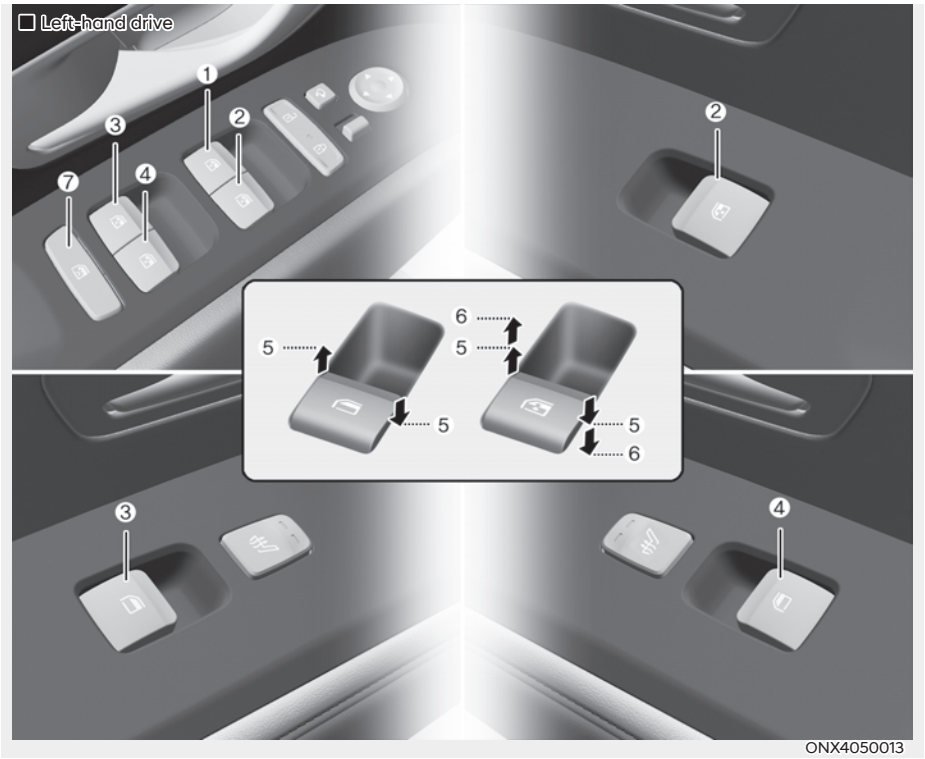
The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the ignition switch is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary while the engine is not running.

NOTICE

Do not fold the electric type outside rearview mirror by hand. It could cause motor failure.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 28 2020-09-24 7:58:49

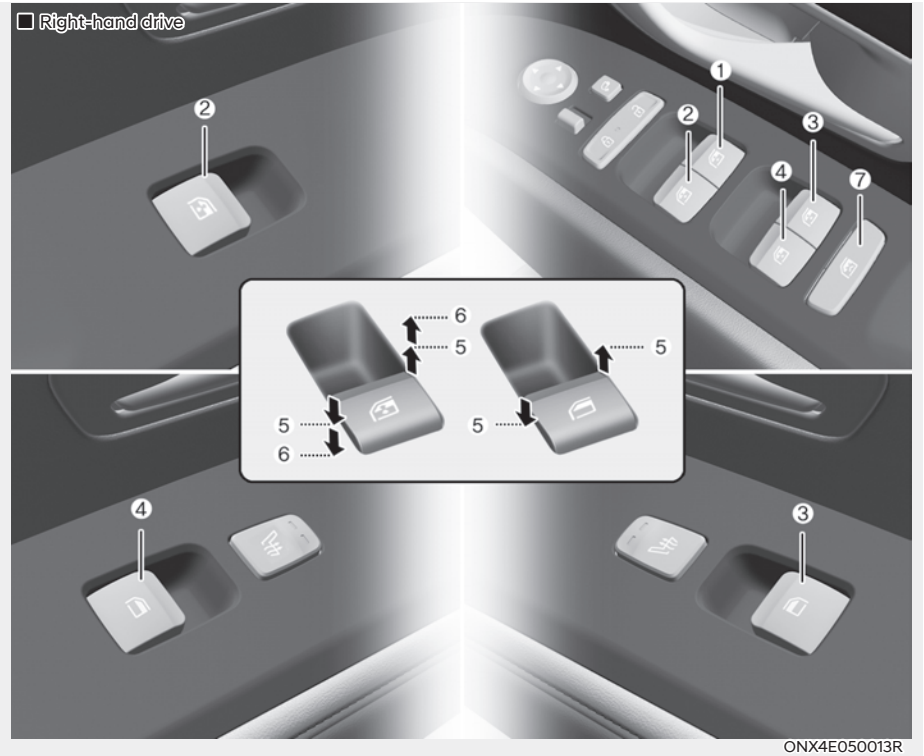
WINDOWS



(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (left) power window switch
(4) Rear door (right) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window*
(7) Power window lock switch

* : if equipped

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 29 2020-09-24 7:58:49



(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (left) power window switch
(4) Rear door (right) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window*
(7) Power window lock switch

* : if equipped

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 30 2020-09-24 7:58:50

Power windows

The ignition switch must be in the ON position to be able to raise or lower the windows. Each door has a Power Window switch to control that door's window. The driver has a Power Window Lock switch which can block the operation of passenger windows. The power windows will operate for approximately 3 minutes after the ignition switch is placed in the ACC or OFF position. However, if the front doors are opened, the Power Windows cannot be operated even within the 3 minutes period.

Window opening and closing



OCN7050082

To open:

Press the window switch down to the first detent position (5). Release the switch when you want the window to stop.

To close:

Pull the window switch up to the first detent position (5). Release the window switch when you want the window to stop.

Auto down window (if equipped)

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers the window even when the switch is released.

To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

Auto up/down window (if equipped)

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

Resetting the power windows

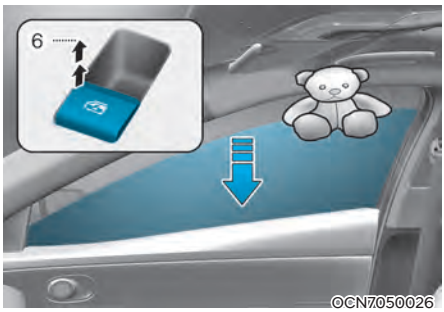
If the power windows do not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Press the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Close the window and continue pulling up on the power window switch for at least one second.

If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 31 2020-09-24 7:58:50

Automatic reverse (if equipped)



If a window senses any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will stop and lower approximately 30 cm (12 in.) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance while the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 in.).

If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reverse feature, the automatic window reverse will not operate.

Information

The automatic reverse feature is only active when the "Auto Up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch to the second detent.

NOTICE

Do not install any accessories on the windows. The automatic reverse feature may not operate.

WARNING

Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Objects less than 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter caught between the window glass and the upper window channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse window and the window will not stop and reverse direction.

Power window lock button



The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passenger doors by pressing the power window lock button.

When the power window lock button is pressed:

- The driver's master control can operate all the power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passenger's control cannot operate the rear passengers' power window.

✳ If the power window lock button is operated (indicator turns on), rear passenger cannot open the rear door.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 32 2020-09-24 7:58:50

WARNING

Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position. Serious injury or death can result from unintentional window operation by a child.

NOTICE

- **To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.**
- **Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.**

Remote window closing function (if equipped)



OTM050230L

You can still control the window movement with the engine turned off by pressing the Door Lock button (1) for more than 3 seconds. The window moves up, as long as you press the door lock button. The window movement stops, when you release the door lock button. The hazard warning lights blink 3 minutes, when the window is completely closed.

Information

- **The remote window closing function may abruptly stop when you move away from your vehicle during operation. Stay in close proximity from your vehicle, while monitoring the window movement.**
- **One of the windows may stop operating, when the window is interrupted by certain force. However, the other windows will keep operating. Thus, you should make sure that all windows are closed, and that the hazard warning lights blink 3 times.**
- **The remote window closing function is only operated by the vehicle equipped with an automatic power window on all windows.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 33 2020-09-24 7:58:50

PANORAMA SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.



The ignition switch must be in the ON position before you can open or close the sunroof.

The sunroof can be operated for approximately 3 minutes after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or LOCK (OFF) position. However, if the front door is opened, the sunroof cannot be operated even within the 3 minutes period.

Information

- **In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **After the vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm, be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.**

WARNING

- **Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade while driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **Make sure heads, hands, arms or any other body parts or objects are out of the way before operating the sunroof.**
- **Do not extend your head, arms or body outside the sunroof while driving, to avoid serious injury.**
- **Do not leave the engine running and the key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unattended children could operate the sunroof, which could result in serious injury.**
- **Do not sit on the top of the vehicle. It may cause injury or vehicle damage.**
- **Do not operate the sunroof while using the roof rack to transport cargo. This may cause the cargo to come loose and distract the driver.**
- **Do not extend any luggage outside the sunroof while driving.**

NOTICE

- **Do not continue to move the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.**
- **Make sure the sunroof is closed fully when leaving your vehicle.**

  If the sunroof is left open, rain or snow may wet the interior of the vehicle. Also, leaving the sunroof open when the vehicle is unattended may invite theft.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 34 2020-09-24 7:58:50

Sunshade



To open the sunshade:

Pull the sunroof control switch backward to the first detent position.

To close the sunshade:

Push the sunroof control switch forward to the first detent position.

To stop the sunshade at the desired position while the sunroof is operating, push the sunroof control switch backward or forward and release the control switch.

Information

- **Activating the control lever to the first detent requires only a very light touch.**
- **Wrinkles formed on the sunshade as material characteristic are normal.**

CAUTION

Do not pull or push the sunshade by hand as such action may damage the sunshade or cause it to malfunction.

Sliding the sunroof



When the sunshade is closed:

If you pull the sunroof control switch backward past the first detent, the sunshade will slide all the way open and then the sunroof glass will slide all the way open.

When the sunshade is opened:

If you pull the sunroof control switch backward, the sunroof glass will slide all the way open.

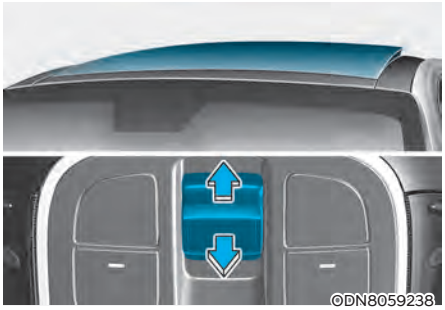
To stop the sunroof at the desired position while the sunroof is operating, push the sunroof control switch backward or forward and release the control switch.

Information

Only the front glass of the sunroof opens and closes.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 35 2020-09-24 7:58:50

Tilting the sunroof



When the sunshade is closed:

If you push the sunroof control switch upwards, the sunshade will slide open and then the sunroof glass will tilt open.

When the sunshade is opened:

If you push the sunroof control switch upwards, the sunroof glass will tilt open.

To stop the sunroof at the desired position while the sunroof is operating, push the sunroof control switch backward or forward and release the control switch.

Closing the sunroof



To close the sunroof glass:

Push the sunroof control switch forward to the first detent position.

To close the sunroof glass and sunshade:

Push the sunroof control switch forward to the second detent position. The sunroof glass will close, then the sunshade will close automatically.

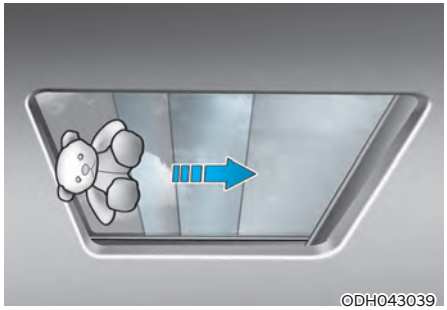
To stop the sunroof at the desired position while the sunroof is operating, push the sunroof control switch backward or forward and release the control switch.

CAUTION

Close the sunroof when driving in dusty environments. Dust may cause a malfunction of the vehicle system.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 36 2020-09-24 7:58:51

Automatic reverse



If the sunroof senses any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction then stop to allow the object to be cleared.

The auto reverse function does not work if a small obstacle is between the sliding glass and the sunroof sash.

You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

WARNING

- **Small objects that can get caught between the sunroof glass and the sunroof sash may not be detected by the automatic reverse system. In this case, the sunroof glass will not detect the object and reverse direction.**
- **Make sure heads, other body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the sunroof to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.**

WARNING

- **In order to prevent accidental operation of the sunroof, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the sunroof.**
- **Do not sit on the top of the vehicle. It may cause vehicle damage.**

NOTICE

- **Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the sunroof guide rail which can make a noise.**
- **Do not try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, otherwise the motor could be damaged. In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly.**

Resetting the sunroof



In some circumstances resetting the sunroof operation may need to be performed. Some instances where resetting the sunroof may be required include:

- When the battery is either disconnected or discharged
- When the sunroof fuse is replaced
- If the sunroof one-touch AUTO OPEN/CLOSE operation is not functioning properly

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 37 2020-09-24 7:58:51

Sunroof resetting procedure:

1. It is recommended to perform the reset procedure with the vehicle engine running. Start the vehicle in P (Park).
2. Make sure the sunshade and sunroof is in the fully closed position. If the sunshade and sunroof is open, push the control switch forward until the sunshade and sunroof is fully closed.
3. Release the control switch when the sunshade and sunroof is fully closed.
4. Push the control switch forward about 10 seconds until the sunroof moves slightly.
5. Release the control switch.
6. Within 3 seconds, push and hold the control switch forward until the sunshade and sunroof operates as follows:

   Sunshade Open → Glass Open → Glass Close → Sunshade Close

Do not release the switch until the operation is completed.

If you release the control switch during operation, start the procedure again from step 2.

7. Release the sunroof control switch after all steps have completed. The sunroof system has been reset.

Information

If the sunroof is not reset when the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, or the sunroof fuse is blown, the sunroof may not operate normally.

For more detailed information, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Sunroof open warning



ONX4040010

- If the driver turns off the engine when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for a few seconds and the sunroof open warning will appear on the LCD display.

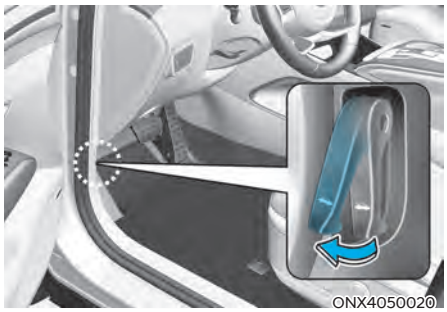
Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 38 2020-09-24 7:58:52

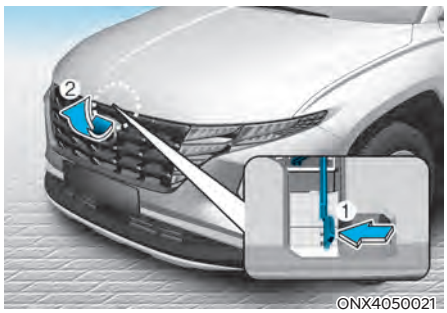
EXTERIOR FEATURES

Hood

Opening the hood



1. Park the vehicle and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the release lever to unlatch the hood. The hood should pop open slightly.



3. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the hood slightly, push up the secondary latch (1) inside of the hood center and lift the hood (2).

   After the hood has been lifted halfway, it will raise completely by itself.



4. Pull out the stay rod.
5. Hold the hood opened with the stay rod (3).

WARNING

- **Grasp the stay rod in the area wrapped in rubber. The rubber will help prevent you from being burned by hot metal when the engine is hot.**
- **The stay rod must be inserted completely into the hole provided whenever you inspect the engine compartment. This will prevent the hood from falling and possibly injuring you.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 39 2020-09-24 7:58:52

Closing the hood

1. Before closing the hood, check in and around the engine compartment to ensure the following:
   - Any tools or other loose objects are removed from the engine room area or hood opening area
   - All glove, rags, or other combustible material is removed from the engine compartment
   - All filler caps are tightly and correctly installed
2. Lower the hood halfway (lifted approximately 30 cm (12 in.) from the closed position) and push down to securely lock in place. Then double check to be sure the hood is secure. If the hood can be raised slightly, it is not securely locked. Open it again and close it with more force.

WARNING

- **Before closing the hood, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the hood opening.**
- **Always double check to be sure that the hood is firmly latched before driving away. Check there is no hood open warning light or message displayed on the instrument cluster. Driving with the hood opened may cause a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the hood in the raised position, as vision is obstructed, which might result in an accident, and the hood could fall or be damaged.**

Tailgate

Opening the tailgate



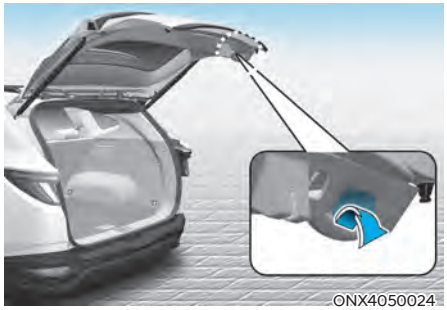
Make sure the vehicle is in P (Park) and set the parking brake.

Then do one of the following:

1. Unlock all doors with the Door Unlock button on your remote key or smart key. Press the tailgate handle button and open the tailgate.
2. Press and hold the Tailgate Unlock button on the remote key or smart key. Press the tailgate handle button and open the tailgate.
3. With the Smart Key in your possession, press the tailgate handle button and open the tailgate.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 40 2020-09-24 7:58:52

Closing the tailgate



Lower the tailgate lid and press down until it locks. To be sure the tailgate lid is securely fastened, always check by trying to pull it up again without pressing the tailgate handle button.

WARNING

Always keep the tailgate lid completely closed while the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases containing carbon monoxide (CO) may enter the vehicle and serious illness or death may result.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the tailgate lift cylinders and the attached hardware, always close the tailgate before driving.

Information

In cold and wet climates, tailgate lock and tailgate mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

WARNING



Do not hold the part (gas lifter) that supports the tailgate. Be aware that the deformation of the part may cause vehicle damage and a risk of injury.

WARNING

- **NEVER allow anyone to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. If the tailgate is partially or totally latched and the person is unable to get out, serious injury or death could occur due to lack of ventilation, exhaust fumes and rapid heat build-up, or because of exposure to cold weather conditions. The luggage compartment is also a highly dangerous location in the event of a crash because it is not a protected occupant space but is a part of the vehicle's crush zone.**
- **Your vehicle should be kept locked and keys should be kept out of the reach of children. Parents should teach their children about the dangers of playing in luggage compartments.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 41 2020-09-24 7:58:53

Emergency tailgate safety release



Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate. When someone is inadvertently locked in the luggage compartment, the tailgate can be opened by moving the lever in the direction of the arrow and pushing the tailgate open.

WARNING

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use with extreme caution, especially while the vehicle is in motion.**

Power tailgate (if equipped)

The power tailgate open/close button automatically opens and closes the tailgate.

Before using the power tailgate

The power tailgate operates when the ignition switch is in the ON position with the gear in P (Park). However, the tailgate will operate regardless of the gear position when the engine is off.

For safety, before attempting to open or close the tailgate, make sure the vehicle is in P (Park).

WARNING

- **Never leave children unattended in your vehicle. Children might operate the power tailgate. Doing so could result in injury to themselves or others, and could damage the vehicle.**
- **Make sure there are no people or objects around the tailgate before operating the power tailgate. Wait until the tailgate is opened fully and stopped before loading or unloading cargo or passengers from the vehicle.**

NOTICE

Do not close or open the power tailgate manually. This may cause damage to the power tailgate. If it is necessary to close or open the power tailgate manually when the battery is discharged or disconnected, do not apply excessive force.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 42 2020-09-24 7:58:53

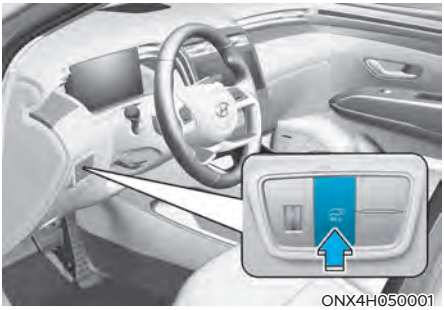
Opening the power tailgate



OTM050231L

The power tailgate will open automatically by doing one of the following:

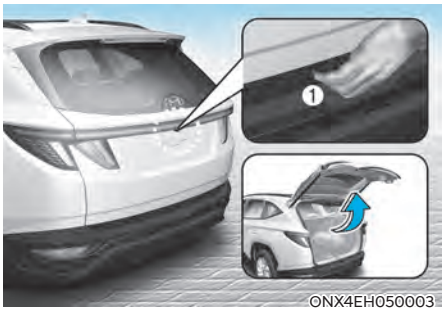
- Press the tailgate unlock button on the remote key or smart key for approximately one second.



ONX4H050001

- Press the power tailgate button for approximately one second.

For emergency stop while operating, press the power tailgate button shortly.



ONX4EH050003

- Press the tailgate handle switch (1) carrying the smart key with you.

Closing the power tailgate



OTM050231L

- Press the tailgate open/close button on the key and hold until the tailgate is fully closed.
- Releasing the tailgate open/close button on the key stops tailgate movement with the buzzer sound approximately for 5 seconds.
- For emergency stop while power tailgate operating, press the tailgate open/close button on the key shortly.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 43 2020-09-24 7:58:53


ONX4050029

- To close power tailgate completely when tailgate is opened, you must press the close button until it is closed. During the closing operation buzzer sounds continuously. If you release the close button while closing, the tailgate will stop closing and the buzzer will sound approximately for 5 seconds.
- For emergency stop while power tailgate operating, press the power tailgate open/close button shortly.


ONX4050029

- Press the power tailgate inner button for approximately one second when the tailgate is opened.

  The tailgate will close and lock automatically.

Automatic reverse


ONX4E050030

During power opening or closing if the power tailgate senses any obstacle, the power tailgate will stop and move in the opposite direction.

The auto reverse function may not work if objects are too soft or thin, or if the tailgate is almost fully closed near the latched position.

Caution should be taken to prevent any objects from obstructing the tailgate opening.

If the automatic reverse feature operates more than two times while attempting to open or close the tailgate, the power tailgate may stop at that position. If this occurs, carefully close the tailgate manually, and then try to operate the power tailgate automatically again.

WARNING

Never intentionally place any object or part of your body in the path of the power tailgate to make sure the automatic reverse function operates.

NOTICE

Do not put heavy objects on the power tailgate before you operate the power tailgate. Additional weight may damage the operation of the system.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 44 2020-09-24 7:58:53

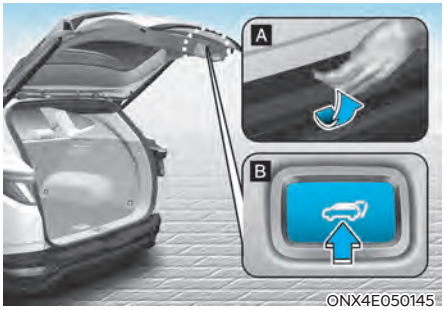
Non-operating conditions of the power tailgate

- The power tailgate does not open when the vehicle is in motion.

  The chime will sound if you drive with the tailgate opened. Stop your vehicle immediately at a safe place and check if your tailgate is opened.
- Operating the power tailgate more than 5 times continuously could cause damage to the operating motor. If this occurs, the power tailgate system enters into thermal protection mode to prevent the motor from overheating. In thermal protection mode, the power tailgate will not operate. If any of the power tailgate buttons are pressed to try to open the tailgate, the chime will sound 3 times but the tailgate will remain closed.

  Allow the power tailgate system to cool for about 1 minute before operating the system again.

Resetting the power tailgate



If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, or if the power tailgate fuse has been replaced or removed, reset the power tailgate by performing the following procedure:

1. Put the gear in P (Park).
2. Press the power tailgate inner button (B) and the power tailgate handle switch (A) simultaneously for more than 3 seconds. The chime will sound.
3. Close the tailgate manually.

If the power tailgate does not work properly after the above procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Information

If the power tailgate does not operate normally, check again if the gear position is in right position.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 45 2020-09-24 7:58:53

WARNING



Do not hold on to or try to pull on the tailgate strut. Be aware that the deformation of the tailgate strut may cause vehicle damage and risk of injury.

Setting the power tailgate

The driver can select the power tailgate opening height or speed from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.



OJX1059111L

Power tailgate opening height

To adjust the power tailgate opening height, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Door/Tailgate → Power Tailgate Opening Height → Full Open/Level 3/ Level 2/Level 1/User Height Setting'.

For more details, please refer to the infotainment system manual separately supplied.

If 'User Height Setting' is selected, follow the instructions below to set the height of the power tailgate manually.

Position the tailgate manually to the height you prefer.



Press the power tailgate open/close button located inside the tailgate for more than 3 seconds.

Close the tailgate manually after hearing the buzzer sound.

The tailgate will open to the automatically adjusted height that was set.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 46 2020-09-24 7:58:53

Power tailgate opening speed

You can adjust the power tailgate opening speed from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. 'Door → Power Tailgate Opening Speed → Fast/Slow'.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display" In chapter 4.

WARNING

Always keep the tailgate completely closed while the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases containing carbon monoxide (CO) may enter the vehicle and serious illness or death may result.

WARNING

Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.

Emergency tailgate safety release



Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate inside the vehicle.

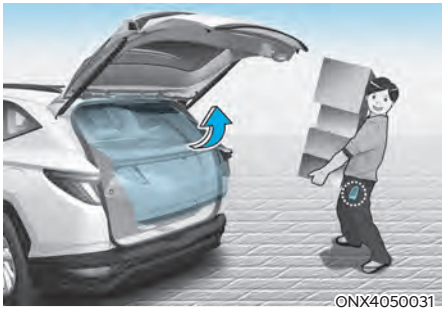
When someone is inadvertently locked in the luggage compartment, the tailgate can be opened by moving the lever in the direction of the arrow and pushing the tailgate open.

WARNING

- **Be aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in your vehicle and know how to open the tailgate using the safety release lever.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use extreme caution, especially while the vehicle is in motion.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 47 2020-09-24 7:58:54

Smart tailgate (if equipped)



On a vehicle equipped with a smart key, the tailgate can be opened with hands-free activation using the smart tailgate system.

Using smart tailgate

The hands-free smart tailgate system can be opened automatically when the following conditions are met:

- The smart tailgate option is enabled in the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.
- The smart tailgate is activated and ready 15 seconds after all the doors are closed and locked.
- The smart tailgate will open when the smart key is detected in the area behind the vehicle for 3 seconds.

Information

The smart tailgate will NOT operate when:

- **A door is not locked or closed.**
- **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds from when the doors were closed and locked.**
- **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and within 1.5 m (60 in.) from the front door handles. (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Light).**
- **The smart key is in the vehicle.**

1. Settings

   To activate the Smart Tailgate, go to User Settings Mode and select Smart Tailgate on the LCD display.

2. Detect and Alert

   The smart tailgate detecting area extends approximately 50-100 cm (20-40 in.) behind the vehicle. If you are positioned in the detecting area and are carrying the smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound to alert you that the smart tailgate will open.

Information

Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the tailgate to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, move away from the area behind the vehicle with the smart key. The tailgate will remain closed.

3. Automatic opening

   After the hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds 6 times, the smart tailgate will open.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 48 2020-09-24 7:58:54

Deactivating smart tailgate

■ Type A



OTM050057L

■ Type B



OTM050059L

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Tailgate lock / unlock (Tailgate)
   Tailgate open / close (Power tailgate)

If you press any button on the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the smart tailgate will be deactivated.

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the smart tailgate for emergency situations.

- If you press the door unlock button (2), the smart tailgate will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart tailgate will be activated again.
- If you press the tailgate open button (3) for more than 1 second, the tailgate opens.
- The smart tailgate will still be activated if you press the door lock button (1) or tailgate open/close button (3) on the smart key as long as the smart tailgate is not already in the Detect and Alert stage.
- In case you have deactivated the smart tailgate by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the smart tailgate can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.

Detecting area



ⓞNX4E050032

- The smart tailgate detecting area extends approximately 50-100 cm (20-40 in.) behind the vehicle. If you are positioned in the detecting area and are carrying the smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you that the tailgate will open.
- The alert stops once the smart key is moved outside of the detecting area within the 3 second period.

Information

- **Smart tailgate may not operate properly if any of the following occur:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**
- **Smart tailgate detecting area may change when:**
  - **The vehicle is parked on an incline or slope.**
  - **One side of the vehicle is raised or lowered relative to the opposite side.**

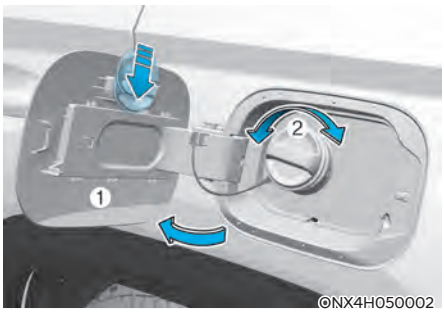
005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 49 2020-09-24 7:58:54

Fuel filler door

Opening the fuel filler door



1. Turn the engine off.
2. Ensure the all doors are unlocked.
3. Press the rear center edge of the fuel filler door.



4. Pull the fuel filler door (1) outward to access the fuel tank cap.
5. To remove the fuel tank cap (2), turn it counterclockwise. You may hear a hissing noise as the pressure inside the tank equalizes.
6. Place the cap on the fuel filler door.

Information

The fuel filler door will unlock when all doors are unlocked.

To unlock fuel filler door:

- **Press the unlock button on your smart key**
- **Press the Central Door unlock button on armrest trim of driver's door**

The fuel filler door will lock when all doors are locked.

To lock fuel filler door:

- **Press the lock button on your smart key**
- **Press the Central Door lock button on armrest trim of driver's door**

✳ **All doors will automatically lock after the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h**

Fuel filler door is also locked when vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h

Information

If the fuel filler door does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the door to break the ice and release the door. Do not pry on the door. If necessary, spray around the door with an approved deicer fluid (do not use radiator antifreeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 50 2020-09-24 7:58:54

Closing the fuel filler door

1. To install the fuel tank cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks” one time.
2. Close the fuel filler door until it is latched securely.

Information

Make the vehicle door to LOCK position and the fuel filler door completely closed in order to lock the fuel filler door.

If the fuel filler door is not completely closed, the fuel filler door will not be locked.

CAUTION

Keep the door into LOCK position when the vehicle is being washed (i.e. high pressure washer, automatic car washer, etc.)

WARNING

Automotive fuel is highly flammable and explosive. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- **Read and follow all warnings posted at the gas station.**
- **Before refueling, note the location of the Emergency Fuel Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station.**
- **Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate the potential build-up of static electricity by touching a metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source, with your bare hand.**
- **Do not use mobile phones while refueling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from cellular phones can potentially ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.**
- **Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refueling. You can generate a buildup of static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other fuel source, with your bare hand.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 51 2020-09-24 7:58:54

- When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refueling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.

  Once refueling has begun, contact between your bare hand and the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store fuel.
- When refueling, always shift the gear to the P (Park) position, set the parking brake, and place the ignition switch to the LOCK/OFF position. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.
- Do not use matches or a lighter and do not smoke or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle while at a gas station, especially during refueling.
- Do not over-fill or top-off your vehicle tank, which can cause fuel spillage.
- If a fire breaks out during refueling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.
- If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and thus subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.
- Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

Information

Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the “Fuel Requirements” section in suggested in chapter 1.

NOTICE

- Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.
- If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, we recommend that you use only a genuine HYUNDAI cap or the equivalent specified for your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 52 2020-09-24 7:58:54

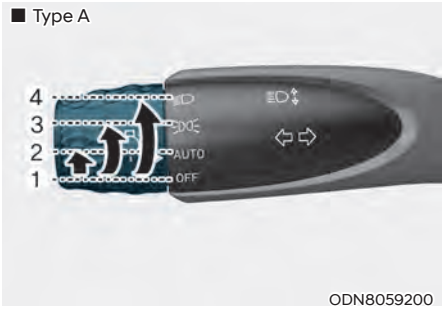
LIGHTING

Exterior lights

Lighting control

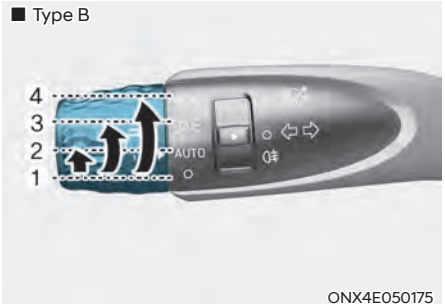
To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

■ Type A



ODN8059200

■ Type B



ONX4E050175

■ Type C



ODN8059200L

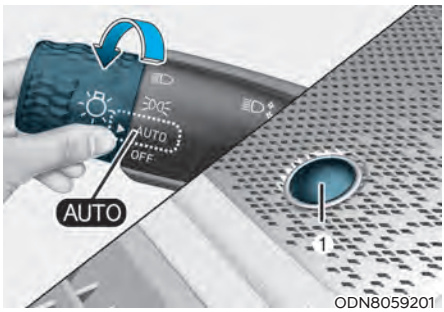
1. OFF (O) position
2. AUTO light position (if equipped)
3. Position lamp position
4. Headlamp position

Daytime Running Light (DRL)

The Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day, especially after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will turn the dedicated lamp OFF when :

- The headlamps are ON.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is turned off.



ODN8059201

AUTO headlamp position

The position lamp and headlamp will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of daylight as measured by the ambient light sensor (1) at the upper end of the windshield glass.

Even with the AUTO headlamp feature in operation, it is recommended to manually turn ON the headlamps when driving at night or in a fog, driving in the rain, or when you enter dark areas, such as tunnels and parking facilities.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 53 2020-09-24 7:58:54

NOTICE

- **Do not cover or spill anything on the sensor (1) located at the upper end of the windshield glass.**
- **Do not clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleanser may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.**
- **If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windshield, the AUTO headlamp system may not work properly.**



ODN8059202

Position lamp position

The position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.



ODN8059203

Headlamp position

The headlamp, position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.

Information

The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlamp.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 54 2020-09-24 7:58:55

High beam operation



ODN8059205

To turn on the high beam headlamp, push the lever away from you. The lever will return to its original position.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlamp high beams are switched on.

To turn off the high beam headlamp, pull the lever towards you. The low beams will turn on.

WARNING

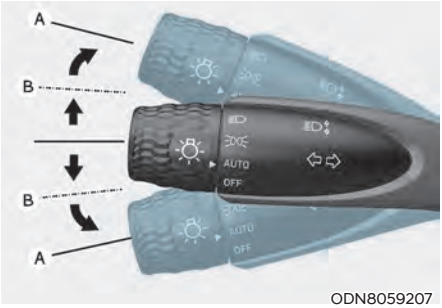
Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles approaching you. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.



ODN8059204

To flash the high beam headlamp, pull the lever towards you, then release the lever. The high beams will remain ON as long as you hold the lever towards you.

Turn signals and lane change signals



ODN8059207

To signal a turn, push down on the lever for a left turn or up for a right turn in position (A). To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B).

The lever will return to the OFF position when released or when the turn is completed.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

One touch turn signal

To use One Touch Turn Signal push the turn signal lever up or down to position (B) and then release it.

The lane change signals will blink 3, 5 or 7 times.

You can enable the One Touch Turn Signal function or choose the number of blinking by selecting 'Setup → User Settings → Lights → One Touch Turn Signal → Off/3 flashes/5 flashes/7 flashes' in the instrument panel LCD cluster.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 55 2020-09-24 7:58:55

Rear fog lamp (if equipped)



ODN8059280L

To turn on the rear fog lamp:

Position the headlamp switch in the headlamp position, and then turn the headlamp switch (1) to the rear fog lamp position.

To turn the rear fog lamps off, do one of the following:

- Turn off the headlamp switch.
- Turn the headlamp switch (1) to the rear fog lamp position again.

Battery saver function

The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the position lamp when the driver turns the vehicle off and opens the driver-side door.

With this feature, the position lamps will turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

If necessary, to keep the lamps on when the vehicle is turned off, perform the following:

(1) Open the driver-side door.

(2) Turn the position lamps OFF and ON again using the headlamp switch on the steering column.

Headlamp delay function (if equipped)

If you place the ignition switch to the ACC position or the OFF position with the headlamps ON, the headlamps (and/or position lamps) remain on for about 5 minutes. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps are turned off after 15 seconds. Also, with the vehicle off if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps (and/or position lamps) are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlamps (and/or position lamps) can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the remote key or smart key twice or turning the headlamp switch to the OFF or AUTO position.

You can enable the headlamp delay function by selecting 'Setup → User Settings → Lights → Headlight Delay.

NOTICE

If the driver exits the vehicle through another door besides the driver door, the battery saver function does not operate and the headlamp delay function does not turn OFF automatically.

This may cause the battery to discharge. To avoid battery discharge, turn OFF the headlamps manually from the headlamp switch before exiting the vehicle.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 56 2020-09-24 7:58:55

Headlamp leveling device



Manual type (if equipped)

To adjust the headlamp beam level according to the number of the passengers and loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam leveling switch.

The higher the number on the switch position, the lower the headlamp beam level. Always keep the headlamp beam at the proper leveling position, otherwise headlamps may dazzle other road users.

Listed below are examples of appropriate switch settings for varying loads. For loading conditions other than those listed, adjust the switch position to the most similar situation.

Loading condition	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver + Front passenger	0
Full passengers (including driver)	1
Full passengers (including driver) + Maximum permissible loading	2
Driver + Maximum permissible loading	3

WARNING

If the function does not work properly, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 57 2020-09-24 7:58:55

Low Beam Assist-Static light (if equipped)

While driving a corner, for greater visibility and safety, either the left or right side Low Beam Assist-Static light will turn on automatically. The Low Beam Assist-Static light will turn on when one of the following conditions occur.

Vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h (6 mph) and steering wheel angle is turned approximately 80 degrees with the low beam on.

Vehicle speed is between 10 km/h (6 mph) to 90 km/h (56 mph) and steering wheel angle is turned approximately 35 degrees with the low beam on.

When the vehicle is in reverse with one of the conditions above satisfied, the light opposite to the direction the steering wheel is turned will turn on.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 58 2020-09-24 7:58:55

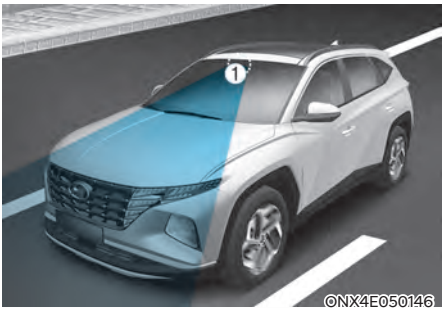
HIGH BEAM ASSIST (HBA) (IF EQUIPPED)



ODN8059206

High Beam Assist will automatically adjust the headlamp range (switches between high beam and low beam) depending on the brightness of detected vehicles and certain road conditions.

Detecting sensor (Front view camera)



ONX4E050146

[1] : Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect ambient light and brightness while driving.

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

NOTICE

Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of High Beam Assist.

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

System settings

With the engine on, select 'Lights → High Beam Assist (or HBA (High Beam Assist))' from the Settings menu to turn on High Beam Assist and deselect to turn off the system.

WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 59 2020-09-24 7:58:55

System operation

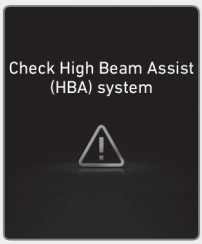
Display and control

- After selecting 'High Beam Assist' in the Settings menu, High Beam Assist will operate by following the procedure below.
  - Place the headlamp switch in the AUTO position and push the headlamp lever towards the instrument cluster. The High Beam Assist (AUTO) indicator light will illuminate on the cluster and the system will be enabled.
  - When the system is enabled, high beam will turn on when vehicle speed is above 40 km/h (25 mph). When vehicle speed is below 25 km/h (15 mph), high beam will not turn on.
  - The High Beam indicator light will illuminate on the cluster when high beam is on.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, if the headlamp lever or switch is used, the system operates as follow:
  - If the headlamp lever is pulled towards you when the high beam is off, the high beam will turn on without High Beam Assist canceled. When you let go of the headlamp lever, the lever will move to the middle and the high beam will turn off.
  - If the headlamp lever is pulled towards you when the high beam is on by High Beam Assist, low beam will be on and the system will turn off.
  - If the headlamp switch is placed from AUTO to another position (headlamp/position/off), High Beam Assist will turn off and the corresponding lamp will turn on.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, high beam switches to low beam if any of the following conditions occur:
  - When the headlamp of an oncoming vehicle is detected.
  - When the tail lamp of a vehicle in front is detected.
  - When the headlamp or tail lamp of a motorcycle or a bicycle is detected.
  - When the surrounding ambient light is bright enough that high beams are not required.
  - When streetlights or other lights are detected.

System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction

■ Type A



OTM050218N

■ Type B



OTM050218L

When High Beam Assist is not working properly, the 'Check High Beam Assist (HBA) system' or 'Check HBA (High Beam Assist system' warning message will appear and ⚠ warning light will illuminate on the cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 60 2020-09-24 7:58:55

Limitations of the system

High Beam Assist may not work properly in the following situations:

- Light from a vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, or because it is hidden from sight, etc.
- Headlamp of a vehicle is covered with dust, snow or water.
- A vehicle's headlamps are off but the fog lamps are on and etc.
- There is a lamp that has a similar shape as a vehicle's lamp.
- Headlamps have been damaged or not repaired properly.
- Headlamps are not aimed properly.
- Driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, uphill or downhill.
- Vehicle in front is partially visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road conditions are bad such as being wet, iced or covered with snow.
- A vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- The vehicle is tilted from a flat tire or is being towed.
- Light from a vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, etc.

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

WARNING

- **At times, High Beam Assist may not work properly. It is the responsibility of the driver for safe driving practices and always check the road conditions for your safety.**
- **When High Beam Assist does not operate normally, change the headlamp position manually between high beam and low beam.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 61 2020-09-24 7:58:55

INTERIOR LIGHTS

WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. The interior lights may obscure your view and cause an accident.

NOTICE

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the vehicle is turned off or the battery will discharge.

Interior lamp AUTO cut

The interior lamps will automatically go off approximately 10 minutes after the vehicle is turned off and the doors are closed. If a door is opened, the lamp will go off 40 minutes after the vehicle is turned off. If the doors are locked by the smart key and the vehicle enters the armed stage of the theft alarm system, the lamps will go off five seconds later.

Front lamps



(1) Front Map Lamp
(2) Front Door Lamp
(3) Front Room Lamp ON/OFF

Front map lamp :

Touch either icons to turn the map lamp on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map lamp at night or as a personal lamp for the driver and the front passenger.

Door lamp ( ):

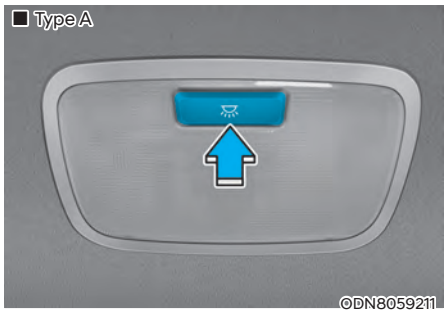
The front or rear room lamps come on when the front or rear doors are opened. When doors are unlocked by the smart key, the front and rear lamps come on for approximately 30 seconds as long as any door is not opened. The front and rear room lamps go out gradually after approximately 30 seconds when the door is closed. However, if the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position or all doors are locked, the front and rear lamps will turn off. If a door is opened with the ignition switch in the ACC position or the OFF position, the front and rear lamps will stay on for about 20 minutes.

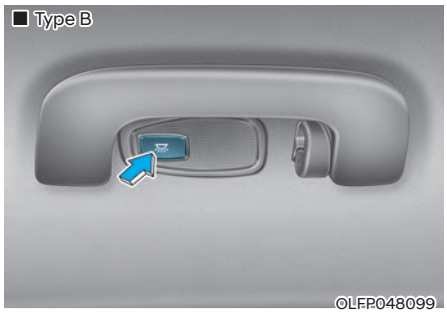
Room lamp ( )

Press the button to turn ON the room lamp for the front/rear seats.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 62 2020-09-24 7:58:56

Rear lamps (if equipped)

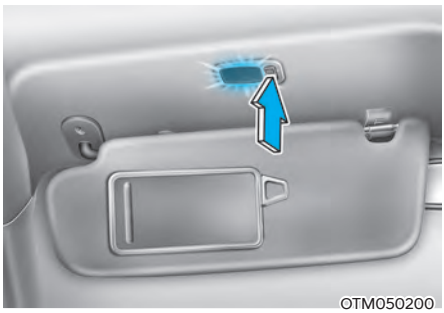




Rear room lamp switch :

Press this button to turn the room lamp on and off.

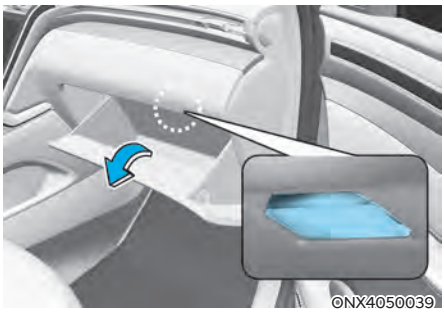
Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)



Push the switch to turn the light on or off.

- : The lamp will turn on if this button is pressed.
- ◯ : The lamp will turn off if this button is pressed.

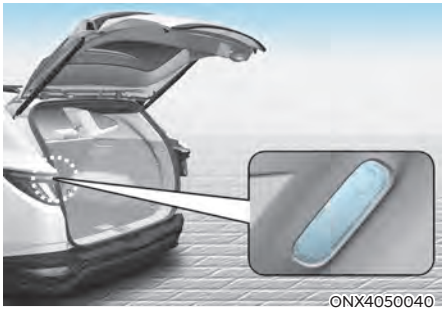
Glove box lamp



The glove box lamp turns on when the glove box is opened.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 63 2020-09-24 7:58:56

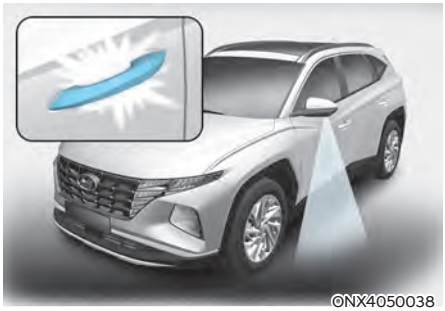
Luggage compartment lamp



The luggage compartment lamp is on when the tailgate is opened.

The luggage compartment lamp if off when the tailgate is closed.

Welcome system



Welcome system helps keep the driver visible by turning on vehicle lights when the driver approaches the vehicle.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 64 2020-09-24 7:58:56

Door handle lamp

When all the doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the door handle lamp will turn on for approximately 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

1. If 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/ light → On door unlock' is selected in the User Settings mode on the LCD display,
   - the lamps will turn on when the door lock button is pressed on the smart key.
   - the lamps will turn on when the button of the outside door handle is pressed with the smart key in possession.
2. If both 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock' and 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On driver approach' is selected in the User Settings mode on the LCD display, the lamps will turn on when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

You can activate or deactivate Welcome Light function from the User Settings mode on the LCD display.

Headlamp and position lamp

When the headlamp (lamp switch in the headlamp or AUTO position) is on and all doors (and tailgate) are locked and closed, the position lamp and headlamp will come on for 15 seconds when the door unlock button is pressed on the remote key or smart key.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button, the position lamp and headlamp will turn off immediately.

Interior lamp

When the interior lamp switch is in the position and all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the room lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the remote key or smart key.
- When you put your hand in the outside door handle while carrying the smart key.

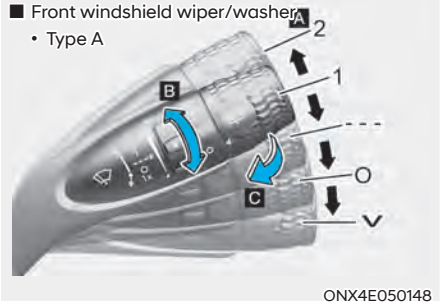
At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key the lamps will turn off immediately.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 65 2020-09-24 7:58:56

WIPERS AND WASHERS

■ Front windshield wiper/washer

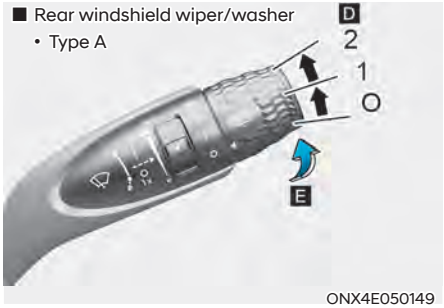
• Type A



ONX4E050148

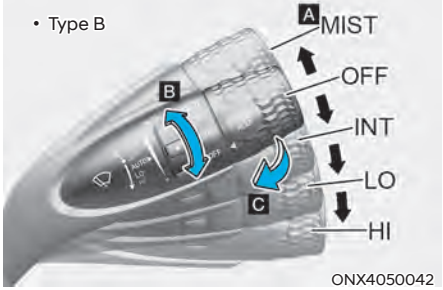
■ Rear windshield wiper/washer

• Type A



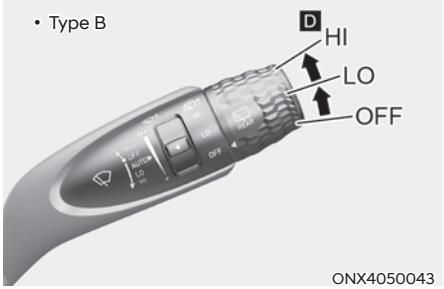
ONX4E050149

• Type B



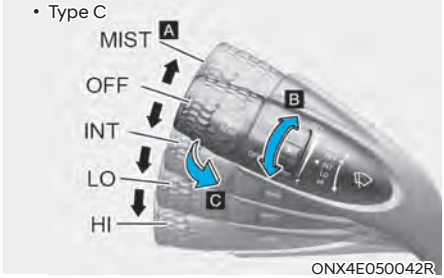
ONX4050042

• Type B



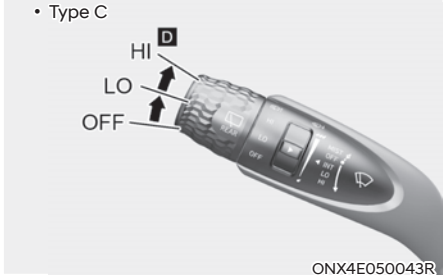
ONX4050043

• Type C



ONX4E050042R

• Type C



ONX4E050043R

A. Wiper speed control (front)
   - V / MIST – Single wipe
   - O / OFF – Off
   - --- / INT – Intermittent wipe
     AUTO* – Auto control wipe
   - 1 / LO– Low wiper speed
   - 2 / HI – High wiper speed

B. Intermittent control wipe time adjustment

C. Wash with brief wipes (front)

D. Rear wiper control*
   - 2 / HI – High wiper speed
   - 1 / LO– Low wiper speed
   - O / OFF – Off

E. Wash with brief wipes (rear)

* : if equipped

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 66 2020-09-24 7:58:57

Windshield wipers

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

V (MIST) : For a single wiping cycle, move the lever down (V) or up (MIST) and release it. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

O (OFF) : Wipers are not in operation.

--- (INT) : Wipers operate intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

1 (LO) : The wiper runs at a lower speed.

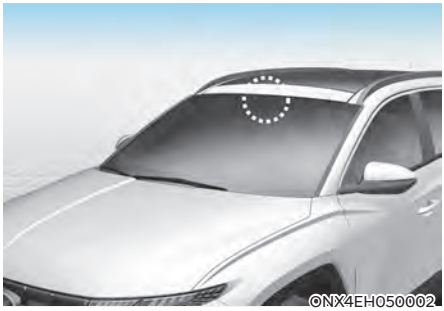
2 (HI) : The wiper runs at a higher speed.

Information

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windshield, defrost the windshield for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windshield wipers to ensure proper operation.

If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.

AUTO (Automatic) control (if equipped)



The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windshield glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval.

The wiper operation time will be automatically controlled depends on rainfall.

When the rain stops, the wiper stops.

To vary the sensitivity setting, turn the sensitivity control knob.

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to the OFF (O) position when the wiper is not in use.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 67 2020-09-24 7:58:57

WARNING

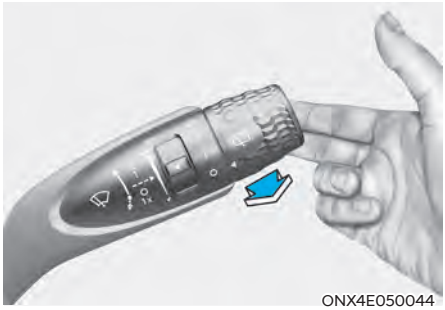
To avoid personal injury from the windshield wipers, when the engine is running and the windshield wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode:

- **Do not touch the upper end of the windshield glass facing the rain sensor.**
- **Do not wipe the upper end of the windshield glass with a damp or wet cloth.**
- **Do not put pressure on the windshield glass.**

NOTICE

- **When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF (O) position to stop the auto wiper operation. The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode while washing the vehicle.**
- **Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windshield glass. Damage to system components could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.**
- **Because of using a photo sensor, temporary malfunction could occur according to sudden ambient light change made by stone and dust while driving.**

Front windshield washers



ONX4E050044

In the OFF (O) position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever. If the washer does not work, you may need to add washer fluid to the washer fluid reservoir.

Recirculating air when washer fluid is used

When washer fluid is used, in order to reduce any objectionable scent of the washer fluid from entering the cabin, recirculation mode and air conditioning are automatically activated depending on the outside temperature. If you select fresh mode while the function is operating, the function will resume after a certain amount of time. It may not work in some conditions such as cold weather or engine OFF.

For more details, refer to “Climate Control Additional Features” section in this chapter.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 68 2020-09-24 7:58:57

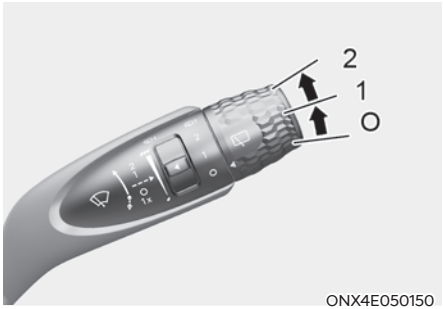
WARNING

When the outside temperature is below freezing, ALWAYS warm the windshield using the defroster to help prevent the washer fluid from freezing on the windshield and obscuring your vision which could result in an accident and serious injury or death.

NOTICE

- **To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.**
- **To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windshield, do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry.**
- **To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.**
- **To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.**

Rear window wiper and washer



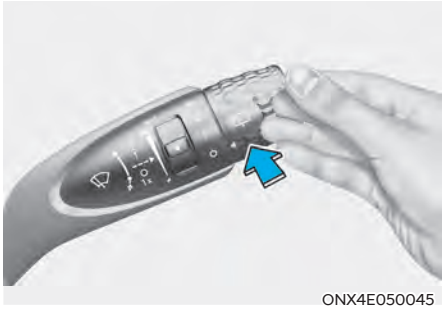
ONX4E050150

The rear window wiper and washer switch is located at the end of the wiper and washer switch lever. Turn the switch to the desired position to operate the rear wiper and washer.

HI (2) – High wiper speed

LO (1) – Low wiper speed

OFF (O) – Off



ONX4E050045

Push the lever away from you to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers 1~3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

Auto rear wiper (if equipped)

The rear wiper will operate while the vehicle is in reverse with the front wiper ON by selecting the function from the Settings menu on the LCD display. Select:

- Setup → User Settings → Convenience → Auto Rear Wiper (in R)

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 69 2020-09-24 7:58:57

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Front seat

• Left-hand drive
- Type A



- Type B



The actual shape of air conditioner may differ from the illustration.

ONX4EH050101/ ONX4EH050100

1. Driver's temperature control button/ knob
2. Passenger's temperature control button/knob
3. AUTO (automatic control) button
4. Air intake control button
5. OFF button
6. Front windshield defroster button
7. A/C (air conditioning) button
8. Fan speed control button
9. Mode selection button
10. Multi Air Mode button
11. Rear window defroster button
12. SYNC button
13. Climate control information screen
14. Driver only button

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 70 2020-09-24 7:58:57

• Right-hand drive
- Type A



- Type B



The actual shape of air conditioner may differ from the illustration.

ONX4EH050101R/ ONX4EH050100R

1. Driver's temperature control button/ knob
2. Passenger's temperature control button/knob
3. AUTO (automatic control) button
4. Air intake control button
5. OFF button
6. Front windshield defroster button
7. A/C (air conditioning) button
8. Fan speed control button
9. Mode selection button
10. Multi Air Mode button
11. Rear window defroster button
12. SYNC button
13. Climate control information screen
14. Driver only button

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 71 2020-09-24 7:58:58

■ Second row seat (if equipped)



ONX4E050161

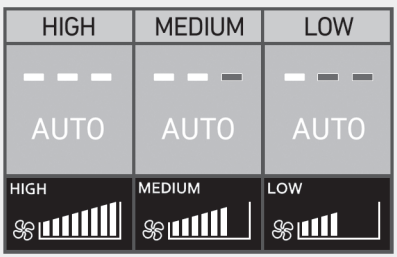
1. Temperature control

Automatic heating and air conditioning

The Automatic Climate Control System is controlled by setting the desired temperature.

1. Press the AUTO button.

   The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by the temperature setting you select.



ONX4E050162

You can control the wind strength in three stages by pushing the AUTO button during automatic operation.

- HIGH : Provide rapid air conditioning and heating with strong wind
- MEDIUM : Provide air conditioning and heating with medium strength wind
- LOW : It is suitable for drivers who prefer to soft wind.

■ Driver's seat



ONX4050113

■ Passenger's seat



ONX4050122

Turn the temperature control button/knob to set the desired temperature. If the temperature is set to the lowest setting (Lo), the air conditioning system will operate continuously.

After the interior has cooled sufficiently, adjust the button/knob to a higher temperature set point whenever possible.

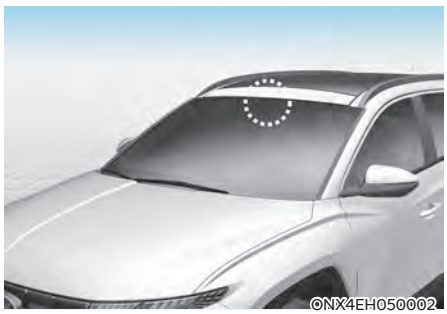
005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 72 2020-09-24 7:58:58

To turn the automatic operation off, select any button of the following:

- Mode selection button
- Front windshield defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windshield defroster function. The 'AUTO' sign will illuminate on the information display once again.)
- Fan speed control button

  The selected function will be controlled manually while other functions operate automatically.

For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 72°F (22°C).



Information

Never place anything near the sensor to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

Manual heating and air conditioning

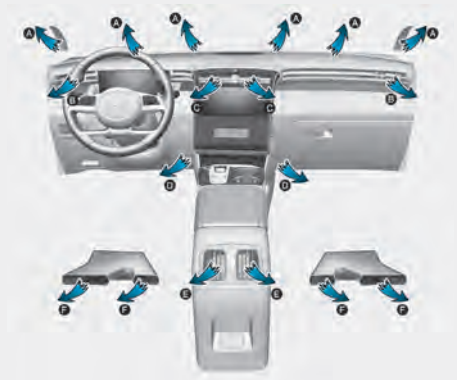
The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pushing buttons other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons selected. When pressing any button except the AUTO button while using automatic operation, the functions not selected will be controlled automatically.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position. For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling, select:
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to fresh mode.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.
7. Press the AUTO button to convert to full automatic control of the system.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 73 2020-09-24 7:58:58

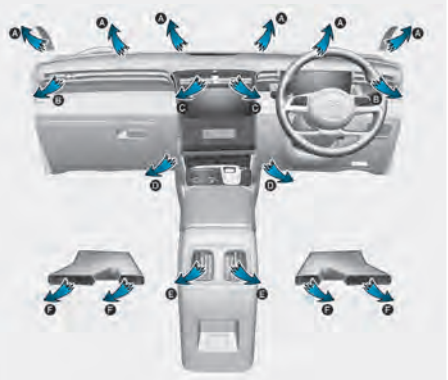
Mode selection

■ Left Hand Drive



ONX4050102

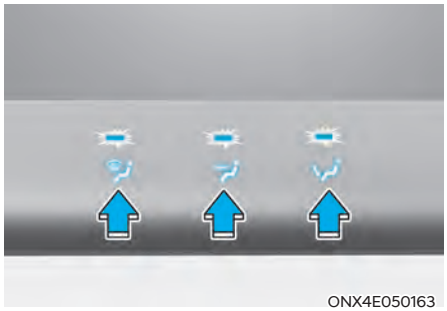
■ Right Hand Drive



ONX4E050102R

The actual shape of air conditioner may differ from the illustration.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 74 2020-09-24 7:58:59


ONX4E050163

The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Defrost-Level (A, B)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield.



Face-Level (B, C, E)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.



Floor-Level (A, B, D, E, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

Also you may select 2~3 modes at the same time.

- face ( ) + floor ( ) mode
- face ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- face ( ) + floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode

Multi air mode (B, C, D, E, F, G)

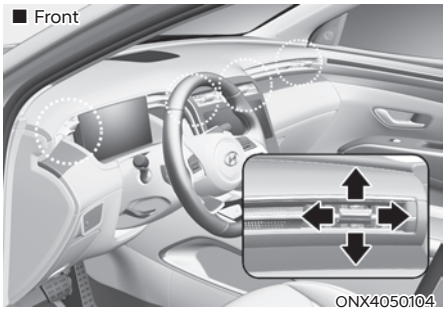
Gentle breezes come out the outlet vents.

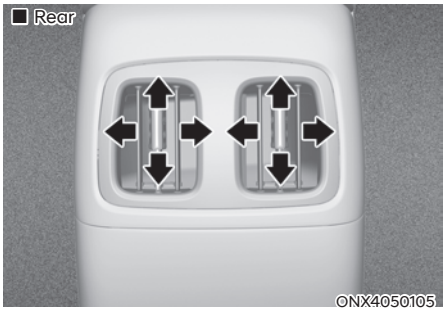
005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 75 2020-09-24 7:59:00



Defrost-Level (A, B)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.





Instrument panel vents

The instrument panel vent air flow can be directed up/down or left/right using the vent adjustment lever.

The air flow can also be CLOSED using the vent adjustment lever.

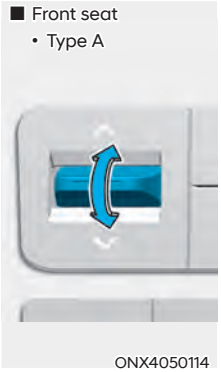
Move the lever to ⊗ position to close, and to ≋ position to open. However, the third row air vent cannot be closed.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 76 2020-09-24 7:59:00

Temperature control

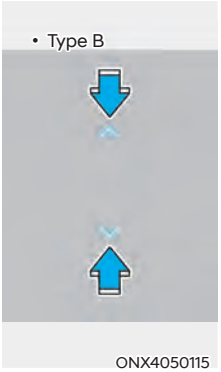
■ Front seat

• Type A



ONX4050114

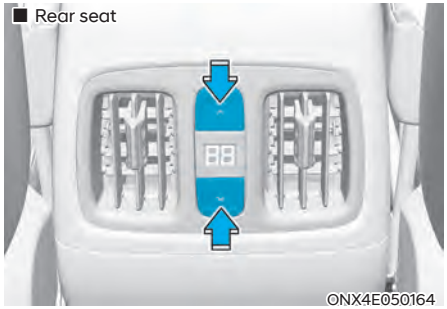
• Type B



ONX4050115

The temperature will increase by pushing the knob upward. The temperature will decrease by pushing the knob downward.

■ Rear seat



ONX4E050164

You can adjust the temperature by using the temperature control button.



ONX4050122

Adjusting the temperature equally

Press the SYNC button (indicator light ON) to adjust the driver and passenger side and the rear seat's temperature equally.

Adjusting the temperature and individually

Press the SYNC button (indicator light OFF) again to adjust the driver and passenger side and the rear seat's temperature individually.

Temperature conversion

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.

To change the temperature unit from °C to °F or °F to °C :

- Instrument cluster

  Go to Setup → Unit → Temperature unit.

The temperature unit on both the cluster LCD display and the climate control screen will change.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 77 2020-09-24 7:59:00

Air intake control

The air intake control button is used to select either Fresh mode (outside air) or Recirculation mode (cabin air).

Recirculation mode



When Recirculation mode is selected, air from the passenger compartment will be recirculated through the system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Fresh mode



When Fresh mode is selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Information

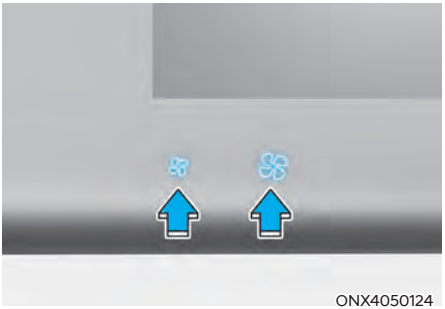
Operating the system primarily in Fresh mode is recommended. Use Recirculation mode temporarily only when needed. Prolonged operation of the heater in Recirculation mode and without the air conditioning ON can cause fogging of the windshield. In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning ON in Recirculation mode may result in excessively dry, dehumidified air in the cabin and may promote formation of musty vent odor due to stagnant air.

WARNING

- **Continued use of the climate control system operation in Recirculation mode for a prolonged period of time may cause drowsiness to the occupants in the cabin. This may lead to loss of vehicle control which may lead to an accident.**
- **Continued use of the climate control system operation in Recirculation mode with the air conditioning OFF may allow humidity to increase inside the cabin. This may cause condensation to accumulate on the windshield and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in your vehicle or remain parked in your vehicle with the windows up and either the heater or the air conditioning ON for prolonged periods of time. Doing so may increase the levels of carbon dioxide in the cabin which may lead to serious injury or death.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 78 2020-09-24 7:59:00

Fan speed control



ONX4050124

The fan speed can be set as desired by pushing the fan speed control button.

More air is delivered with higher fan speeds.

Pressing the OFF button turns off the fan.

NOTICE

Operating the fan when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the fan when the engine is running.

Air conditioning



Push the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

Push the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

OFF mode



The climate control system turns off in the following conditions:

- Select the OFF button when the fan speed is set to level 1
- Push the OFF button over 1.2 seconds

Driver Only

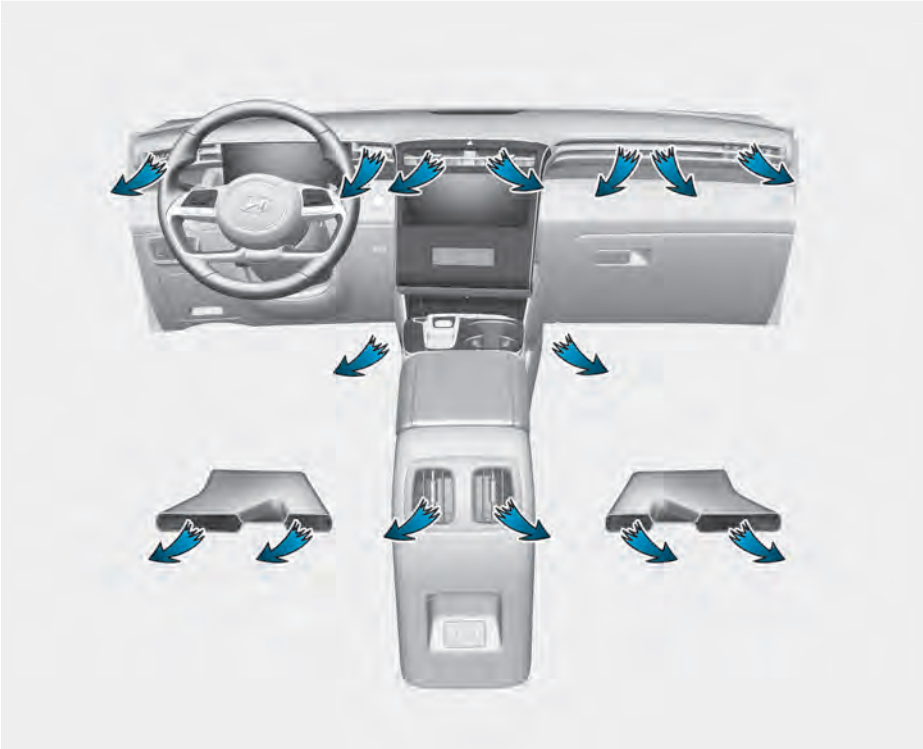
If you press the DRIVER ONLY button and the indicator light illuminates, air mostly blows in the direction of the driver's seat.

However, some of the air may come out of other seating position ducts to keep indoor air pleasant.

If you use the button with no passenger in the front passenger seat, energy consumption will be reduced.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 79 2020-09-24 7:59:00

Multi Air Mode (if equipped)



The actual shape of air conditioner may differ from the illustration.

ONX4050129

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 80 2020-09-24 7:59:01



ONX4050128

If the multi air mode button is pressed, gentle breezes from the outlet vents will provide a pleasant condition.

If the multi air mode button is pressed when the air volume is beyond level 4, it decreases to Level 3.

OFF

If you press the button once more, it returns to the previous multi air mode. If you press the mode selection button, it operates according to the altered wind direction.

System operation

Ventilation

1. Select the Face Level mode.
2. Set the air intake control to fresh mode.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Select the Face Level mode.
2. Set the air intake control to fresh mode.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If desired, turn the air conditioning ON with the temperature control knob set to heat in order to dehumidify the air before it enters into the cabin.

If the windshield fog up, select the front windshield defroster button.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculation mode. Be sure to return the control to fresh mode position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to fresh mode and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 81 2020-09-24 7:59:01

Air conditioning

HYUNDAI Air Conditioning Systems are filled with R-134a or R-1234yf refrigerant.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Select the Face Level mode.
3. Set the air intake control to Recirculation mode temporarily to allow the cabin to cool quickly. When the desired temperature in the cabin is reached, change the air intake control back to Fresh mode.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

Information



Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of production. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the hood. Refer to chapter 8 for the location of the air conditioning refrigerant label.

NOTICE

- **The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.**
- **The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.**
- **The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) shall never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle and new replacement MAC evaporators shall be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.**

NOTICE

- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.**
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

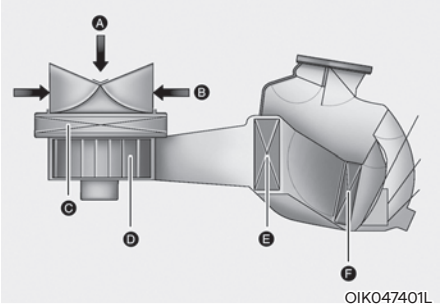
005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 82 2020-09-24 7:59:01

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- After sufficient cooling has been achieved, switch back from recirculation mode to fresh mode.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system with the windows and sunroof closed.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- If you operate the air conditioner excessively, the difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection button to the position and set the fan speed control knob to the lowest speed setting.

System maintenance

Cabin air filter



OIK047401L

[A] : Outside air, [B] : Recirculated air
[C] : Cabin air filter, [D] : Blower
[E] : Evaporator core, [F] : Heater core

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system.

If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windshield even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected.

If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Information

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**

  If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 83 2020-09-24 7:59:01

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also reduces the performance of the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

NOTICE

It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used. Otherwise, damage to the compressor and abnormal system operation may occur. To prevent damage, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

WARNING

Vehicles equipped with R-134a



Since the refrigerant is operated at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

All refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment.
Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment. Failure to heed these warnings can lead to serious injuries.

WARNING

Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf



Since the refrigerant is mildly flammable and operated at high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant are used.

All refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment.
Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment. Failure to heed these warnings can lead to serious injuries.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 84 2020-09-24 7:59:01

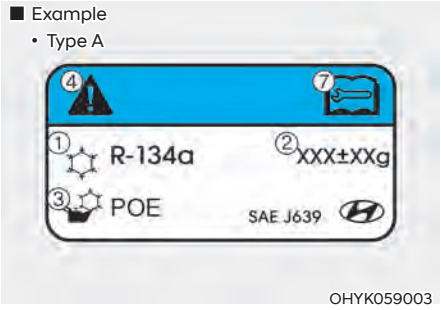


Air Conditioning refrigerant label

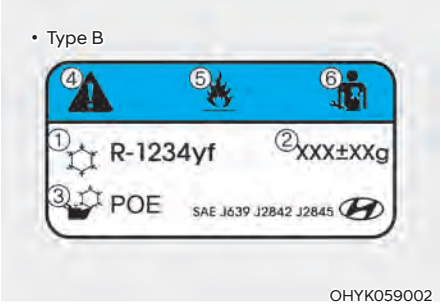
You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the hood.

■ Example

• Type A



• Type B



Each symbols and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented as below:

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of compressor lubricant
4. Caution
5. Flammable refrigerant
6. To require registered technician to service air conditioning system
7. Service manual

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 85 2020-09-24 7:59:01

WINDSHIELD DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

WARNING

Windshield heating

Do not use the position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility could cause an accident resulting in serious injury or death. In this case, set the mode selection button to the position and fan speed control knob to a lower speed.

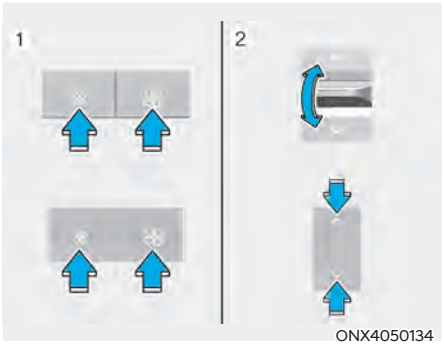
- For maximum defrost performance, set the temperature control to the highest temperature setting and the fan speed control to the highest setting.
- If warm air to the floor is desired while defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windshield, rear window, outside rearview mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the hood and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield.

NOTICE

If the engine temperature is still cold after starting, then a brief engine warm up period may be required for the vented air flow to become warm or hot.

Automatic climate control system

To defog inside windshield



ONX4050134

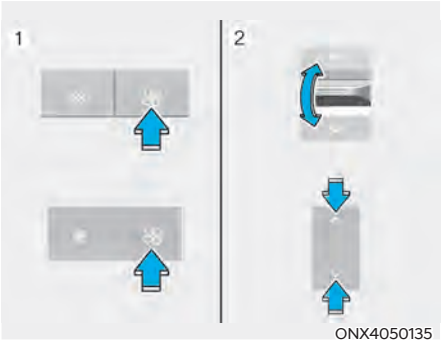
1. Select the desired fan speed.
2. Select the desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button ().
4. The air-conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature, fresh mode and higher fan speed will be selected automatically.

If the air-conditioning, fresh mode and higher fan speed are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button or knob manually.

If the position is selected, lower fan speed is controlled to higher fan speed.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 86 2020-09-24 7:59:02

To defrost outside windshield



1. Set fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The air-conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and fresh mode will be selected automatically.

If the position is selected, lower fan speed is controlled to higher fan speed.

Auto defogging system (only for automatic climate control system, if equipped)

Auto defogging reduces the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windshield by automatically sensing the moisture on inside the windshield.

The auto defogging system operates when the heater or air conditioning is on.

Information

The auto defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperature is below -10 °C.

To cancel or set the Auto Defogging System, keep the front defroster button pressed for 3 seconds. The “ADS OFF” symbol will be shown in the climate display to inform you that the system is deactivated. To re-activate the auto defogging system, follow the procedure mentioned above and the “ADS OFF” symbol will disappear.

If the battery has been disconnected or discharged, it resets to the auto defogging status.

Information

For efficiency, do not select recirculated air position while the Auto defogging system is operating.

NOTICE

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the top of the windshield glass.

Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 87 2020-09-24 7:59:02

Rear window defroster

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the rear window defroster conducting elements bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.



The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, while the engine is running.

- To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the center control panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
- To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

Information

- **If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.**
- **The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.**

Outside rearview mirror defroster (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with the rearview mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 88 2020-09-24 7:59:02

CLIMATE CONTROL ADDITIONAL FEATURES

Auto defogging system (if equipped)



Auto defogging helps reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windshield by automatically sensing the moisture on inside the windshield.

The auto defogging system operates when the heater or air conditioning is on.

Information

The auto defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperature is below -10 °C (14 °F).

It is possible that air conditioning is off while Auto Defogging System is ON.

Turning the Auto Defogging System ON or OFF

Climate control system

Press the front windshield defroster button for 3 seconds when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. When the Auto Defogging System is turned off, the ADS OFF symbol will blink 3 times and ADS OFF will be displayed on the climate control information screen.

When the Auto Defogging System is turned on, the ADS OFF symbol will blink 6 times without a signal.

Infotainment system

Auto Defogging System can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Defog/ Defrost Options → Auto Defog' from the infotainment system screen.

For detailed information, refer to the separately supplied infotainment system manual.

Information

- **When the air conditioning is turned on by Auto Defogging System, if you try to turn off the air conditioning, the indicator will blink 3 times and the air conditioning will not be turned off.**
- **To maintain the effectiveness and efficiency of the Auto Defogging System, do not select Recirculation mode while the system is operating.**
- **When Auto Defogging System is operating, fan speed adjustment, temperature adjustment, and air intake control selection are all disabled.**

NOTICE

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the windshield glass.

Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 89 2020-09-24 7:59:02

Auto dehumidify (if equipped)

To increase cabin air quality and reduce windshield misting, recirculation mode switches off automatically after about 5 to 30 minutes, depending on the outside temperature, and the air intake will change to fresh mode.

Turning Auto Dehumidify ON or OFF

Infotainment system

Auto Dehumidify can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Automatic Ventilation → Auto Dehumidify' from the infotainment system screen.

For detailed information, refer to the separately supplied infotainment system manual.

Recirculating air when washer fluid is used (if equipped)

Recirculation mode automatically activates to reduce any objectionable scent of the washer fluid from entering the cabin when the windshield washer is used.

However, in cold weather to prevent the windshield from fogging up, the recirculation mode may not be selected.

Turning Activate upon Washer Fluid Use ON or OFF

Infotainment system

Activate upon Washer Fluid Use can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Recirculate Air → Activate upon Washer Fluid Use (or Interlocking washer fluid)' from the infotainment system screen.

For detailed information, refer to the separately supplied infotainment system manual.

Sunroof inside air recirculation (if equipped)

When the is sunroof opened, fresh mode will be automatically selected. At this time, if you press the air intake control button, recirculation mode will be selected but will change back to fresh mode after 3 minutes. When the sunroof is closed, the air intake position will return to the original position that was selected.

Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

The temperature of the driver's seat warmer, air ventilated seat and heated steering wheel is automatically controlled depending on the inside and outside temperature of the vehicle when the engine is running.

To use these features, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings

For more details on Auto Comfort Control, refer to "Seat Warmers" and "Air ventilation seats" section in chapter 3 and "Heated Steering Wheel" section in chapter 5.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 90 2020-09-24 7:59:02

STORAGE COMPARTMENT

WARNING

Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.

WARNING

ALWAYS keep the storage compartment covers closed securely while driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items may fly out of the compartment and may cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passenger.

NOTICE

To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.

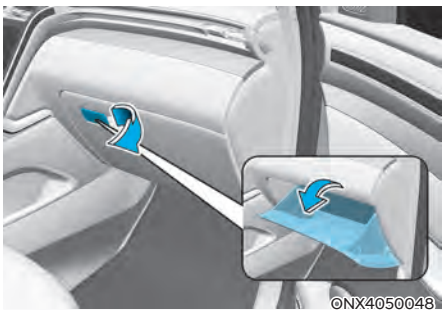
Center console storage



To open:

Press the button.

Glove box



To open:

Pull the lever.

WARNING

ALWAYS close the glove box door after use.

An open glove box door can cause serious injury to the passenger in an accident, even if the passenger is wearing a seat belt.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 91 2020-09-24 7:59:02

Luggage tray (if equipped)



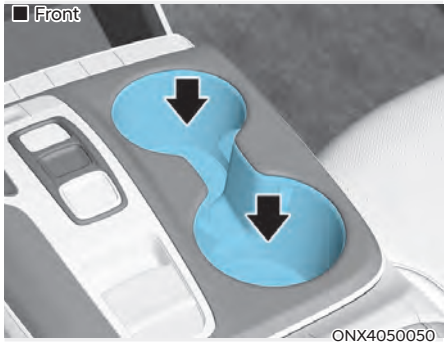
You can place a first aid kit, a reflector triangle (front tray), tools, etc. in the box for easy access.

- Grasp the handle on the top of the cover and lift it.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 92 2020-09-24 7:59:02

INTERIOR FEATURES

Cup holder





Cups or small beverages cups may be placed in the cup holders.

WARNING

- **Avoid abrupt starting and braking when the cup holder is in use to prevent spilling your drink. If hot liquid spills, you could be burned. Such a burn to the driver could cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Do not place uncovered or unsecured cups, bottles, cans, etc., in the cup holder containing hot liquid while the vehicle is in motion. Injuries may result in the event of a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Only use soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in an accident.**

WARNING

Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a hot vehicle. It may explode.

NOTICE

- **Keep your drinks sealed while driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.**
- **When cleaning spilled liquids do not use hot air to blow out or dry the cup holder. This may damage the interior.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 93 2020-09-24 7:59:02

Ashtray (if equipped)



OPDE046419

To use the ashtray, open the cover.

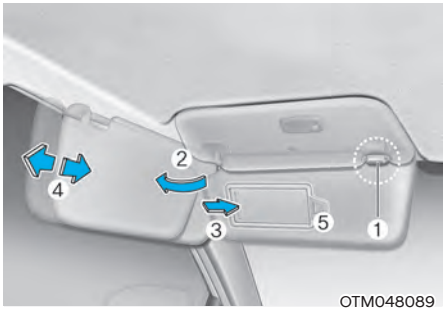
To clean the ashtray:

The plastic receptacle should be removed by lifting the plastic ashtray receptacle upward after turning the cover counterclockwise and pulling it out.

WARNING

Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.

Sunvisor



OTM048089

To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor to block the sun from the side window, pull it downward, release it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2) towards the window.

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the sunvisor and slide the mirror cover (3).

Adjust the sunvisor forward or backward (4) as needed (if equipped). Use the ticket holder (5) to hold tickets.

Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use.

WARNING

For your safety, do not block your view when using the sunvisor.

NOTICE

The tab (5) adjacent to the vanity mirror on the sunvisor can be used for toll road tickets or self parking tickets. Use caution when inserting tickets into the ticket holder to avoid damage. Refrain from putting several tickets in the ticket holder as this could also damage the retaining tab.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 94 2020-09-24 7:59:03

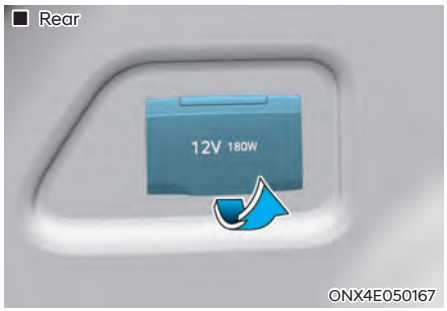
Power outlet

■ Front



ONX4050052

■ Rear



ONX4E050167

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 180 watts with the engine running.

WARNING

Avoid electrical shocks. Do not place your fingers or foreign objects (pin, etc.) into a power outlet or touch the power outlet with a wet hand.

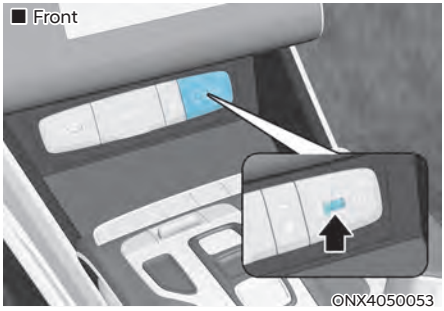
CAUTION

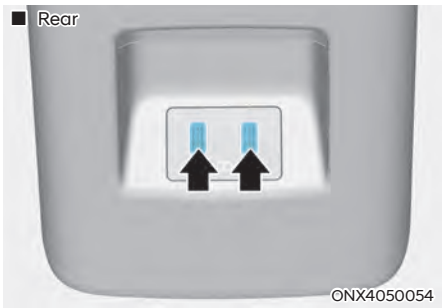
To prevent damage to the power outlets:

- **Use the power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.**
- **Only use 12 volts electric accessories which are less than 180 watts in electric capacity.**
- **Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.**
- **Close the cover when not in use.**
- **Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.**
- **Push the plug in as far as it will go. If good contact is not made, the plug may overheat and the fuse may open.**
- **Plug in battery equipped electrical/ electronic devices with reverse current protection. The current from the battery may flow into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and cause system malfunction.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 95 2020-09-24 7:59:03

USB charger





The USB charger is designed to recharge batteries of small size electrical devices using a USB cable.

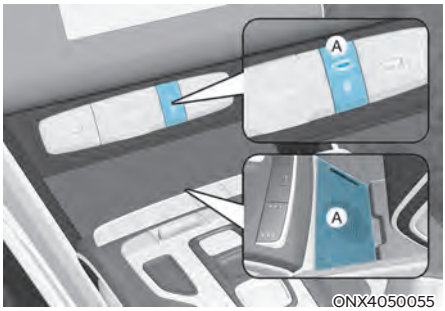
The electrical devices can be recharged when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON (or START) position.

The battery charging state may be monitored on the electrical device.

Disconnect the USB cable from the USB port after use.

- A smart phone or a tablet PC may get warmer during the re-charging process. It does not indicate any malfunction with the charging system.
- A smart phone or a tablet PC, which adopts a different re-charging method, may not be properly re-charged. In this case, use an exclusive charger of your device.
- The charging terminal is only to recharge a device. Do not use the charging terminal either to turn ON an audio or to play media In the infotainment system.

Wireless smart phone charging system (if equipped)



[A] : Indicator light, [B] : Charging pad

On certain models, the vehicle comes equipped with a wireless smart phone charger.

The system is available when all doors are closed, and when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON (or START) position.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 96 2020-09-24 7:59:03

Charging smart phone

The wireless smart phone charging system charges only the Qi-enabled smart phones (Qi). Read the label on the smart phone accessory cover or visit your smart phone manufacturer's website to check whether your smart phone supports the Qi technology.

The wireless charging process starts when you put a Qi-enabled smart phone on the wireless charging unit.

1. Remove other items, including the smart key, from the wireless charging unit. If not, the wireless charging process may be interrupted. Place the smart phone on the center of the charging pad.
2. The indicator light is orange when the smart phone is charging. The indicator light will turn blue when phone charging is complete.
3. You can turn ON or OFF the wireless charging function from the Settings menu on the instrument cluster. Select:
   - Setup → User settings → Convenience → Wireless Charging

If your smart phone is not charging:

- Slightly change the position of the smart phone on the charging pad.
- Make sure the indicator light is orange.

The indicator light will blink orange for 10 seconds if there is a malfunction in the wireless charging system.

In this case, temporarily stop the charging process, and re-attempt to charge your smart phone again.

The system warns you with a message on the LCD display if the smart phone is still on the wireless charging unit after the vehicle is turned OFF and the front door is opened.

For some manufacturer's smart phones, the system may not warn you even though the smart phone is left on the wireless charging unit. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 97 2020-09-24 7:59:03

NOTICE

- The wireless smart phone charging system may not support certain smart phones, which are not verified for the Qi specification (Ⓠ).
- When placing your smart phone on the charging pad, position the phone in the middle of the mat for optimal charging performance. If your smart phone is off to the side, the charging rate may be less and in some cases the smart phone may experience higher heat conduction.
- In some cases, the wireless charging may stop temporarily when the smart key is used, either when starting the vehicle or locking/ unlocking the doors, etc.
- When charging certain smart phones, the charging indicator may not change to blue when the smart phone is fully charged.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop, when temperature abnormally increases inside the wireless smart phone charging system. The wireless charging process restarts, when temperature falls to a certain level.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop when there is any metallic item, such as a coin, between the wireless smart phone charging system and smart phone.
- When charging some smart phones with a self-protection feature, the wireless charging speed may decrease and the wireless charging may stop.
- If the smart phone has a thick cover, the wireless charging may not be possible.
- If the smart phone is not completely contacting the charging pad, wireless charging may not operate properly.
- Some magnetic items like credit cards, phone cards or rail tickets may be damaged if left with the smart phone during the charging process.
- When any smart phone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound is due to the vehicle discerning compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smart phone in any way.

Information

If the Ignition switch is in the OFF position, the charging also stops.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 98 2020-09-24 7:59:03

Clock

The clock can be set from the infotainment system.

For detailed information, refer to the separately supplied infotainment system manual.

WARNING

Do not attempt to adjust the clock while driving. Doing so may result in distracted driving which may lead to an accident involving personal injury or death.

Coat hook


OTM048095

These hooks are not designed to hold large or heavy items.

WARNING


OTM048096

Do not hang other objects such as hangers or hard objects except clothes. Also, do not put heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the clothes pockets. In an accident or when the curtain air bag is inflated, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.

Floor mat anchor(s)

ALWAYS use the Floor Mat Anchors to attach the front floor mats to the vehicle. The anchors on the front floor carpet keep the floor mats from sliding forward.

WARNING

Do not overlay additional mats or liners over the floor mats. If using All Weather mats, remove the carpeted floor mats before installing them. Only use floor mats designed to connect to the anchors.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 99 2020-09-24 7:59:03

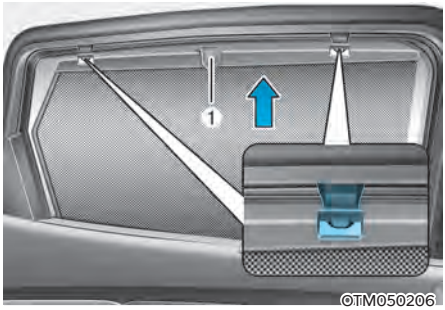
WARNING

The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

- **Ensure to remove a protective film attached on the carpet before attaching a floor mat on the front floor carpet. Otherwise, the floor mat may move freely on the protective film and it could result in unintentional braking or accelerating.**
- **Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.**
- **Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.**
- **Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.**

IMPORTANT - Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, HYUNDAI recommends that the HYUNDAI floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.

Side curtain (if equipped)



To use the side curtain:

1. Lift the curtain by the hook (1).
2. Hang the curtain on both sides of the hook.

CAUTION

- **Always hang both sides of the curtain on the hook. This could cause damage to the side curtain if only one side of the curtain is hooked.**
- **Do not let any foreign material get in between the vehicle and side curtain. The side curtain may not be lifted up.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 100 2020-09-24 7:59:04

Luggage net holder



To keep items from shifting in the luggage compartment, you can use the 4 holders located in the luggage side trim to attach the luggage net.

Make sure the luggage net is securely attached to the holders in the luggage board.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact your authorized HYUNDAI dealer to obtain a luggage net.

WARNING

Avoid eye injury. DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

Use the luggage net to keep only light items from shifting in the luggage compartment.

Cargo security screen (if equipped)



Use the cargo security screen to cover items stored in the cargo area.

Using the cargo security screen



1. Pull the cargo security screen towards the rear of the vehicle by the handle (1).
2. Insert the guide pin (2) into the guide (3).

Information

Pull out the cargo security screen with the handle in the center to prevent the guide pin from falling out of the guide.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 101 2020-09-24 7:59:04

When the cargo security screen is not in use:

1. Pull the cargo security screen backward and up to release it from the guides.
2. The cargo security screen will automatically slide back in.

Information

The cargo security screen may not automatically slide back in if the cargo security screen is not fully pulled out. Pull the cargo screen out all the way and then slowly allow the screen to retract back in.

NOTICE

Since the cargo security screen may be damaged or malformed, do not put luggage on it when it is used.

WARNING

- **Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.**
- **Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as forward as possible.**

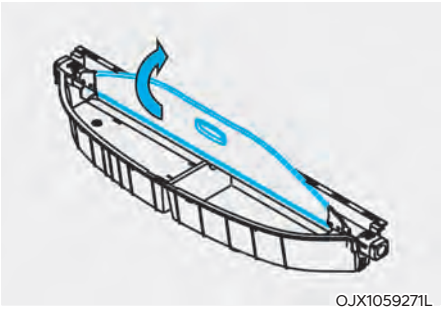
Removing the cargo security screen



1. Push one side of the cargo screen inward to compress the spring and release the screen from the vehicle.
2. While the spring is compressed, pull out the cargo security screen.
3. Open the luggage tray and keep the cargo security screen in the tray.

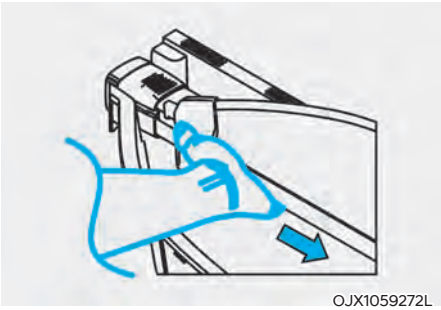
005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 102 2020-09-24 7:59:04

Removing the cargo security screen from the luggage tray



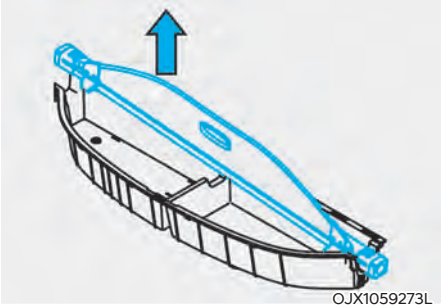
OJX1059271L

1. Pull up the screen board.



OJX1059272L

2. Push in the guide pin.



OJX1059273L

3. While pushing the guide pin, pull out the cargo security screen.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 103 2020-09-24 7:59:04

EXTERIOR FEATURES

Roof rack (if equipped)



If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of your vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.

NOTICE

- **When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.**
- **When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.**

WARNING

- **The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack.**

  Distribute the load as evenly as possible onto the roof rack and secure the load firmly.

ROOF RACK	100 kg (220 lbs.) EVENLY DISTRIBUTED

  Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.
- **The vehicle center of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack.**

  Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt maneuvers or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.
- **Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack.**

  Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses.

  This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo while driving, check frequently before or while driving to make sure the items on the roof rack are securely fastened.**

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 104 2020-09-24 7:59:04

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM

NOTICE

- **If you install an aftermarket HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic devices may not function properly.**
- **Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration.**

USB Port



You can use an USB cable to connect audio devices to the vehicle USB port.

Information

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the portable audio device's power source.

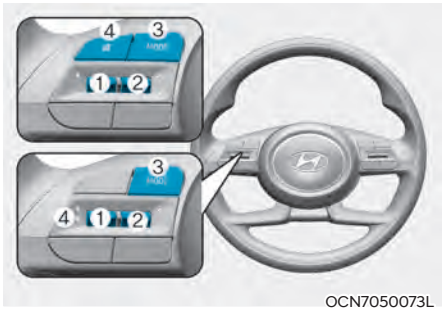
Antenna

Shark fin antenna



The shark fin antenna receives transmitted data. (for example: AM/FM, DAB, GPS)

Steering wheel remote controls



NOTICE

Do not operate multiple audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 105 2020-09-24 7:59:04

VOLUME (VOL + / VOL -) (1)

- Rotate the VOLUME scroll up to increase volume.
- Rotate the VOLUME scroll down to decrease volume.

SEEK/PRESET (∧ / ∨) (2)

If the SEEK/PRESET switch is pressed up or down and held for 0.8 second or more, it will function in the following modes:

- **RADIO mode**

  It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button. It will SEEK until you release the button.
- **MEDIA mode**

  It will function as the FF/RW button.

If the SEEK/PRESET switch is pressed up or down, it will function in the following modes:

- **RADIO mode**

  It will function as the PRESET STATION UP/DOWN button.
- **MEDIA mode**

  It will function as the TRACK UP/ DOWN button.

MODE (3)

Press the MODE button to toggle through Radio or AUX modes.

MUTE (🔇) (4)

- Press the MUTE button to mute the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

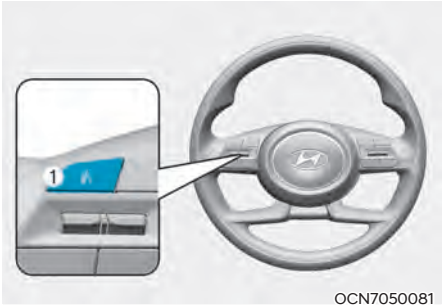
Information

Detailed information for audio control buttons are described in a separately supplied infotainment system manual.

Infotainment system (if equipped)

For detailed information, refer to the separately supplied infotainment system manual.

Voice recognition



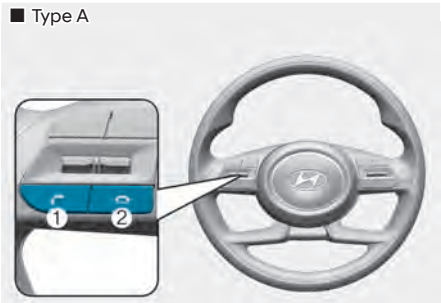
OCN7050081

For detailed information, refer to the separately supplied infotainment system manual.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 106 2020-09-24 7:59:05

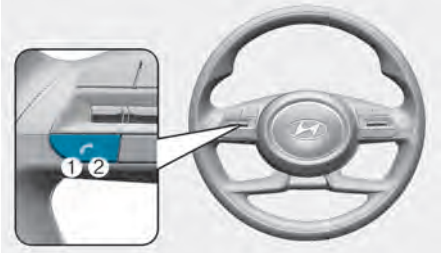
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

■ Type A



OCN7050075

■ Type B



ONX4050062



ONX4E050174

(1) Call / Answer button

(2) Call end button

(3) Microphone

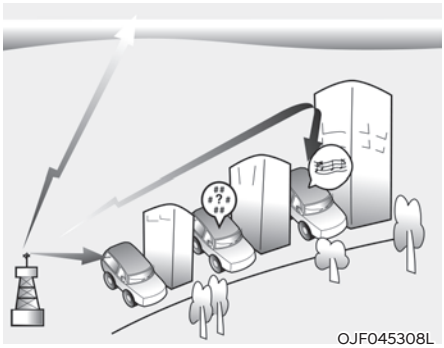
For detailed information, refer to the separately supplied infotainment system manual.

CAUTION

To avoid driver distractions, do not excessively operate the device while driving the vehicle which may lead to an accident.

How vehicle radio works

FM reception



OJF045308L

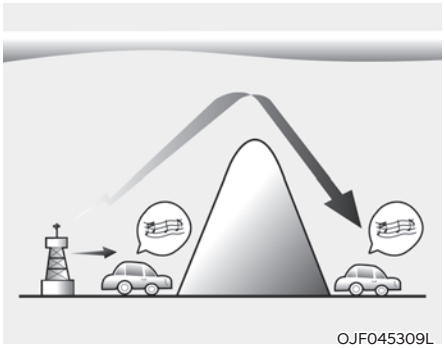
AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear.

This can be due to factors, such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 107 2020-09-24 7:59:05

AM (MW, LW) reception

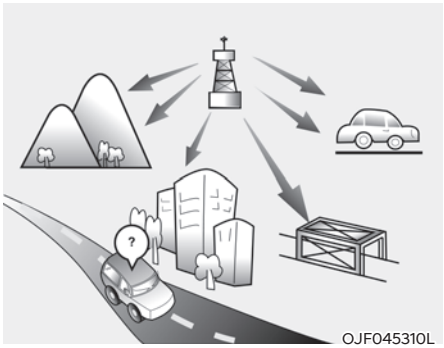


OJF045309L

AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the atmosphere.

In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.

FM radio station

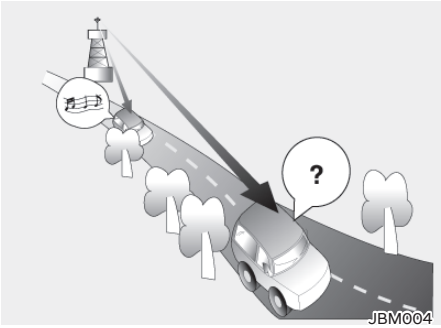


OJF045310L

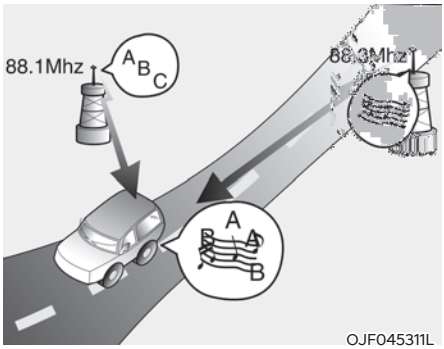
FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 108 2020-09-24 7:59:05

The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble :



- Fading - As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.



- Station Swapping - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 109 2020-09-24 7:59:05

Using a cellular phone or a twoway radio

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio system. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the cellular phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

NOTICE

When using a communication system such as a cellular phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a cellular phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not use a cellular phone while driving. Stop at a safe location to use a cellular phone.

iPod®

iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by HYUNDAI is under license.

Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

A Bluetooth® Wireless Technology enabled cell phone is required to use Bluetooth® Wireless Technology.

005_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 110 2020-09-24 7:59:05

6. Driving your vehicle

Before driving 6-4
- Before entering the vehicle 6-4
- Before starting 6-4

Ignition switch 6-5
- Key ignition switch 6-5
- Engine start/stop button 6-8

Automatic transmission 6-13
- Automatic transmission operation 6-13
- Parking 6-16
- Lcd display message 6-17
- Paddle shifter 6-18
- Good driving practices 6-18

Coasting guide 6-20

Braking system 6-21
- Power brakes 6-21
- Disc brakes wear indicator 6-22
- Electronic parking brake (EPB) 6-22
- Auto hold 6-27
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 6-30
- Electronic stability control (ESC) 6-32
- Vehicle stability management (VSM) 6-34
- Trailer stability assist (TSA) 6-35
- Hill-start assist control (HAC) 6-36
- Emergency stop signal (ESS) 6-36
- Multi-collision brake (MCB) 6-37
- Brake assist system (BAS) 6-38
- Downhill brake control (DBC) 6-38
- Good braking practices 6-41

Four wheel drive (4WD) 6-42
Multi terrain control 6-42
Multi terrain control mode 6-42
4Wd operation 6-43
Emergency precautions 6-46
Reducing the risk of a rollover 6-47
Drive mode integrated control system 6-49
Special driving conditions 6-51
Hazardous driving conditions 6-51
Rocking the vehicle 6-51
Smooth cornering 6-52
Driving at night 6-52
Driving in the rain 6-52
Driving in flooded areas 6-53
Highway driving 6-53
Reducing the risk of a rollover 6-53
Winter driving 6-54
Snow or icy conditions 6-54
Winter precautions 6-57
Trailer towing (for europe) 6-59
If you decide to pull a trailer? 6-60
Trailer towing equipment 6-63
Driving with a trailer 6-64
Maintenance when towing a trailer 6-67
Vehicle weight 6-68
Overloading 6-68

6

WARNING

Carbon monoxide (CO) gas is toxic. Breathing CO can cause unconsciousness and death.

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide which cannot be seen or smelled.

Do not inhale engine exhaust.

If at any time you smell engine exhaust inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.

The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, we recommend that the exhaust system be checked as soon as possible by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.

Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Run the engine only long enough to start the engine and to move the vehicle out of the garage.

Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the vehicle.

If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the vehicle, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at “Fresh” and fan control set to high so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

Keep the air intakes clear.

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, keep the ventilation air intakes located in front of the windshield clear of snow, ice, leaves, or other obstructions.

If you must drive with the tailgate open:

Close all windows.

Open instrument panel air vents.

Set the air intake control at “Fresh”, the air flow control at “Floor” or “Face”, and the fan control set to high.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 3 2020-09-24 7:59:19

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering the vehicle

- Be sure all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean and unobstructed.
- Remove frost, snow, or ice.
- Visually check the tires for uneven wear and damage.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

Before starting

- Make sure the hood, the tailgate, and the doors are securely closed and locked.
- Adjust the position of the seat and steering wheel.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Verify all the lights work.
- Fasten your seat belt. Check that all passengers have fastened their seat belts.
- Check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel and the messages on the instrument display when the ignition switch is in the ON position.
- Check that any items you are carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, take the following precautions:

- **ALWAYS wear your seat belt. All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to "Seat Belts" section in chapter 3.**
- **Always drive defensively. Assume other drivers or pedestrians may be careless and make mistakes.**
- **Stay focused on the task of driving. Driver distraction can cause accidents.**
- **Leave plenty of space between you and the vehicle in front of you.**

WARNING

NEVER drink or take drugs and drive.

Drinking or taking drugs and driving is dangerous and may result in an accident and SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH.

Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment. Just one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies and your reaction time gets worse with each additional drink.

Driving while under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving under the influence of alcohol.

You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive. If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a taxi.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 4 2020-09-24 7:59:19

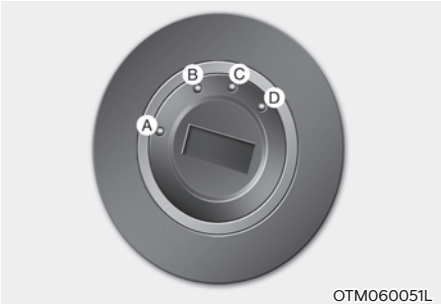
IGNITION SWITCH

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, take the following precautions:

- **NEVER allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the ignition switch or related parts. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur.**
- **NEVER reach through the steering wheel for the ignition switch, or any other control, while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area may cause a loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

Key ignition switch (if equipped)



[A] : LOCK, [B] : ACC
[C] : ON, [D] : START

Whenever the front door is opened, the ignition switch will illuminate, provided the ignition switch is not in the ON position. The light will go off immediately when the ignition switch is turned on or go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. (if equipped)

WARNING

- **NEVER turn the ignition switch to the LOCK or ACC position while the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency.**

  This will result in the engine turning off and loss of power assist for the steering and brake systems. This may lead to loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the gear is in the P (Park) position, apply the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position.**

  Unexpected vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not followed.

NOTICE

Never use aftermarket keyhole covers. This may generate start-up failure due to communication failure.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 5 2020-09-24 7:59:19

Key ignition switch positions

Switch Position	Action	Notes
LOCK	To turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position, push the key in at the ACC position and turn the key towards the LOCK position. The ignition key can be removed in the LOCK position. The steering wheel locks to protect the vehicle from theft. (if equipped)	
ACC	Some electrical accessories are usable. The steering wheel unlocks.	If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key while turning the steering wheel right and left to release.
ON	This is the normal key position when the engine has started. All features and accessories are usable. The warning lights can be checked when you turn the ignition switch from ACC to ON.	Do not leave the ignition switch in the ON position when the engine is not running to prevent the battery from discharging.
START	To start the engine, turn the ignition switch to the START position. The switch returns to the ON position when you let go of the key.	The engine will crank until you release the key.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 6 2020-09-24 7:59:19

Starting the engine

WARNING

- **Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes, such as high heels, ski boots, sandals, flip-flops, etc., may interfere with your ability to use the brake, accelerator and clutch pedals.**
- **Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. The vehicle can move which can lead to an accident.**
- **Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake pedal is released when the rpm is high.**

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Make sure the gear is shifted to P (Park).
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the START position. Hold the key (maximum of 10 seconds) until the engine starts and release it.

Information

- **Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary.**

  Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)
- **Always start the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal. Do not depress the accelerator while starting the vehicle. Do not race the engine while warming it up.**

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- **Do not hold the ignition key in the START position for more than 10 seconds. Wait 5 to 10 seconds before trying again.**
- **Do not turn the ignition switch to the START position with the engine running. It may damage the starter.**
- **If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the gear in N (Neutral) while the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.**
- **Do not push or tow your vehicle to start the engine.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 7 2020-09-24 7:59:19

Engine Start/Stop button (if equipped)



Whenever the front door is opened, the Engine Start/Stop button will illuminate and will go off 30 seconds after the door is closed.

WARNING

To turn the vehicle off in an emergency:

Press and hold the Engine Start/Stop button for more than two seconds OR Rapidly press and release the Engine Start/Stop button three times (within three seconds).

If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the vehicle without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button with the gear in the N (Neutral) position.

WARNING

- **NEVER press the Engine Start/Stop button while the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency. This will result in the vehicle turning off and loss of power assist for the steering and brake systems. This may lead to loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the gear is in the P (Park) position, set the parking brake, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position, and take the Smart Key with you. Unexpected vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not followed.**
- **NEVER reach through the steering wheel for the Engine Start/Stop button or any other control while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area may cause a loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 8 2020-09-24 7:59:19

Engine Stop/Start button positions

Button Position	Action	Notice
OFF	To turn off the engine, press the Engine Start/Stop button with shift button in P (Park). The steering wheel locks to protect the vehicle from theft. (if equipped)	If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound.
ACC	Press the Engine Start/Stop button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal. Some electrical accessories are usable. The steering wheel unlocks.	If you leave the Engine Start/ Stop button in the ACC position for more than one hour, the battery power will turn off automatically to prevent the battery from discharging. If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the Engine Start/ Stop button will not work. Press the Engine Start/Stop button while turning the steering wheel right and left to release tension.
ON	Press the Engine Start/Stop button while it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal. The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started.	Do not leave the Engine Start/ Stop button in the ON position when the engine is not running to prevent the battery from discharging.
START	To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the Engine Start/Stop button with the shift button in the P (Park) or in the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift button in the P (Park) position.	If you press the Engine Start/ Stop button without depressing the brake pedal, the engine does not start and the Engine Start/ Stop button changes as follows: **OFF → ACC → ON → OFF or ACC**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 9 2020-09-24 7:59:19

Starting the engine

WARNING

- **Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes, such as high heels, ski boots, sandals, flipflops, etc., may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedals.**
- **Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed.**

  The vehicle can move which can lead to an accident.

Information

- **The vehicle will start by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.**
- **Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, and when it is far away from the driver, the engine may not start.**
- **When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. When the smart key is not in the vehicle, the "" indicator will blink and the warning 'Key not in vehicle' will come on. When all doors are closed, the chime will also sound for about 5 seconds. Keep the smart key in the vehicle.**

1. Always carry the smart key with you.
2. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
3. Make sure the gear is shifted to P (Park).
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Press the Engine Start/Stop button.

Information

- **Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary.**

  Start driving at moderate engine speeds. Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.
- **Always start the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal. Do not depress the accelerator while starting the vehicle. Do not race the engine while warming it up.**
- **If ambient temperature is low, the "" indicator may remain illuminated longer than the normal amount of time.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 10 2020-09-24 7:59:20

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- **If the engine stalls while you are in motion, do not attempt to shift the gear to the P (Park) position.**

  If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the gear in N (Neutral) while the vehicle is still moving and press the Engine Start/Stop button in an attempt to restart the engine.
- **Do not push or tow your vehicle to start the vehicle.**

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

Do not press the Engine Start/Stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.

When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you cannot normally start the engine. Replace the fuse with a new one. If you are not able to replace the fuse, you can start the engine by pressing and holding the Engine Start/Stop button for 10 seconds with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position.

For your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the vehicle.



Information

If the smart key battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the vehicle by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button with the smart key in the direction of the picture above.

Turning off the engine

1. Stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal fully.
2. Make sure the gear is shifted to P (Park).
3. Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position and apply the parking brake.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 11 2020-09-24 7:59:20

Remote start (if equipped)

■ Type A



OTM060055L

■ Type B



OTM060056L

You can start the vehicle using the Remote Start button of the smart key.

To start the vehicle remotely:

1. Press the door lock button within 10 m (32 feet) from the vehicle.
2. Press the remote start (HOLD) button for over 2 seconds within 4 seconds after locking the doors. The hazard warning lights will blink.
3. To turn off the remote start function, press the remote start (HOLD) button once.

- The remote start (HOLD) button may not operate if the smart key is not within 10 m (32 feet).
- The vehicle will not remotely start if the engine hood or tailgate is opened.
- The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the remote start function to start.
- The engine turns off if you get in the vehicle without a registered smart key.
- The engine turns off if you do not get in the vehicle within 10 minutes after remotely starting the vehicle.
- Do not idle the engine for a long period.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 12 2020-09-24 7:59:20

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

■ Left-hand drive



ONX4060003

■ Right-hand drive



ONX4E060003R

Automatic transmission operation

The automatic transmission has six forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically in the D (Drive) position. The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift button position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

WARNING

The automatic transmission shift button or interior parts might get hot when a vehicle is parked outside during hot weather. Always be careful when the vehicle is hot.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 13 2020-09-24 7:59:20

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- **ALWAYS check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift button is in the P (Park) position, then set the parking brake, and place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.**
- **Do not use engine braking (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads. The vehicle may slip causing an accident.**

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).

To shift from P (Park), you must depress firmly on the brake pedal and make sure your foot is off the accelerator pedal.

The shift button must be in P (Park) before turning the engine off.

WARNING

- **Shifting into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **After the vehicle has stopped, always make sure the shift button is in P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn the engine off.**
- **When parking on an incline, block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake.**

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transmission if you shift into R (Reverse) while the vehicle is in motion.

When the vehicle is stopped in R (Reverse) position, if you open the driver's door with the seat belt unfastened, the gear is shifted to P (Park) position automatically.

However when the vehicle moves in R (Reverse) position, if you open the driver's door with the seat belt unfastened, the gear may be not shifted to P (Park) position automatically for protecting the automatic transmission.

N (Neutral)

The wheels and transmission are not engaged.

Use N (Neutral) if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop with the engine ON. Shift into P (Park) if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason.

Always depress the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

WARNING

Do not shift into gear unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal. Shifting into gear when the engine is running at high speed can cause the vehicle to move very rapidly. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit people or objects.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 14 2020-09-24 7:59:20

D (Drive)

This is the normal driving position. The transmission will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

To start the vehicle forward, push the D (Drive) button by depressing the brake pedal with the engine ON. Then depress the accelerator pedal smoothly.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or driving uphill, depress the accelerator fully. The transmission will automatically downshift to the next lower gear (or gears, as appropriate).

When the vehicle is stopped in D (Drive) position, if you open the driver's door with the seat belt unfastened, the gear is shifted to P (Park) position automatically.

However when the vehicle moves in D (Drive) position, if you open the driver's door with the seat belt unfastened, the gear may be not shifted to P (Park) position automatically for protecting the automatic transmission.

The DRIVE MODE switch, located on the shift button console, allows the driver to switch from NORMAL mode to SPORT or ECO mode. (if equipped)

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" later in this chapter.

Shift-lock system

For your safety, the automatic transmission has a shift-lock system which prevents shifting the transmission from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

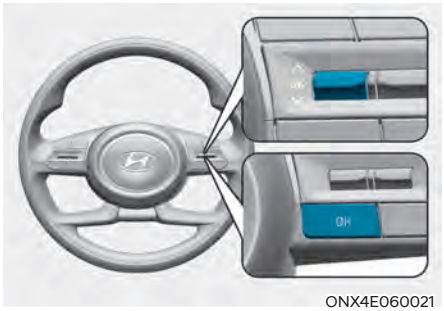
To shift the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or place the ignition switch in the ON position.
3. Depress the brake pedal and push the R(Reverse) button.

To stay in N (Neutral) position when vehicle is Off



ONX4060004



ONX4E060021

If you want to keep the N (Neutral) position after the vehicle is OFF, do the following.

1. Turn off Auto Hold and release Electronic Parking Brake when the engine is running.
2. Push the N (neutral) button while depressing the brake pedal.
3. When you take your foot off the brake pedal, the message 'Press and hold OK button to stay in Neutral when vehicle is Off' (or 'Hold OK button to stay in neutral gear position when vehicle is Off') will appear on the cluster LCD display.
4. Press and hold the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 15 2020-09-24 7:59:20

5. When the message ‘Vehicle will stay in (N). Change gear to cancel’ (or ‘N will stay engaged when the vehicle is Off’) will appear on the cluster LCD display, press the Engine Start/Stop button while depressing the brake pedal.

However, if you open the driver's door, the gear will automatically shift to P (Park) and the Engine Start/ Stop button will change to the OFF position.

When the battery is discharged:

You cannot shift the shift button, when the battery is discharged.

In emergencies, do the following to move the shift button to N (Neutral) on a level ground.

1. Connect the battery cables from another vehicle or from a another battery to the jump-starting terminals inside the engine compartment.

   For more details, refer to “Jump Starting” in chapter 8.
2. Release the parking brake with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position.
3. Shift the gear to the N(Neutral) position refer to the “Stay in Neutral when vehicle is Off” in this chapter.

Parking

Always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Move the shift button into the P (Park) position, apply the parking brake, and place the ignition switch in the LOCK/ OFF position. Take the Key with you when exiting the vehicle.

- The gear is shifted to P (Park) position automatically for safety under the following conditions.
  - When the driver unfasten the seat belt and open the driver’s door in the “Stay in Neutral when vehicle is Off” condition or in the ignition ON
  - When turn off the engine with R (Reverse) / D (Drive) or N (Neutral) position

This is supplemental function for safety. Always check the P (Park) position is shifted.

WARNING

When you stay in the vehicle with the engine running, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. The engine or exhaust system may overheat and start a fire.

The exhaust gas and the exhaust system are very hot. Keep away from the exhaust system components.

Do not stop or park over flammable materials, such as dry grass, paper or leaves. They may ignite and cause a fire.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 16 2020-09-24 7:59:20

LCD display message

Shifting conditions not met. Reduce speed, then shift

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when engine RPM is too high, or when driving speed is too fast to shift the gear.

We recommend you decrease the engine speed or slow down before shifting the gear.

Press brake pedal to change gear

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when the brake pedal is not depressed while shifting the gear.

We recommend you to depress the brake pedal and then shift the gear.

Shift to P after stopping

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when the gear is shifted to P (Park) while the vehicle is moving.

Stop the vehicle before shifting to P (Park).

PARK engaged

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when the gear is shifted to P (Park) while the vehicle is moving.

Stop the vehicle before shifting to P (Park).

Press and hold the OK button on the steering wheel to stay in Neutral

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when pushing the N(Neutral) button. If you want to stay N(Neutral) after turning off the engine, press and hold the “OK” button on the steering wheel more than 1 second.

Vehicle will stay in (N). Change gear to cancel / N will stay engaged when the vehicle is Off

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when pushing the “OK” button on the steering wheel after the message appears on the cluster LCD display. The gear stays in N(Neutral) position after turning off the engine.

NEUTRAL engaged

The message appears on the LCD display, when the N (Neutral) position is engaged.

Gear already selected / This gear is already selected

The message appears on the LCD display, when pushing the current shift button again.

Shift button held down / Shift button is stuck

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when the shift button is pressed continuously or the shift button does not properly operate. Clean the surroundings of gear shift button.

If this message appears again, we recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 17 2020-09-24 7:59:20

Shifter system malfunction! Service immediately

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when the transmission or the shift button does not properly operate in the P (Park) position.

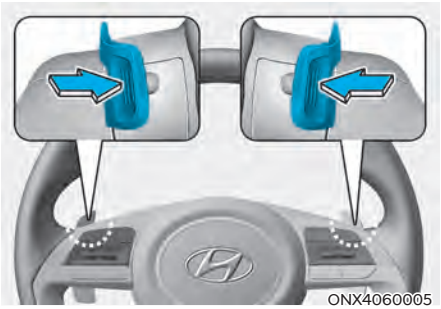
In this case, we recommend you to immediately have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Check shift controls

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when there is a malfunction with transmission shift button.

In this case, we recommend you to immediately have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Paddle shifter



The paddle shifter is available when the shift button is in the D (Drive) position.

With the shift button in the D position

The paddle shifter will operate when the vehicle speed is more than 10km/h.

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from automatic mode to manual mode.

To change back to automatic shift mode from manual shift mode, do one of the followings :

- Pull the [+] paddle shifter for more than one second
- Press the D button.

The manual shift mode also changes back to automatic shift mode in one of following situations

- When the accelerator pedal is gently depressed for more than 6 seconds while driving
- When the vehicle stops

Information

If the [+] and [-] paddle shifters are pulled at the same time, gear shift may not occur.

Good driving practices

- Never move the shift button from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift button into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.

  Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Do not move the shift button to N (Neutral) when driving. Doing so may result in an accident because of a loss of engine braking and the transmission could be damaged.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 18 2020-09-24 7:59:20

- Driving uphill or downhill, always shift to D (Drive) when driving forward or to R (Reverse) when driving backwards, and check the gear position indicated on the cluster before driving. If you drive in the opposite direction of the selected gear, the engine or the electric motor will stop operating and a serious accident might be occurred due to the degraded brake performance.
- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but consistent pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.
- Always apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle. Do not depend on placing the transmission in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- **ALWAYS wear your seat belt. In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **HYUNDAI recommends you follow all posted speed limits.**

WARNING

- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift button is in the P (Park) position, then set the parking brake, and place the ignition switch in the OFF position.**

  Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.
- **Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral). The engine brake will not work and may lead to an accident.**
- **Driving uphill or downhill, always shift to D (Drive) when driving forward or to R (Reverse) when driving backwards, and check the gear position indicated on the cluster before driving. If you drive in the opposite direction of the selected gear, the engine will turn off and a serious accident might be occurred due to the degraded brake performance.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 19 2020-09-24 7:59:20

COASTING GUIDE (IF EQUIPPED)



OOSH069019L

The coasting guide function informs the driver when to take the foot off from the accelerator by anticipating a decelerating event* based on the analysis of driving routes and road conditions of the navigation. It encourages the driver to remove foot from the pedal and allow coasting down the road with EV motor only. This helps prevent unnecessary fuel consumption and increases fuel efficiency.

Information

Example of a deceleration event is making a right/left turn, driving through a rotary, entering or exiting a highway (freeway), etc.

Setting Coasting Guide function

Coasting Guide can be selected from the User Settings mode in the cluster LCD display or infotainmet system display by following the procedure below.

1. Set the ignition switch in the ON position.
2. Select 'User Settings → Eco Vehicle → Coasting Guide' in the cluster LCD display or infotainmet system display.

Operation conditions

After selecting the function from the User Settings mode, the system enters the ready status by following the procedure below.

1. Enter your destination information in the navigation system and select the driving route.
2. Check that the vehicle is in ECO mode by driving the vehicle in D (Drive).
3. Drive the vehicle between 40 km/h (25 mph) ~ 160 km/h (100 mph).

Information

The operating speed may vary due to difference between instrument cluster and navigation effected by tire inflation level.

Information

Coasting guide is only a supplemental function to assist with fuel-efficient driving. Thus, the operating conditions may be different in accordance with traffic/road conditions (i.e. driving in a traffic jam, driving on a slope, driving on a curve). Take the actual driving conditions into consideration, such as distances from the vehicles ahead/behind, while referring to the coasting guide function as guidance.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 20 2020-09-24 7:59:21

BRAKING SYSTEM

Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

If the vehicle is not in the ready (🚗) mode or the vehicle is turned off while driving, the power assist for the brakes will not work. You can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than typical. The stopping distance, however, will be longer than with power brakes.

When the vehicle is not in the ready (🚗) mode, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

⚠ WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**
- **When descending down a long or steep hill, use the paddle shifter and manually downshift to a lower gear in order to control your speed without using the brake pedal excessively. Applying the brakes continuously will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance, deformation of brake disc and vibration to steering wheel. Same phenomenon could be observed during severe high speed braking.**
- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, lightly tap the brake pedal to heat up the brakes while maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal. Avoid driving at high speeds until the brakes function correctly.**

NOTICE

- **Do not continue depressing the brake pedal if the "🚗" indicator is OFF. The battery may be discharged.**
- **Noise and vibration generated during braking is normal.**
- **Under normal operation, electric brake pump noise and motor vibration may occur temporarily in below cases.**
  - **When the pedal is depressed suddenly.**
  - **When the pedal is repeatedly depressed in short intervals.**
  - **When the ABS function is activated while braking.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 21 2020-09-24 7:59:21

Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high pitched warning sound from your front or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Note that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

NOTICE

To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.

Information

Always replace brake pads as complete front or rear axle sets.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Applying the parking brake



To apply EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light comes on.

EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) may be automatically applied when:

- Requested by other systems
- The driver turns the vehicle off while Auto Hold is operating.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 22 2020-09-24 7:59:21

Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal while driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only while you are holding the EPB switch. However, braking distance will be longer than normal.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, do not operate the EPB while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the brake system and lead to an accident.

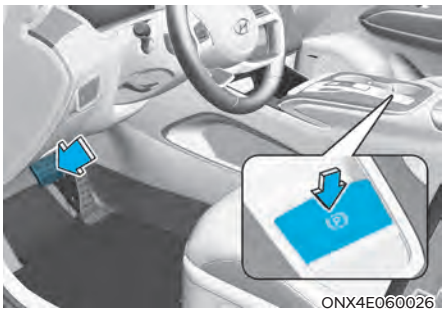
Information

During emergency braking, the Parking Brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

NOTICE

If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Releasing the parking brake


ONX4E060026

To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

1. Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON or START position.
2. Press the EPB switch while depressing the brake pedal.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light goes off.

To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) automatically:

- Satisfy the following conditions

1. nsure seat belts are fastened and the doors, hood and trunk are closed.
2. With the vehicle in the ready ( ) mode, depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse), D (Drive) or Manual shift mode.
3. Depress the accelerator pedal.

Make sure the Parking Brake Warning Light goes off.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 23 2020-09-24 7:59:21

Information

- **For your safety, you can engage EPB even though the Engine Stop/Start button is in the OFF position (only if battery power is available), but you cannot release it.**
- **For your safety, depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when backing up the vehicle.**

NOTICE

- **If the Parking Brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Do not drive your vehicle with EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.**

Warning messages



OTM058132L

To release EPB, fasten seatbelt, close door, hood and tailgate

- If you try to drive with EPB applied, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the engine hood or tailgate is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If the situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 24 2020-09-24 7:59:21

WARNING

- **Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal.**

  Shift the gear into P (Park), pull up the EPB switch, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the Key with you when leaving the vehicle.

  Vehicles not fully engaged in P (Park) with the parking brake set are at risk for moving inadvertently and causing injury to yourself or others.
- **NEVER allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the EPB switch. If EPB is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **Only release EPB when you are seated inside the vehicle with your foot firmly on the brake pedal.**

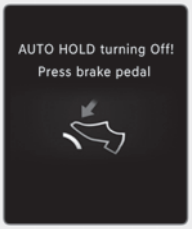
NOTICE

- **Do not apply the accelerator pedal while the parking brake is engaged. If you depress the accelerator pedal with EPB engaged, a warning will sound and a message will appear. Damage to the parking brake may occur.**
- **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the braking system and cause premature wear or damage to brake parts. Make sure EPB is released and the Parking Brake warning light is off before driving.**

Information

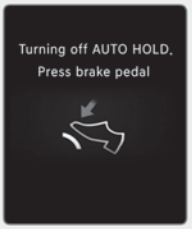
- **A clicking sound may be heard while operating or releasing the EPB. These conditions are normal and indicate that EPB is functioning properly.**
- **When leaving your keys with a parking attendant or assistant, make sure to inform him/her how to operate EPB.**

■ Type A



OJX1069034L

■ Type B



OJX1069065L

AUTO HOLD turning Off! Press brake pedal /Turning off AUTO HOLD. Press brake pedal

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

■ Type A



OJX1069028L

■ Type B



OJX1069066L

Parking brake automatically engaged / Parking brake automatically applied

When EPB is applied while Auto Hold is activated, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 25 2020-09-24 7:59:21

EPB malfunction

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the EPB warning light remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

The EPB warning light may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of EPB.

NOTICE

- **If the EPB warning light is still on, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **If the Parking Brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, EPB may not be applied.**
- **If the Parking Brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, and then pull it up. Repeat this one more time. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

Parking brake warning light

■ Type A



Check the Parking Brake warning light by pressing the Engine Stop/Start button to the ON position.

■ Type B



This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the Engine Stop/Start button in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is released and the Parking Brake warning light is OFF.

If the Parking Brake Warning Light remains on after the parking brake is released while the vehicle is in the ready ( ) mode, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution while operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location.

When the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) does not release

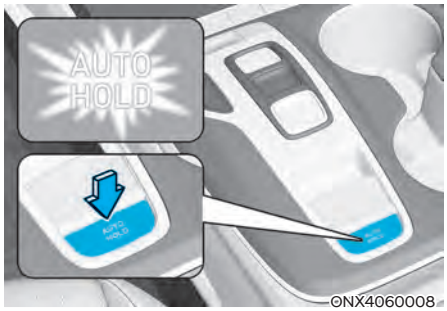
If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 26 2020-09-24 7:59:22

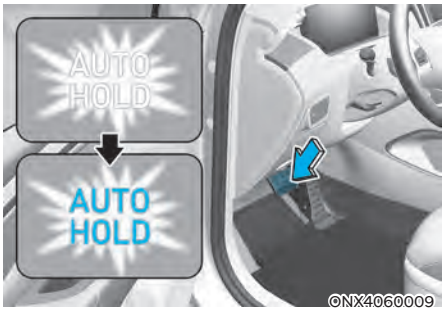
Auto Hold

Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not depressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal.

To apply:



1. With the driver's door, engine hood and tailgate (vehicle equipped with shift button) closed, depress the brake pedal and then press the AUTO HOLD switch. The white AUTO HOLD indicator will come on and the system will be in the standby position.



2. When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal, Auto Hold maintains the brake pressure to hold the vehicle stationary. The indicator changes from white to green.
3. The vehicle will remain stationary even if you release the brake pedal.
4. If EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

To release:

- If you depress the accelerator pedal with the gear in D (Drive) or Manual shift mode, the Auto Hold will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.
- If the vehicle is restarted using the cruise control toggle switch (RES+ or SET-) while Auto Hold and cruise control is operating, Auto Hold will be released regardless of accelerator pedal operation. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.

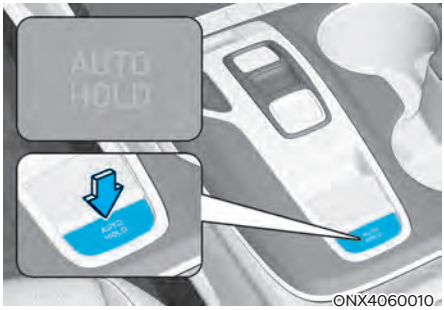
WARNING

When Auto Hold is automatically released by depressing the accelerator pedal, always take a look around your vehicle.

Slowly depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth start.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 27 2020-09-24 7:59:22

To cancel:



1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press the AUTO HOLD switch.

The AUTO HOLD indicator will turn off.

WARNING

To prevent, unexpected and sudden vehicle movement, ALWAYS press your foot on the brake pedal to cancel the Auto Hold before you:

- **Drive downhill.**
- **Drive the vehicle in R (Reverse). (vehicle equipped with shift button)**
- **Park the vehicle.**

Information

- **The Auto Hold does not operate when:**
  - **The driver's door is opened**
  - **The engine hood is opened**
  - **The tailgate is opened (vehicle equipped with shift button)**
  - **The gear is in P (Park).**
  - **EPB is applied**
- **For your safety, the Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB when:**
  - **The driver's door is opened**
  - **The engine hood is opened**
  - **The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes**
  - **The vehicle is standing on a steep slope**
  - **The vehicle moved several times**

  In these cases, the Parking Brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sound and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving off again, depress the brake pedal, check the surrounding area near your vehicle and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch.
- **While operating Auto Hold, you may hear mechanical noise. However, it is normal operating noise.**

NOTICE

If the AUTO HOLD indicator changes to yellow, Auto Hold is not working properly. We recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 28 2020-09-24 7:59:22

WARNING

- **Depress the accelerator pedal slowly when you start the vehicle.**
- **For your safety, cancel Auto Hold when you drive downhill, back up the vehicle or park the vehicle.**

NOTICE

If there is a malfunction with the driver's door or engine hood open detection system, Auto Hold may not work properly.

We recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Warning messages

■ Type A



OJX1069028L

■ Type B

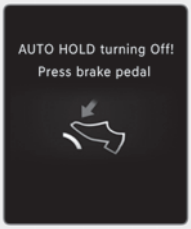


OJX1069066L

Parking brake automatically engaged / Parking brake automatically applied

When EPB is applied while Auto Hold is activated, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

■ Type A



OJX1069034L

■ Type B

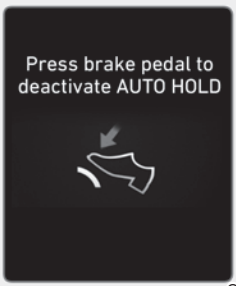


OJX1069065L

AUTO HOLD turning Off! Press brake pedal /Turning off AUTO HOLD. Press brake pedal

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

When this message is displayed, Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, depress the brake pedal.



OJX1069035L

Press brake pedal to deactivate AUTO HOLD

If you did not apply the brake pedal when you release Auto Hold by pressing the AUTO HOLD switch, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 29 2020-09-24 7:59:22



OTM060049L

AUTO HOLD conditions not met. Close door, hood and tailgate.

When you press the AUTO HOLD switch, if the driver's door and engine hood are not closed, a warning will sound and a message will appear on the cluster LCD display.

Press the AUTO HOLD switch after closing the driver's door and hood.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

WARNING

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead of you. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The braking distance for vehicles equipped with ABS or ESC may be longer than for those without these systems in the following road conditions.

Drive your vehicle at reduced speeds during the following conditions:

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**
- **Tire chains are installed on your vehicle.**

The safety features of ABS or ESC equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.

ABS is an electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid. ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 30 2020-09-24 7:59:23

Using ABS

To obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Depress your brake pedal as hard as possible.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from sudden changes in direction, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

The ABS ((ABS)) warning light will stay on for several seconds after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

During that time, ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

WARNING

If the ABS ((ABS)) warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. Your power brakes will work normally. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, we recommend you to contact the nearest authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and apply your brakes continuously, ABS will be active continuously and the ABS ((ABS)) warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and turn the vehicle off.

Restart the vehicle. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal.

Otherwise, you may have a problem with your ABS system. We recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

Information

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the ABS ((ABS)) warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning. Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 31 2020-09-24 7:59:23

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) (if equipped)


ONX4060011

Electronic Stability Control helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering maneuvers.

ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle's brakes and intervenes in the engine management system to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always adjust your speed and driving to the road conditions.

WARNING

Never drive too fast for the road conditions when cornering. ESC will not prevent accidents.

Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers, and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can result in severe accidents.

ESC operation

ESC ON condition

When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, ESC and the ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately three seconds. After both lights go off, ESC is enabled.

When operating

When ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks:

- When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.
- When ESC activates, the engine may not respond to the accelerator as it does under routine conditions.
- If Cruise Control was in use when ESC activates, Cruise Control automatically disengages. Cruise Control can be reengaged when the road conditions allow. **See “Cruise Control System” section in chapter 7 (if equipped).**
- When moving out of the mud or driving on a slippery road, the engine rpm (revolutions per minute) may not increase even if you press the accelerator pedal deeply. This is to maintain the stability and traction of the vehicle and does not indicate a problem.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 32 2020-09-24 7:59:23

ESC OFF condition



To cancel ESC operation:

- State 1

Press the ESC OFF button briefly. The ESC OFF indicator light and/or message 'Traction Control disabled' will illuminate. In this state, the traction control function of ESC (engine management) is disabled, but the brake control function of ESC (braking management) still operates.

- State 2

Press and hold the ESC OFF button continuously for more than 3 seconds. The ESC OFF indicator light and/or message 'Traction & Stability Control disabled' illuminates and a warning chime sounds. In this state, both the traction control function of ESC (engine management) and the brake control function of ESC (braking management) are disabled.

If the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the vehicle, ESC will automatically turn on again.

Indicator lights

■ ESC indicator light (blinks)



■ ESC OFF indicator light (comes on)



When the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the ESC indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating.

If the ESC indicator light stays on, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the ESC system. When this warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when ESC is turned off.

WARNING

When ESC is blinking, this indicates ESC is active:

Drive slowly and NEVER attempt to accelerate. NEVER turn ESC off while the ESC indicator light is blinking or you may lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 33 2020-09-24 7:59:23

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tires with different sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. Before replacing tires, make sure all four tires and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized wheels and tires installed.

ESC OFF usage

When Driving

The ESC OFF mode should only be used briefly to help free the vehicle if stuck in snow or mud, by temporarily stopping operation of ESC, to maintain wheel torque.

To turn ESC off while driving, press the ESC OFF button while driving on a flat road surface.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the transmission:

- **Do not allow wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively while the ESC, ABS, and Parking Brake warning lights are displayed. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce engine power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively while these lights are displayed.**
- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, make sure ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated).**

Information

Turning ESC off does not affect ABS or standard brake system operation.

Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)

Vehicle Stability Management is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. It helps the vehicle stay stable when accelerating or braking suddenly on wet, slippery and rough roads where traction over the four tires can suddenly become uneven.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Vehicle Stability Management:

- **ALWAYS check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. VSM is not a substitute for safe driving practices.**
- **Never drive too fast for the road conditions. VSM will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in bad weather, on slippery and uneven roads can result in severe accidents.**

VSM operation

VSM ON condition

VSM operates when:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is on.

When operating

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may activate ESC, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your VSM is active.

Information

VSM does not operate when:

- **Driving on a banked road such as gradient or incline.**
- **Driving in reverse.**
- **The ESC OFF indicator light is on.**
- **The EPS (Electric power steering) warning light ( ) is on or blinks.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 34 2020-09-24 7:59:23

VSM OFF condition

To cancel VSM operation, press the ESC OFF button. ESC OFF (OFF) indicator light will illuminate.

To turn on VSM, press the ESC OFF button again. The ESC OFF indicator light will go out.

WARNING

If the ESC ( ) indicator light or EPS ( ) warning light stays illuminated or blinks, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the VSM system. When the warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tires with different sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. Before replacing tires, make sure all four tires and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized tires and wheels installed.

Trailer stability assist (TSA) (if equipped)

Trailer stability assist is operated as vehicle stability control system. Trailer stability assist system has an effort to stabilize the vehicle and trailer when the trailer sways or oscillates. There are various reasons making vehicle sway and oscillate. Almost case it happens at high speed however, if the trailer is affected by crosswinds, buffeting, and improper overloading, it may be a risk of swaying.

Factors of swaying such as:

- High speed
- Strong crosswinds
- Improper overloading
- Sudden controlling of steering wheel
- Uneven road

Trailer stability assist system continuously analyzes the vehicle and trailer instability. When the Trailer stability assist system detects some sway, the brakes are applied automatically to stabilize the vehicle on the front wheel. However, if it is not enough to stabilize, the brakes are applied on all wheels automatically and engine power is properly reduced. When the vehicle is stable from swaying, trailer stability assist system does not operate.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 35 2020-09-24 7:59:23

Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)

Hill-Start Assist Control helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting a vehicle from a stop on a hill. The system operates the brakes automatically for approximately 2 seconds and releases the brake after 5 seconds or when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

WARNING

Always be ready to depress the accelerator pedal when starting off an incline. Hill-Start Assist Control activates only for approximately 5 seconds.

Information

- **Hill-Start Assist Control does not operate when the gear is shifted to P (Park) or N (Neutral).**
- **Hill-Start Assist Control activates even when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is off. However, it does not activate, when ESC does not operate normally.**

Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)

Emergency Stop Signal alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop lights, while sharply and severely braking.

The system is activated when:

- The vehicle suddenly stops. (The deceleration power exceeds 7 m/s^2, and the driving speed exceeds 55 km/h (34 mph).)
- ABS is activated and the driving speed exceeds 55 km/h (34 mph).

The hazard warning flasher automatically turns ON after blinking the stop lights:

- When driving speed is under 40 km/h (25 mph),
- When ABS is deactivated, and
- When the sudden braking situation is over.

The hazard warning flasher turns OFF:

- When the vehicle drives at a low speed for a certain period of time.

  The driver can manually turn OFF the hazard warning flasher by pressing the button.

Information

Emergency Stop Signal will not activate, when the hazard warning flashers are already on.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 36 2020-09-24 7:59:23

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB) (if equipped)

Multi-Collision Brake controls the brake automatically in the event of an accident where the air bag deploys to reduce the risk of additional accidents that may occur.

System operation

- From the time the air bag deploys, Multi-Collision Brake monitors the depression intensity of the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a short period. The system operates when the following conditions are met:
  - Vehicle speed is under 180 km/h (112 mph) at the time of collision.
  - The brake pedal and accelerator pedal is hardly depressed.
- When the driver steps on the brake pedal over a certain level while Multi-Collision Brake is active, the braking power takes priority over automatic braking by Multi-Collision Brake system. However, if the driver takes his/her foot off the brake pedal, Multi-Collision Brake system will maintain automatic braking.

System off

- Multi-Collision Brake is canceled in the following situations:
  - The accelerator pedal is depressed over a certain level.
  - The vehicle stops.
  - ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or electronic devices has malfunctioned.
  - In a situation the system cannot operate normally.
  - Ten seconds have passed since the brake has been controlled automatically by Multi-Collision Brake system.

WARNING

- **Multi-Collision Brake decreases vehicle speed after a collision and reduces the risk of a second collision, but it does not prevent a second collision. You may drive away from the collision spot to avoid other dangerous situations by depressing the accelerator pedal.**
- **After the vehicle is stopped by Multi Collision Brake, the system stops controlling the brakes. Depending on the situation, the driver should depress the brake or the accelerator pedal to prevent a further accident.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 37 2020-09-24 7:59:23

Brake Assist System (BAS)

Brake Assist System is to reduce or to avoid accident risk. It recognizes the distance from the vehicle ahead or the pedestrian through the sensors (i.e. radar and camera), and, if necessary, warns the driver of accident risk with the warning message or the warning alarms.

Limitations of the system

Brake Assist System is a supplemental system and is not a substitute for safe driving practices. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead to ensure it is safety to use the AEB system.

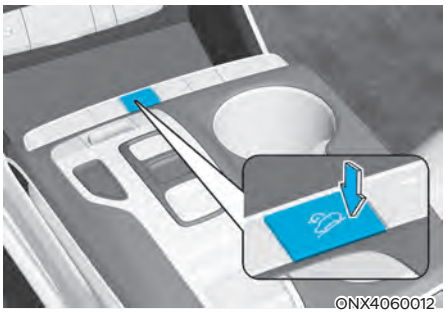
Take the following precautions when using Brake Assist System :

This system is only a supplemental system and it is not intended to, nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.

NEVER drive too fast in accordance with the road conditions or while cornering.

Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Brake Assist System does not stop the vehicle completely and does not avoid collisions.

Downhill Brake Control (DBC)



Downhill Brake Control assists the driver to descend down a steep hill without having to depress the brake pedal.

The system automatically applies the brakes to maintain vehicle speed below a certain speed and allows the driver to concentrate on steering the vehicle down hill.

The system is turned off whenever the engine is turned off.

Press the button to turn on the system and press the button again to turn it off.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 38 2020-09-24 7:59:23

System operation

Mode	Indicator	Description
Standby	 Green light on	Press the Downhill Brake Control button when vehicle speed is under 60 km/h (37 mph). Downhill Brake Control will turn on and enter the standby mode. The system does not turn on if vehicle speed is over 60 km/h (37 mph).
Activated	 Green light blink	In the standby mode, Downhill Brake Control will activate under the following conditions: • The hill is steep enough. • The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is not depressed. • Vehicle speed is within 4 ~ 40 km/h (2 ~ 25 mph) range (within 4 ~ 8 km/h (2 ~ 5 mph) when reversing). Within the activation speed range 4 ~ 40 km/h (2 ~ 25 mph), the driver can control the vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
Deactivated	 Green light off	Downhill Brake Control will turn off under the following conditions: • The Downhill Brake Control button is pressed again. • Vehicle speed is over 60 km/h (37 mph).
	 Green light on	Downhill Brake Control will be deactivated but maintain the standby mode under the following conditions: • The hill is not steep enough. • Vehicle speed is between 40 ~ 60 km/h (25 ~ 37 mph).
System malfunction	 Yellow light on	The yellow warning light illuminates when the system may have malfunctioned or may not work properly during activation. If this occurs, Downhill Brake Control is deactivated. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 39 2020-09-24 7:59:23



OJX1069039L

Downhill Brake Control disabled. Control vehicle speed (manually)

When Downhill Brake Control is not working properly this warning message will appear on the cluster LCD display and you will hear a warning sound. If this occurs, control vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal.

WARNING

Always turn off Downhill Brake Control on normal roads. The system might activate inadvertently from the standby mode when driving through speed bumps or making sharp curves.

Information

- **Downhill Brake Control may not deactivate on steep inclines even though the brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed.**
- **Downhill Brake Control may not always maintain vehicle speed at a certain speed.**
- **Downhill Brake Control does not operate when:**
  - **The gear is in P (Park).**
  - **ESC is activated.**
- **Noise or vibration may occur from the brakes when Downhill Brake Control is activated.**
- **The rear stop light comes on when Downhill Brake Control is activated.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 40 2020-09-24 7:59:24

Good braking practices

WARNING

Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Shift the gear to the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Vehicles parked with the parking brake not applied or not fully engaged may roll inadvertently and may cause injury to the driver and others. ALWAYS apply the parking brake before exiting the vehicle.

Wet brakes can be dangerous! The brakes may get wet if the vehicle is driven through standing water or if it is washed. Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for assistance.

DO NOT drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but constant pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear, and possibly even brake failure.

If a tire goes flat while you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead while you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe location.

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped to prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 41 2020-09-24 7:59:24

FOUR WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) (IF EQUIPPED)

The Four Wheel Drive (4WD) System delivers engine power to all front and rear wheels for maximum traction.

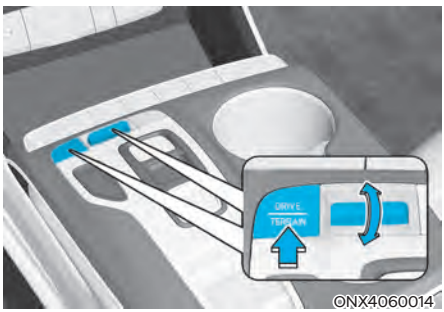
4WD is useful when extra traction is required on slippery, muddy, wet, or snow-covered roads.

Occasional off-road use such as established unpaved roads and trails are OK. It is always important that the driver carefully reduces the speed to a level that does not exceed the safe operating speed for those conditions.

Multi Terrain Control

Multi Terrain Control is a system that achieves optimal driving performance by controlling four-wheel drive, engine, transmission and braking by terrain conditions (snow, muddy and sandy road etc.).

Multi Terrain Control mode



If you press the "DRIVE/TERRAIN" mode button, the driving mode is changed from normal driving control to Multi Terrain Control. You can select SNOW, MUD or SAND mode by toggling the button. If you press the "DRIVE/TERRAIN" mode button again, the driving mode is changed from Multi Terrain Control to normal driving control.

The driving mode will be set to normal driving control when the engine is restarted, if it is in Multi Terrain Control.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- **Do not drive in conditions that exceed the vehicles intended design such as challenging off-road conditions.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of a rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**

NOTICE

- **Do not drive in water if the level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Depress the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking return.**
- **Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud or water (see "Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" in chapter 9).**
- **Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off road use, especially the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Be sure to equip the vehicle with four tires of the same size and type.**
- **Make sure that a full time 4WD vehicle is towed by a flat bed tow truck.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 42 2020-09-24 7:59:24

4WD operation

Four Wheel Drive (4WD) mode selection

Transfer mode	Selection mode	Description
4WD AUTO (Normal driving)	-	In the 4WD AUTO mode, under normal operating conditions, the vehicle operates similar to conventional 2WD vehicles. If the system determines there is a need for four wheel drive, the engine's driving power is distributed to all four wheels automatically. Use this mode when driving on normal roads. If you select the "Driving force distribution" in the cluster, Driving force distribution (4WD) state is displayed.
SNOW		In this mode, the vehicle can start stably by properly distributing the driving force of the vehicle on slippery roads such as snowy roads. And you can drive safely by suppressing wheel slip.
MUD		In this mode, you can drive safely by securing enough driving power at the initial start by appropriately distributing the driving force of the vehicle when driving on muddy road , unpaved road or uneven road.
SAND		In this mode, you can drive safely by distributing the driving force of the vehicle properly when driving on smooth, dry sand or deep gravel and unpaved roads.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 43 2020-09-24 7:59:24

For safe 4WD operation

Before driving

- Make sure all passengers are wearing seat belts.
- Sit upright and closer to the steering wheel than usual. Adjust the steering wheel to a position comfortable for you to drive.

Driving on snow-covered or icy roads

- Start off slowly by applying the accelerator pedal gently.
- Use snow tires or tire chains.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Use engine braking during deceleration.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent skids.

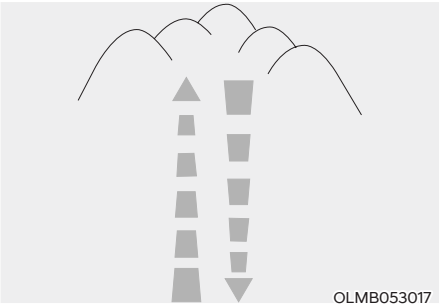
Driving in sand or mud

- Maintain slow and constant speed.
- Use tire chains driving in mud if necessary.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Reduce vehicle speed and always check the road condition.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent getting stuck.

CAUTION

When the vehicle is stuck in snow, sand or mud, place a non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction OR Slowly spin the wheels in forward and reverse directions which causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle. However, avoid running the engine continuously at high rpm, doing so may damage the 4WD system.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 44 2020-09-24 7:59:24


OLMB053017

Driving up or down hills

- Driving uphill
  - Before starting off, check if it is possible to drive uphill.
  - Drive as straight as possible.
- Driving downhill
  - Do not change gear while driving downhill. Select gear before driving downhill.
  - Driveas slowly using engine braking while driving downhill.
  - Drive straight as possible.

WARNING

Exercise extreme caution driving up or down steep hills. The vehicle may flip depending on the grade, terrain and water/ mud conditions.


OLMB053018

WARNING

Do not drive across the contour of steep hills. A slight change in the wheel angle can destabilize the vehicle, or a stable vehicle may lose stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over and lead to a serious injury or death.

Driving through water

- Try to avoid driving in deep standing water. It may stall your engine and clog your exhaust pipes.
- If you need to drive in water, stop your vehicle, set the vehicle in 4WD LOCK mode and drive under 8 km/h (5 mph).
- Do not change gear while driving in water.

Additional driving conditions

- Become familiar with the off-road conditions before driving.
- Always pay attention when driving off-road and avoid dangerous areas.
- Drive slowly when driving in heavy wind.
- Reduce vehicle speed when cornering. The center of gravity of 4WD vehicles is higher than conventional 2WD vehicles, making them more likely to roll over when you rapidly turn corners.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 45 2020-09-24 7:59:24


ONX4E060022

- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving off-road.

WARNING

Do not grab the inside of the steering wheel when you are driving off-road. You may hurt your arm by a sudden steering maneuver or from steering wheel rebound due to an impact with objects on the ground. You could lose control of the steering wheel which may lead to serious injury or death.

Emergency precautions

Tires

Do not use tire and wheel with different size and type from the one originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover causing serious injury.

When replacing the tires, be sure to equip all four tires with the tire and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity. If you equip your vehicle with any tire/wheel combination not recommended by HYUNDAI for off-road driving, you should not use these tires for highway driving.

WARNING

Never start or run the engine while a full-time 4WD vehicle is raised on a jack. The vehicle can slip or roll off of a jack causing serious injury or death to you or those nearby.

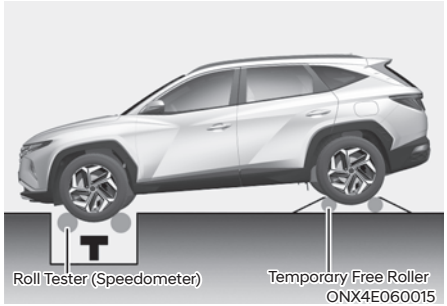
Towing

4WD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. For more details, refer to "Towing" in chapter 8.

Dynamometer testing

A full-time 4WD vehicle must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 46 2020-09-24 7:59:25



A full-time 4WD vehicle should not be tested on a 2WD roll tester. If a 2WD roll tester must be used, perform the following procedure:

1. Check the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.
2. Place the front wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Place the rear wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.

CAUTION

- **Never engage the parking brake while performing the test.**
- **When the vehicle is lifted up, do not operate the front and rear wheel separately. All four wheels should be operated.**

WARNING

Keep away from the front of the vehicle while the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. The vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.

Reducing the risk of a rollover

This multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV). SUV's have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. Specific design characteristics give them a higher center of gravity than ordinary vehicles. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road, which allows you to anticipate problems. They are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional passenger vehicles, any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily in off-road conditions. Due to this risk, driver and passengers are strongly recommended to buckle their seat belts. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, do not load your roof rack with heavy cargo, and never modify your vehicle in any way.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 47 2020-09-24 7:59:25

WARNING

Rollover

As with other Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV), failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

- **Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.**
- **Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, narrower track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher center of gravity than ordinary vehicles.**
- **A SUV is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional vehicles.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.**
- **In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure everyone in the vehicle is properly buckled up.**

WARNING

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tire and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tires, be sure to equip all four tires with the tire and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity. If you nevertheless decide to equip your vehicle with any tire/wheel combination not recommended by HYUNDAI for off road driving, you should not use these tires for highway driving.

WARNING

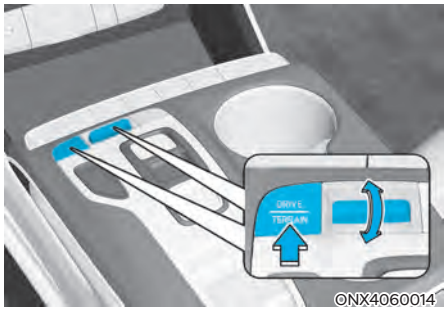
Jacked vehicle

While a full-time 4WD vehicle is being raised on a jack, never start the engine or cause the tires to rotate.

There is a danger that rotating tires touching the ground could cause the vehicle to fall off the jack and to jump forward or rearward.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 48 2020-09-24 7:59:25

DRIVE MODE INTEGRATED CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



The drive mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

The system resets to be in the ECO mode, when the engine is restarted.

The mode changes, as below, whenever the DRIVE MODE button is toggled.

ECO ⟷ SPORT

ECO mode : ECO mode helps improve fuel efficiency for eco-friendly driving.

SPORT mode : SPORT mode provides sporty but firm riding

ECO mode

When the Drive Mode is set to ECO mode, the engine and transmission control logic are changed to maximize fuel efficiency.

- When the ECO mode is selected by using the DRIVE MODE button, the ECO indicator will illuminate.
- Whenever the engine is restarted, the drive mode remains in ECO mode.

Information

Fuel efficiency depends on the driver's driving habit and road condition.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 49 2020-09-24 7:59:25

When ECO mode is activated:

- The acceleration response may be slightly reduced as the accelerator pedal is depressed moderately.
- The air conditioner performance may be limited.
- The shift pattern of the automatic transmission may change.
- The engine noise may get louder.

The above situations are normal conditions when ECO mode is activated, to improve fuel efficiency.

Limitation of ECO mode operation:

If the following conditions occur while ECO mode is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low:

  The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill:

  The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because engine torque is restricted.
- When the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed for a few seconds:

  The system will be limited, judging that the driver wants to speed up.

SPORT mode



SPORT mode manages the driving dynamics by automatically adjusting the steering effort, the engine and transmission control logic for enhanced driving performance.

- When SPORT mode is selected by using the DRIVE MODE button, the SPORT indicator will illuminate.
- Whenever the engine is restarted, the Drive Mode will revert back to ECO mode. If SPORT mode is desired, re-select SPORT mode from the DRIVE MODE button.
- When SPORT mode is activated:
  - The engine rpm will tend to remain raised over a certain length of time even after releasing the accelerator
  - Upshifts are delayed when accelerating

Information

In SPORT mode, the fuel efficiency may decrease.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 50 2020-09-24 7:59:25

SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving elements are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud and sand, take the following precautions:

- Drive cautiously and maintain a longer braking distance.
- Avoid abrupt braking or steering.
- When your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid unnecessary wheel spin.
- Put sand, rock salt, tire chains or other non-slip materials under the wheels to provide additional traction while the vehicle becomes stuck in ice, snow, or mud.

WARNING

Downshifting with an automatic transmission while driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tire speed could cause the tires to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear.

Try to avoid spinning the wheels, and do not race the engine.

To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

WARNING

If the vehicle is stuck and excessive wheel spin occurs, the temperature in the tires can increase very quickly. If the tires become damaged, a tire blow out or tire explosion can occur. This condition is dangerous - you and others may be injured. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle.

If you attempt to free the vehicle, the vehicle can overheat quickly, possibly causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Try to avoid spinning the wheels as much as possible to prevent overheating of either the tires or the engine. DO NOT allow the vehicle to spin the wheels above 56 km/h (35 mph).

Information

The ESC system must be turned OFF before rocking the vehicle.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 51 2020-09-24 7:59:26

NOTICE

If you are still stuck after rocking the vehicle a few times, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating, possible damage to the transmission, and tire damage. See "Towing" section in chapter 8.

Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration.

Driving at night

Night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight. Here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other drivers' headlamps.
- Keep your headlamps clean and properly aimed. Dirty or improperly aimed headlamps will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlamps of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain or on slick pavement:

- Slow down and allow extra following distance. A heavy rainfall makes it harder to see and increases the distance needed to stop your vehicle.
- Turn OFF your Cruise Control. (if equipped)
- Replace your windshield wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield.
- Be sure your tires have enough tread. If your tires do not have enough tread, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. **See "Tire Tread" section in chapter 9**.
- Turn on your headlamps to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe your brakes may be wet, apply them lightly while driving until normal braking operation returns.

Hydroplaning

If the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough, your vehicle may have little or no contact with the road surface and actually ride on the water. The best advice is SLOW DOWN when the road is wet.

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the depth of tire tread decreases, refer to "Tire Tread" section in chapter 9.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 52 2020-09-24 7:59:26

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be reduced.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times while the vehicle is moving slowly.

Highway driving

Tires

Adjust the tire inflation, as specified. Under-inflation may overheat or damage the tires.

Do not install worn-out or damaged tires, which may reduce traction or fail the braking operation.

Information

Never over-inflate your tires above the maximum inflation pressure, as specified on your tires.

Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil

Driving at higher speeds on the highway consumes more fuel and is less efficient than driving at a slower, more moderate speed. Maintain a moderate speed in order to conserve fuel when driving on the highway.

Be sure to check both the engine coolant level and the engine oil before driving.

Drive belt

A loose or damaged drive belt may overheat the engine.

Reducing the risk of a rollover

Your multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV). SUV's have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. The specific design characteristics give them a higher center of gravity than ordinary vehicles making them more likely to roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. Due to this risk, driver and passengers are strongly recommended to buckle their seat belts. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, do not load your vehicle with heavy cargo on the roof, and never modify your vehicle in any way.

WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- **Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.**
- **Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers.**
- **Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the center of gravity.**
- **Keep tires properly inflated.**
- **Do not carry heavy cargo on the roof.**

WARNING

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure all passengers are wearing their seat belts.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 53 2020-09-24 7:59:26

WINTER DRIVING

The severe weather conditions of winter quickly wear out tires and cause other problems. To minimize winter driving problems, you should take the following suggestions:

Snow or icy conditions

You need to keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

Apply the brakes gently. Speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices. During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause the vehicle to skid.

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tires or to install tire chains on your tires.

Always carry emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tire chains, tow straps or chains, a flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

Snow tires

WARNING

Snow tires should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tires. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

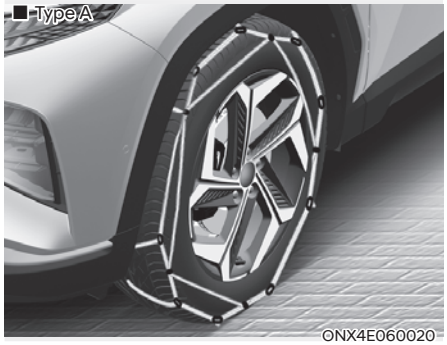
We recommend that you use snow tires when road temperature is below 7°C (45°F). Refer to the below chart, and mount the recommended snow tire for your vehicle.

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure to use the same Inflation pressure as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. The traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tires. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 54 2020-09-24 7:59:26

Tire chains

■ Type A



ONX4E060020

■ Type B



ONX4E060023

Since the sidewalls of radial tires are thinner than other types of tires, they may be damaged by mounting some types of tire chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tires is recommended instead of tire chains. If tire chains must be used, use genuine HYUNDAI Parts or the equivalent specified for your vehicle and install the tire chain after reviewing the instructions provided with the tire chains. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper tire chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

When using tire chains, attach them to the drive wheels as follows.

2WD : Front wheels

4WD : All four wheels

If a full set of chains is not available for an 4WD vehicle, chains may be installed on the front wheels only.

WARNING

The use of tire chains may adversely affect vehicle handling:

- **Drive less than 30 km/h (20 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked wheel braking.**

Information

- **Install tire chains only in pairs and on the front tires. It should be noted that installing tire chains on the tires will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.**
- **Do not install studded tires without first checking local and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 55 2020-09-24 7:59:26

Chain Installation

When installing tire chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly possible. Drive slowly (less than 30 km/h (20 mph)) with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until the noise stops. Remove the tire chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning Flasher and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle (if available). Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.

NOTICE

When using tire chains:

If snow chains must be used, see the below table.

215/65 R17	Fabric-type chains or Wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 12mm (0.47 in.)
235/50 R19	Fabric-type chains

- **Wrong size chains or improperly installed chains can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.**
- **Use SAE "S" class or wire chains.**
- **If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chain to prevent contact with the vehicle body.**
- **To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.5~1.0 km (0.3~0.6 miles).**
- **Do not use tire chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels. If unavoidable, use a wire type chain.**
- **Use wire chains less than 12 mm (0.47 in.) thick to prevent damage to the chain's connection.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 56 2020-09-24 7:59:26

Winter precautions

Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in chapter 9. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

Check battery and cables

Winter temperatures affect battery performance. **Inspect the battery and cables, as specified in chapter 9.** We recommend the battery charging cables be checked by contact an authorized HYUNDAI or in a service station.

Change to “winter weight” oil if necessary

In some regions during winter, it is recommended to use the “winter weight” oil with lower viscosity In addition, replace the engine oil and filter if it is close to the next maintenance interval. Fresh engine oil ensures optimum engine operation during the winter months. For further information, refer to chapter 2. When you are not sure about a type of winter weight oil, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect the spark plugs, as specified in chapter 8. If necessary, replace them. Also check all ignition wirings and components for any cracks, wear-out, and damage.

To prevent locks from freezing

To prevent the locks from being frozen, spray approved de-icing fluid or glycerin into key holes. When a lock opening is already covered with ice, spray approved de-icing fluid over the ice to remove it. When an internal part of a lock freezes, try to thaw it with a heated key. Carefully use the heated key to avoid an injury.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 57 2020-09-24 7:59:26

Use approved window washer anti-freeze solution in system

To prevent the window washer from being frozen, add authorized window washer anti-freeze solution, as specified on the window washer container. Window washer anti-freeze solution is available from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer, and most vehicle accessory outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze solution, to prevent any damage to the vehicle paint.

Do not let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. When there is the risk that your parking brake may freeze, temporarily apply it with the gear in P (Park). Also, block the rear wheels in advance, so the vehicle may not roll. Then, release the parking brake.

Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in such conditions during the severe winter, you should check underneath the vehicle on a regular basis, to ensure that the front wheels and the steering components is unblocked.

Carry emergency equipment

In accordance with weather conditions, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment, while driving. Some of the items you may want to carry include tire chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

Do not place objects or materials in the engine compartment

Putting objects or materials in the engine compartment may cause an engine failure or combustion, because they may block the engine cooling. Such damage will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 58 2020-09-24 7:59:26

TRAILER TOWING (FOR EUROPE)

If you are considering to tow with your vehicle, you should first your country's legal requirements. As laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. When you are not sure about a type of winter weight oil, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Remember that trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper trailer towing is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

This section contains many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- **If you don't use the correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control of the vehicle when you are pulling a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the braking performance may be reduced. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.**
- **Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (Gross Combination Weight), GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight), GAW (Gross Axle Weight) and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.**
- **When you tow a trailer, make sure to turn off the Idle Stop and Go system.**

Information - For Europe

- **The technically permissible maximum load on the rear axle(s) may be exceeded by not more than 15 % and the technically permissible maximum laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by not more than 10% or 100 kg (220.4 lbs), whichever value is lower. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) for vehicle of category M1 or 80 km/h (49.7 mph) for vehicle of category N1.**
- **When a vehicle of category M1 is towing a trailer, the additional load imposed at the trailer coupling device may cause the tire maximum load ratings to be exceeded, but not by more than 15%. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) and increase the tire inflation pressure by at least 0.2 bar.**

✳ **M1 : passenger vehicle (9-seater or under)**

✳ **N1 : commercial vehicle (3.5 ton or under)**

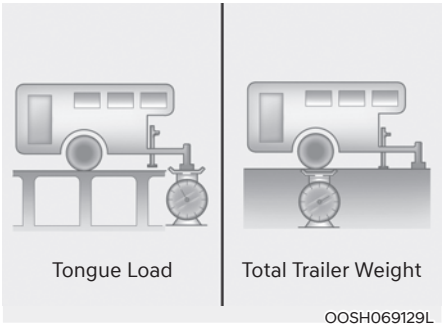
006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 59 2020-09-24 7:59:26

If you decide to pull a trailer?

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a trailer hitch dealer about sway control.
- Do not do any towing with your vehicle during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the engine to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transmission damage.
- When towing a trailer, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h (60 mph)) or posted towing speed limit.
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 70 km/h (45 mph) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower.
- Carefully observe the weight and load limits provided in the following pages.

Trailer weight

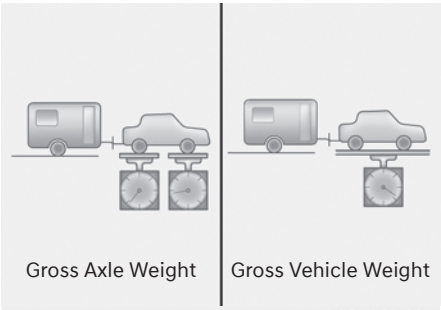


OOSH069129L

What is the maximum safe weight of a trailer? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy. It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how often your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 60 2020-09-24 7:59:26

Tongue load



The tongue load is an important weight to measure because it affects the total Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) of your vehicle. The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 10% of the total loaded trailer weight, within the limits of the maximum trailer tongue load permissible.

After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.**
- **Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.**

Information

With increasing altitude the engine performance decreases. From 1,000 m above sea level and for every 1,000 m thereafter 10% of vehicle/trailer weight (trailer weighter + gross vehicle weight) must be deducted.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 61 2020-09-24 7:59:26

Reference weight and distance when towing a trailer (for Europe)

Item		Smartstream G1.6 T-GDi HEV
		AT
Maximum trailer weight kg (lbs.)	Without brake system	750 (1,653)
	With brake system	1,650 (3,637)
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device kg (lbs.)		100 (220)
Recommended distance from rear wheel center to coupling point mm (inch)		1,025 (43)

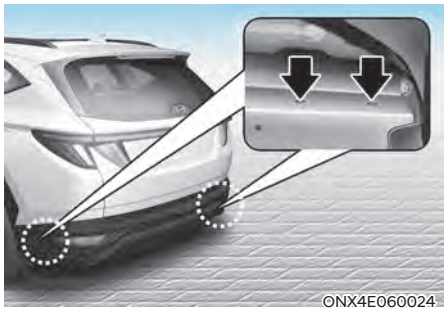
Reference weight and distance when towing a trailer (except Europe)

Item		Smartstream G1.6 T-GDi HEV
		AT
Maximum trailer weight kg (lbs.)	Without brake system	750 (1,653)
	With brake system	1,650 (3,637)
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device kg (lbs.)		100 (220)
Recommended distance from rear wheel center to coupling point mm (inch)		1,025 (43)

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 62 2020-09-24 7:59:27

Trailer towing equipment

Hitches



Information

The mounting hole for hitches are located on both sides of the underbody behind the rear tires.

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- Do you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch. If you don't seal them, carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to them. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Any part of the rear number plate or lighting devices of the vehicle must not be obscured by the mechanical coupling device.

  If the rear number plate and/or lighting devices can be obscured partially by any part of the mechanical coupling device, mechanical coupling devices that can not be easily removed or repositioned without use of any tools, except an easily operated (i.e. an effort not exceeding 20Nm) release key which is supplied by the manufacturer of the coupling device, are not permitted for use.

  Please note that the mechanical coupling device that is fitted and not in use must always be removed or repositioned if the rear number plate and/or rear lighting devices are obscured by any part of the mechanical coupling device.
- A HYUNDAI trailer hitch accessory is available at an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 63 2020-09-24 7:59:27

Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes loaded, then it needs its own brakes and they must be adequate. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly. Be sure not to modify your vehicle's brake system.

WARNING

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tires and brakes.

During your trip, occasionally check to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and trailer brakes are still working.

Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You will need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 64 2020-09-24 7:59:27

Backing up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making turns

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

Turn signals

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

WARNING

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use an approved trailer wiring harness. Failure to do so could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury. We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for assistance.

Driving on hills

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get overheated and may not operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70 km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of engine and transmission overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have a automatic transmission, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimize heat build-up and extend the life of your transmission.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 65 2020-09-24 7:59:27

NOTICE

To prevent engine and/or transmission overheating:

- **When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat. If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves towards "H" (HOT), pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.**
- **If you tow a trailer with the maximum gross vehicle weight and maximum trailer weight, it can cause the engine or transmission to overheat. When driving in such conditions, allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine or transmission has cooled sufficiently.**
- **When towing a trailer, your vehicle speed may be much slower than the general flow of traffic, especially when climbing an uphill grade. Use the right hand lane when towing a trailer on an uphill grade. Choose your vehicle speed according to the maximum posted speed limit for vehicles with trailers, the steepness of the grade, and your trailer weight.**

Parking on hills

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill.

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space.
   Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the curb (right if headed down hill, left if headed up hill).
2. Shift the gear to P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place wheel chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes and parking brakes.
7. Shift the gear to P (Park) when the vehicle is parked on a uphill grade and in R (Reverse) on a downhill.
8. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

WARNING

To prevent serious or fatal injury:

- **Do not get out of the vehicle without the parking brake firmly set. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You and others could be seriously or fatally injured.**
- **Do not apply the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle on an uphill.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 66 2020-09-24 7:59:27

Driving the vehicle after it has been parked on a hill

1. With the gear in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down while you:
   - Start your engine;
   - Shift into gear; and
   - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when towing a trailer

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, transmission fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these items before you start your trip. Don't forget to also maintain your trailer and hitch. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all hitch nuts and bolts should be tight.

NOTICE

To prevent vehicle damage:

- **Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur on hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates over-heating, switch off the air conditioner and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.**
- **Do not switch off the engine while the coolant gauge indicates over-heating.**

  (Keep the engine idle to cool down the engine)
- **When towing check transmission fluid more frequently.**
- **If your vehicle is not equipped with an air conditioner, you should install a condenser fan to improve engine performance when towing a trailer.**

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 67 2020-09-24 7:59:27

VEHICLE WEIGHT

Two labels on your driver's door sill show how much weight your vehicle was designed to carry: the Tire and Loading Information Label and the Certification Label.

Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, from the vehicle's specifications and the Certification Label:

Base Curb Weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Curb Weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo Weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Certification Label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)

This is the Base Curb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the Certification Label located on the driver's door sill.

Overloading

WARNING

The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) and the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the Certification Label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

006_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 68 2020-09-24 7:59:27

7. Driver assistance system

Driving Safety
- Forward Collision–Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) 7-2
- Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) 7-17
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) 7-24
- Safe Exit Warning (SEW) 7-37
- Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA) 7-43
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA) 7-46
- Driver Attention Warning (DAW) 7-51
- Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM) 7-57

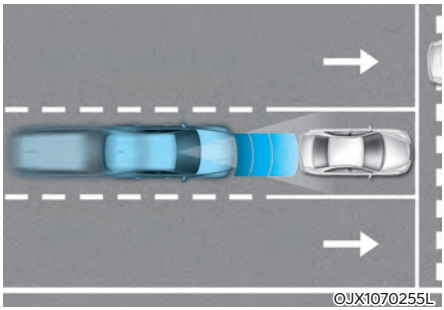
Driving Convenience
- Cruise Control (CC) 7-59
- Smart Cruise Control (SCC) 7-63
- Navigation-Based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC) 7-79
- Lane Following Assist (LFA) 7-86
- Highway Driving Assist (HDA) 7-90

Parking Safety
- Rear View Monitor (RVM) 7-96
- Surround View Monitor (SVM) 7-100
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) 7-106
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) 7-116
- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) 7-119
- Remote Smart Parking Assist (RSPA) 7-124

Declaration of conformity 7-137

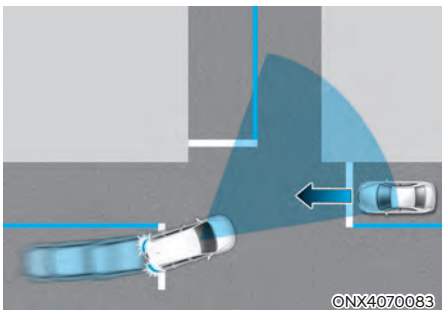
FORWARD COLLISION–AVOIDANCE ASSIST (FCA) (SENSOR FUSION) (IF EQUIPPED)

Basic function



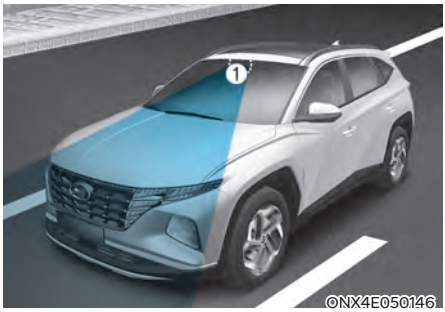
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect and monitor the vehicle ahead or help detect a pedestrian or cyclist in the roadway and warn the driver that a collision is imminent with a warning message and an audible warning, and if necessary, apply emergency braking.

Junction Turning function (if equipped)



Junction Turning function will help avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle in an adjacent lane when turning left at a crossroad with the turn signal on by applying emergency braking.

Detecting sensor





[1] : Front view camera,
[2] : Front radar

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 2 2020-09-24 7:59:48

CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensor:

- Never disassemble the detecting sensor or sensor assembly, or apply any impact on it.
- If the detecting sensors have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.
- Never install any accessories or stickers on the front windshield, or tint the front windshield.
- Pay extreme caution to keep the front view camera dry.
- Never place any reflective objects (i.e. white paper, mirror) over the dashboard. Any light reflection may prevent the system from functioning properly.
- Do not apply license plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard, near the front radar cover.
- Always keep the front radar and cover clean and free of dirt and debris.

  Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurized water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.
- If unnecessary force has been applied to the radar or around the radar, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate even though a warning message does not appear on the cluster. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.
- Use only genuine parts to repair or replace a damaged front radar cover. Do not apply paint to the front radar cover.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 3 2020-09-24 7:59:48

System settings

Setting functions for the system



OTM070090N

Forward Safety

With the engine on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Forward Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether or not to use each function.

- If 'Active Assist' is selected, the system will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning and steering wheel vibration (if equipped) depending on the collision risk levels. Braking assist will be applied depending on the collision risk.
- If 'Warning Only' is selected, the system will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning and steering wheel vibration (if equipped) depending on the collision risk levels. Braking will not be assisted.
- If 'Off' is selected, the system will turn off. The warning light will illuminate on the cluster.

The driver can monitor Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist ON/OFF status from the Settings menu. If the warning light remains ON when the system is ON, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING

When the engine is restarted, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will always turn on. However, if 'Off' is selected after the engine is restarted, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

CAUTION

- **If 'Warning Only' is selected, braking is not assisted.**
- **The settings for Forward Safety include 'Basic function' and 'Junction Turning' (if equipped).**
- **Steering wheel vibration can be turned on or off. Select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Haptic Warning' from the Settings menu (if equipped).**

Information

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off when ESC is turned off by pressing and holding the ESC OFF button for more than 3 seconds. The warning light will illuminate on the cluster.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 4 2020-09-24 7:59:48

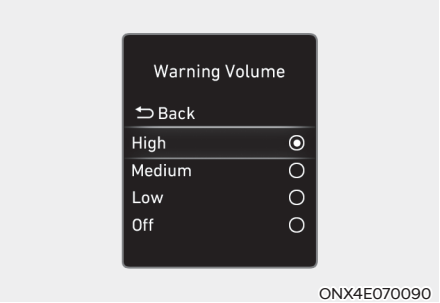


OTM070140N

Warning Timing

With the engine on, select ‘Driver Assistance → Warning Timing’ from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

When the vehicle is first delivered, Warning Timing is set to ‘Normal’. If you change the Warning Timing, the warning time of other Driver Assistance systems may change.



ONX4E070090

Warning Volume

With the engine on, select ‘Driver Assistance → Warning Volume’ from the Settings menu to change the Warning Volume to ‘High’, ‘Medium’, ‘Low’ or ‘Off’ for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

However, even if ‘Off’ is selected, the system's Warning Volume will not turn off but the volume will sound as ‘Low’.

If you change the Warning Volume, the Warning Volume of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

CAUTION

- **The setting of the Warning Timing and Warning Volume applies to all functions of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.**
- **Even though ‘Normal’ is selected for Warning Timing, if the front vehicle suddenly stops, the initial warning activation time may not seem late.**
- **Select ‘Late’ for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**

Information

If the engine is restarted, Warning Timing and Warning Volume will maintain the last setting.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 5 2020-09-24 7:59:48

System operation

Basic function

System warning and control

The basic function for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is to help warn and control the vehicle depending on the collision level: ‘Collision Warning’, ‘Emergency Braking’ and ‘Stopping vehicle and ending brake control’.



ONX4E070001

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the ‘Collision Warning’ warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate (if equipped).
- If a vehicle is detected in front, the system will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10~180 km/h (6~112 mph).
- If a pedestrian or cyclist is detected in front, the system will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10~85 km/h (6~53 mph).
- If ‘Active Assist’ is selected, braking may be assisted.



ONX4E070002

Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the ‘Emergency Braking’ warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate (if equipped).
- If a vehicle is detected in front, the system will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10~75 km/h (6~47 mph).
- If a pedestrian or cyclist is detected in front, the system will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10~65 km/h (6~40 mph).
- In emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the system to help prevent collision with the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 6 2020-09-24 7:59:50



ONX4E070003

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.

  For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

Junction Turning function (if equipped)

System warning and control

Junction Turning function will help warn and control the vehicle depending on the collision level: 'Collision Warning', 'Emergency Braking' and 'Stopping vehicle and ending brake control'

■ Left-hand drive



ONX4E070006

■ Right-hand drive



ONX4E070088

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate (if equipped).
- The system will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10~30 km/h (6~19 mph) and the oncoming vehicle speed is between approximately 30~70 km/h (19~44 mph).
- If 'Active Assist' is selected, braking may be assisted.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 7 2020-09-24 7:59:53

■ Left-hand drive



ONX4E070007

■ Right-hand drive



ONX4E070089

Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the 'Emergency Braking' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate (if equipped).
- The system will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10~30 km/h (6~19 mph) and the oncoming vehicle speed is between approximately 30~70 km/h (19~44 mph).
- In emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the system to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.

Information

If the driver's seat is on the left side, Junction Turning function will operate only when the driver turns left. If the driver's seat position is on right side, the function will operate only when you turn right.



ONX4E070003

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.

  For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 8 2020-09-24 7:59:55

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- With 'Active Assist' or 'Warning Only' selected, when ESC is turned off by pressing and holding the ESC OFF button for more than 3 seconds, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off automatically. In this case, the system cannot be set from the Settings menu and the warning light will illuminate on the cluster which is normal. If ESC is turned on by pressing the ESC OFF button, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will maintain the last setting.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.
- The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never deliberately operate Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, animal, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver depresses the brake pedal to avoid collision.
- Depending on the road and driving conditions, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver.
- During Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
- If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.

WARNING

- Even if there is a problem with Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking performance will operate normally.
- During emergency braking, braking control by the system will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 9 2020-09-24 7:59:55

CAUTION

- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operating speed range may reduce due to the conditions of the vehicle or pedestrian in front or surroundings. Depending on the speed, the system may only warn the driver, or the system may not operate.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate under certain conditions by judging the risk level based on the condition of the oncoming vehicle, driving direction, speed and surroundings.**

Information

In a situation where collision is imminent, braking may be assisted by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist when braking is insufficient by the driver.

System malfunction and limitations

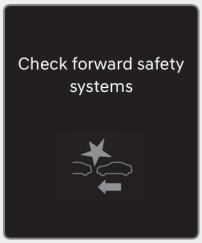
System malfunction

■ Type A



OTM070094N

■ Type B

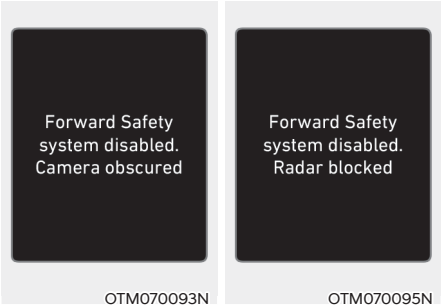


OTM070094L

When Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Forward Safety system(s)' warning message will appear, and the and warning lights will illuminate on the cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 10 2020-09-24 7:59:55

System disabled



OTM070093N OTM070095N

When the front windshield where the front view camera is located, front radar cover or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs the 'Forward Safety system(s) disabled. Camera obscured' or the 'Forward Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message, and the ⚠ and warning lights will illuminate on the cluster.

The system will operate normally when when such snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

If the system does not operate normally after obstruction (snow, rain, or foreign material) is removed, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message or warning light does not appear on the cluster, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate in an area (e.g. open terrain), where any substance are not detected after turning ON the engine.**

Limitations of the system

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally, or the system may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are contaminated or damaged
- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windshield, damaged glass, or stuck of foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windshield
- Washer fluid is continuously sprayed, or the wiper is on
- Driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Street light or light from an oncoming vehicle is reflected on the wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- An object is placed on the dashboard

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 11 2020-09-24 7:59:56

- Your vehicle is being towed
- The surrounding is very bright
- The surrounding is very dark, such as in a tunnel, etc.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The brightness outside is low, and the headlamps are not on or are not bright
- Driving through steam, smoke or shadow
- Only part of the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist is detected
- The vehicle in front is a bus, heavy truck, truck with a unusually shaped luggage, trailer, etc.
- The vehicle in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located unusually, etc.
- The brightness outside is low, and the tail lamps are not on or are not bright
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when the vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of the vehicle is visible, etc.
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high
- A vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist suddenly cuts in front
- The bumper around the front radar is impacted, damaged or the front radar is out of position
- The temperature around the front radar is high or low
- Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge
- Driving in large areas where there are few vehicles or structures (i.e. desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- A material is near that reflects very well on the front radar, such as a guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The cyclist in front is on a bicycle made of material that does not reflect on the front radar
- The vehicle in front is detected late
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by a obstacle
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle in front is bent out of shape
- The front vehicle's speed is fast or slow
- The vehicle in front steers in the opposite direction of your vehicle to avoid a collision
- With a vehicle in front, your vehicle changes lane at low speed
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- You are departing or returning to the lane
- Unstable driving
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- The vehicle in front has an unusual shape
- The vehicle in front is driving uphill or downhill

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 12 2020-09-24 7:59:56

- The pedestrian or cyclist is not fully detected, for example, if the pedestrian is leaning over or is not fully walking upright
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing or equipment that makes it difficult to detect as a pedestrian or cyclist



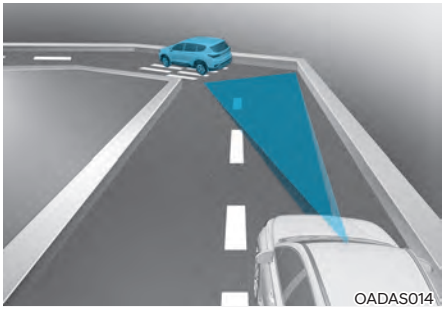
The illustration above shows the image the front view camera will detect as a vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist.

- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving very quickly
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is short or is posing a low posture
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front has impaired mobility
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving intersected with the driving direction
- There is a group of pedestrians, cyclists or a large crowd in front
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect
- The pedestrian or cyclist is difficult to distinguish from the similar shaped structure in the surroundings
- You are driving by a pedestrian, cyclist, traffic sign, structure, etc. near the intersection
- Driving in a parking lot
- Driving through a tollgate, construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations while driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tire pressure, etc.
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 13 2020-09-24 7:59:56

WARNING

- **Driving on a curve**

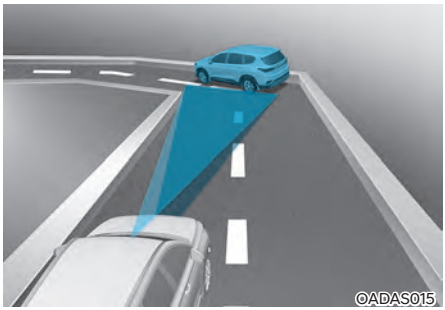

OADAS014


OADAS016


OADAS018

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists in front of you on curved roads adversely affecting the performance of the sensors. This may result in no warning or braking assist when necessary.

When driving on a curve, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer the vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.


OADAS015


OADAS017

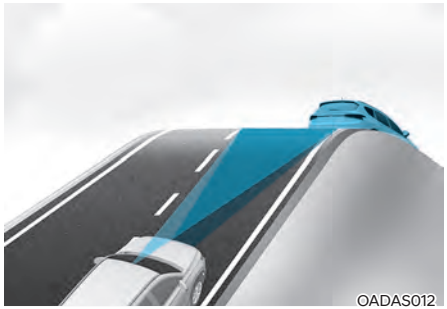

OADAS019

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curved road.

If this occurs, the system may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake. Always check the traffic conditions around the vehicle.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 14 2020-09-24 7:59:56

- **Driving on a slope**







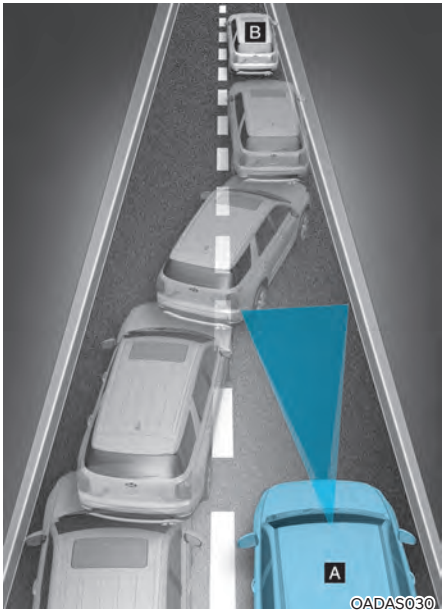
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists in front of you while driving uphill or downhill adversely affecting the performance of the sensors.

This may result in unnecessary warning or braking assist, or no warning or braking assist when necessary.

Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead is suddenly detected.

Always have your eyes on the road while driving uphill or downhill and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

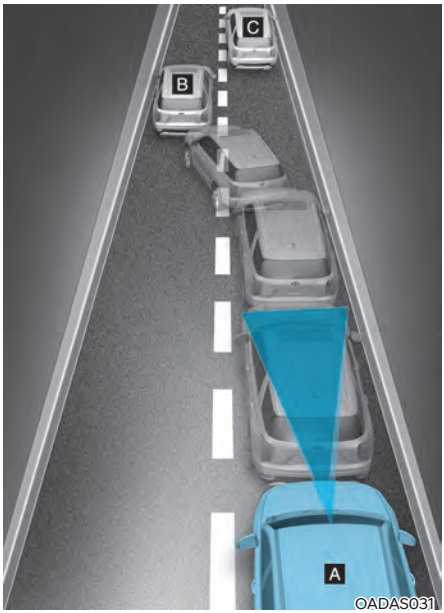
- **Changing lanes**



[A] : Your vehicle,
[B] : Lane changing vehicle

When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

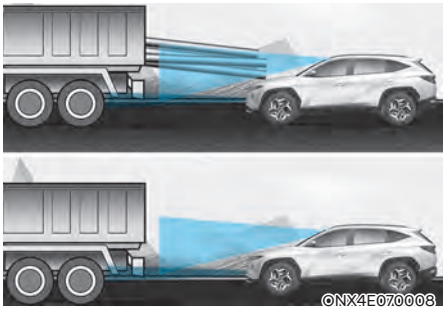
007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 15 2020-09-24 7:59:56



[A] : Your vehicle, [B] : Lane changing vehicle,
[C] : Same lane vehicle

When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle that is now in front of you. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

- **Detecting vehicle**



If the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab, or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance, additional special attention is required. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect the cargo extending from the vehicle. In these instances, you must maintain a safe braking distance from the rearmost object, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 16 2020-09-24 7:59:57

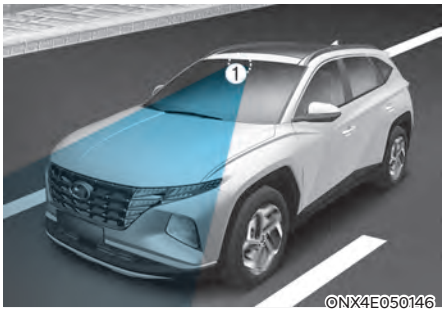
WARNING

- **When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, we recommend that Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is turned off due to safety reasons.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may operate if objects that are similar in shape or characteristics to vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists are detected.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate on bicycles, motorcycles, or smaller wheeled objects, such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialized.**

LANE KEEPING ASSIST (LKA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Lane Keeping Assist is designed to help detect lane markings (or road edges) while driving over a certain speed. The system will warn the driver if the vehicle leaves the lane without using the turn signal, or will automatically assist the driver's steering to help prevent the vehicle from departing the lane.

Detecting sensor



[1] : Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect lane markings (or road edges).

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 17 2020-09-24 7:59:57

System settings

Setting functions for the system



OTM070184N

Lane Safety

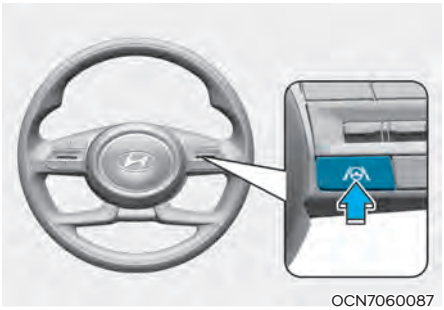
With the engine on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Lane Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether or not to use each function.

- If 'Assist' is selected, the system will automatically assist the driver's steering when lane departure is detected to help prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane.
- If 'Warning Only' is selected, the system will warn the driver with an audible warning and steering wheel vibration (if equipped) when lane departure is detected. The driver must steer the vehicle.
- If 'Off' is selected, the system will turn off. The indicator light will turn off on the cluster.

WARNING

- **If 'Warning Only' is selected, steering is not assisted.**
- **Lane Keeping Assist does not control the steering wheel when the vehicle is driven in the middle of the lane.**
- **The driver should always be aware of the surroundings and steer the vehicle if 'Off' is selected.**

Turning the system On/Off (Lane Driving Assist button)



OCN7060087

With the engine on, press and hold the Lane Driving Assist button located on the steering wheel to turn on Lane Keeping Assist. The white indicator light will illuminate on the cluster.

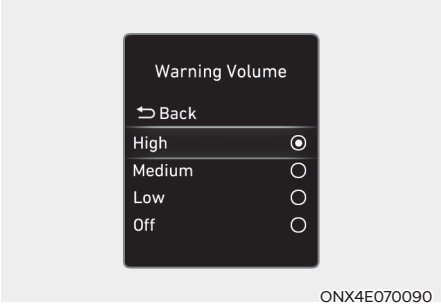
Press and hold the button again to turn off the system.

If the engine is restarted, Lane Keeping Assist will maintain the last setting.

CAUTION

When the Lane Driving Assist button is pressed shortly, Lane Following Assist will turn on and off.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 18 2020-09-24 7:59:57



ONX4E070090

Warning Volume

With the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu to change the Warning Volume to 'High', 'Medium', 'Low' or 'Off' for Lane Keeping Assist.

However, even if 'Off' is selected, the Hands-off Warning Volume will not be turned off. Steering wheel vibration function (if equipped) will also remain on even if 'Off' is selected.

If you change the Warning Volume, the Warning Volume of other Driver Assistance systems may be changed.

System operation

System warning and control

Lane Keeping Assist will help warn and control the vehicle with Lane Departure Warning and Lane Keeping Assist.

■ Left



ONX4070009

■ Right



ONX4070010

Lane Departure Warning

- To warn the driver that the vehicle is departing from the projected lane in front, the green indicator light will blink on the cluster, the lane line will blink on the cluster depending on which direction the vehicle is veering, and an audible warning will sound.

  Also, the steering wheel will vibrate. (if equipped)
- The system will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 60~200 km/h (40~120 mph).

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 19 2020-09-24 7:59:59

Lane Keeping Assist

- To warn the driver that the vehicle is departing from the projected lane in front, the green indicator light will blink on the cluster, and the steering wheel will make adjustments to keep the vehicle inside the lane.
- The system will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 60~200 km/h (40~120 mph).

■ Type A



ONX4E070091

■ Type B



ONX4E070092

Hands-off warning

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the 'Place hands on the steering wheel' (or 'Keep hands on the steering wheel') warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound in stages.

WARNING

- **The steering wheel may not be assisted if the steering wheel is held very tight or the steering wheel is steered over a certain degree.**
- **Lane Keeping Assist does not operate at all times. It is the responsibility of the driver to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.**
- **The hands–off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel while driving.**
- **If the steering wheel is held very lightly, the hands–off warning message may appear because the system may not recognize that the driver has their hands on the steering wheel.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 20 2020-09-24 7:59:59

Information

- **You may change settings from the instrument cluster (User Settings) or infotainment system (Vehicle Settings), whichever option that is provided with your vehicle. For more details, see "User Settings" section in chapter 4, or "Vehicle Settings" section in supplied Infotainment Manual.**
- **When lane markings (or road edges) are detected, the lane lines on the cluster will change from grey to white and the green indicator light will illuminate.**

■ Lane undetected



ONX4070013

■ Lane detected



ONX4070012

- **Even though the steering is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist, the driver may control the steering wheel.**
- **The steering wheel may feel heavier or lighter when the steering wheel is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist than when it is not.**

System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction

■ Type A



OTM070035N

■ Type B



OTM070035L

When Lane Keeping Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system' (or 'Check LKA (Lane Keeping Assist) system') warning message will appear and the yellow indicator light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 21 2020-09-24 8:00:01

Limitations of the system

Lane Keeping Assist may not operate normally or may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The lane is contaminated or difficult to distinguish because,
  - The lane markings (or road edge) is covered with rain, snow, dirt, oil, etc.
  - The color of the lane marking (or road edge) is not distinguishable from the road
  - There are markings (or road edges) on the road near the lane or the markings (or road edges) on the road looks similar to the lane markings (or road edge)
  - The lane marking (or road edge) is indistinct or damaged
  - The shadow is on the lane marking (or road edge) by a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
- There are more than two lane markings (or road edges) on the road
- The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings (or road edges) are crossing
- The lane markings (or road edges) are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the intersection
- The lane (or road width) is very wide or narrow
- There is a road edge without a lane
- There is a boundary structure in the roadway, such as a tollgate, sidewalk, curb, etc.
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short or the vehicle in front is covering the lane marking (or road edge)

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 22 2020-09-24 8:00:01

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Lane Keeping Assist:

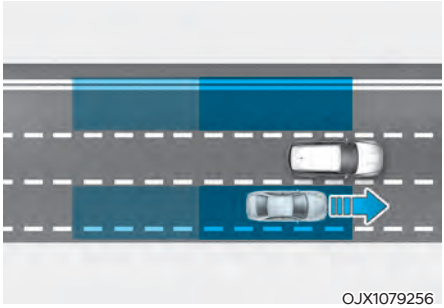
- The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle. Do not solely rely on the system and drive dangerously.
- The operation of Lane Keeping Assist can be cancelled or not work properly depending on road conditions and surroundings. Always be cautious while driving.
- Refer to “Limitations of the System” if the lane is not detected properly.
- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, we recommend that Lane Keeping Assist is turned off due to safety reasons.
- If the vehicle is driven at high speed, the steering wheel will not be controlled. The driver must always follow the speed limit when using the system.
- If any other system’s warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Lane Keeping Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Lane Keeping Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- If you attach objects to the steering wheel, steering may not be assisted properly.
- Lane Keeping Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialized.
- Lane Keeping Assist will not operate when:
  - The turn signal or hazard warning flasher is turned on
  - The vehicle is not driven in the center of the lane when the system is turned on or right after changing a lane
  - ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or VSM (Vehicle Stability Management) is activated
  - The vehicle is driven on a sharp curve
  - Vehicle speed is below 55 km/h (35 mph) or above 210 km/h (130 mph)
  - The vehicle makes sharp lane changes
  - The vehicle brakes suddenly

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 23 2020-09-24 8:00:01

BLIND-SPOT COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (BCA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect and monitor approaching vehicles in the driver's blind spot area and warn the driver of a possible collision with a warning message and audible warning.

In addition, if there is a risk of collision when changing lanes or driving forward out of a parking space, the system will help avoid a collision by applying the brake.

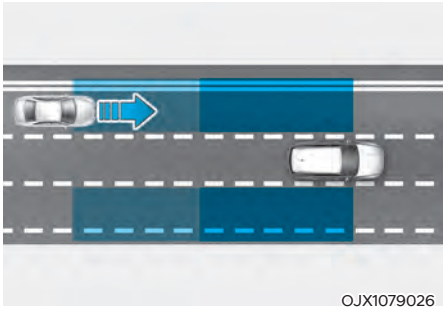


OJX1079256

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and inform the driver that a vehicle is in the blind spot.

CAUTION

The detecting range may vary depending on the speed of your vehicle. However, even if there is a vehicle in the blind spot area, the system may not warn you when you pass by at high speeds.

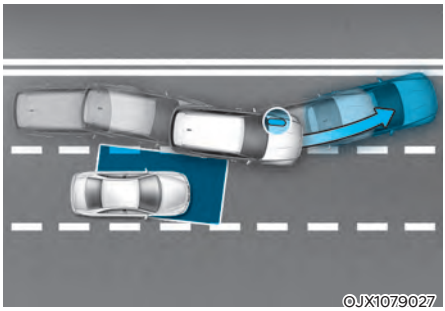


OJX1079026

Blind-Spot Collision Assist helps detect and informs the driver that a vehicle is approaching at high speed from the blind spot area.

CAUTION

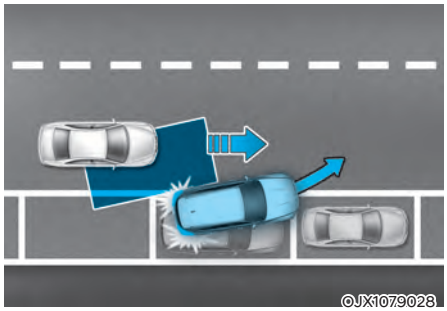
Warning timing may vary depending on the speed of the vehicle approaching at high speed.



OJX1079027

When changing lanes by detecting the lane ahead, if the system judges that there is a collision risk with an approaching vehicle in the blind spot, the system will help avoid a collision by applying the brake.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 24 2020-09-24 8:00:02

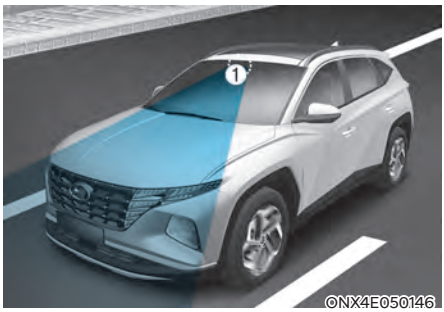


When you are driving forward out of a parking space, if the system judges that there is a collision risk with an approaching vehicle in the blind spot, the system will help avoid a collision by applying the brake.

Information

In the following text, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will be referred as Blind-Spot Safety system.

Detecting sensor





[1] : Front view camera,
[2] : Rear corner radar

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 25 2020-09-24 8:00:02

CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensor:

- **Never disassemble the rear corner radar or radar assembly, or apply any impact on it.**
- **If there is impact on the rear corner radar or near the radar, even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Blind-Spot Safety system may not operate properly. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **If the rear corner radars have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Use only genuine parts to repair the rear bumper where the rear corner radar is located.**
- **Do not apply license plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard near the rear corner radar.**
- **The system may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced, or the surroundings of the rear corner radar has been damaged or paint has been applied.**
- **If a trailer, carrier, etc. is installed, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or the system may not operate.**

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

System settings

Setting functions for the system



OTM070096N

Blind-Spot Safety

With the engine on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Blind-Spot Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether or not to use each function.

- If 'Active Assist' is selected, the system will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning, steering wheel vibration (if equipped) and braking assist will be applied depending on the collision risk levels.
- If 'Warning Only' is selected, the system will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning and steering wheel vibration (if equipped) depending on the collision risk levels. Braking will not be assisted.
- If 'Off' is selected, the system will turn off.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 26 2020-09-24 8:00:02



OTM070097N

When the engine is restarted with the system off, the ‘Blind-Spot Safety System is Off’ message will appear on the cluster.

If you change the setting from ‘Off’ to ‘Active Assist’ or ‘Warning Only’, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink for three seconds.

In addition, if the engine is turned on, when the system is set to ‘Active Assist’ or ‘Warning Only’, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink for three seconds.

WARNING

- **If ‘Warning Only’ is selected, braking is not assisted.**
- **If ‘Off’ is selected, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.**

Information

If the engine is restarted, Blind-Spot Safety system will maintain the last setting.



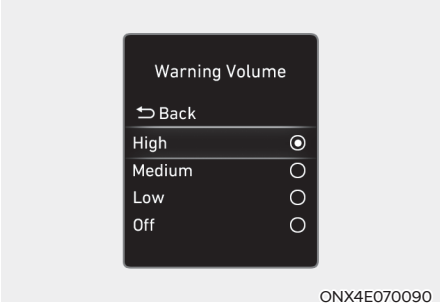
OTM070140N

Warning Timing

With the engine on, select ‘Driver Assistance → Warning Timing’ from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Blind-Spot Safety system.

When the vehicle is first delivered, Warning Timing is set to ‘Normal’. If you change the Warning Timing, the warning time of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 27 2020-09-24 8:00:02



ONX4E070090

Warning Volume

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu to change the Warning Volume to 'High', 'Medium', 'Low' or 'Off' for Blind-Spot Safety system.

However, when Warning Volume is turned off, the steering wheel vibration function (if equipped) will turn on if it was turned off.

If you change the Warning Volume, the Warning Volume of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

CAUTION

- **The setting of the Warning Timing and Warning Volume applies to all functions of the Blind-Spot Safety system.**
- **Even though 'Normal' is selected for Warning Timing, if the vehicles approaches at high speed, the initial warning activation time may seem late.**
- **Select 'Late' for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**

System operation

System warning and control



OHY059034

Vehicle detection

- To warn the driver a vehicle is detected, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) will illuminate.
- The system will operate when your vehicle speed is above 20 km/h (12 mph) and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 10 km/h (7 mph).

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 28 2020-09-24 8:00:02

Collision Warning

- Collision warning will operate when the turn signal is turned on in the direction of the detected vehicle.
- If 'Warning Only' is selected from the Settings menu, the collision warning will operate when your vehicle approaches the lane the blind spot vehicle is detected.
- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate (if equipped).
- When the turn signal is turned off or you move away from the lane, the collision warning will be canceled and the system will return to vehicle detection state.

WARNING

- **The detecting range of the rear corner radar is determined by a standard road width, therefore, on a narrow road, the system may detect other vehicles in the next next lane and warn you. In contrast, on a wide road, the system may not be able to detect a vehicle driving in the next lane and may not warn you.**
- **When the hazard warning flasher is on, the collision warning by the turn signal will not operate.**

Information

If the driver's seat is on the left side, the collision warning may occur when you turn left. Maintain a proper distance with the vehicles in the left lane. If the driver's seat is on the right side, the collision warning may occur when you turn right. Maintain a proper distance with the vehicles in the right lane.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 29 2020-09-24 8:00:03



Collision-Avoidance Assist (while driving)

- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and a warning message will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate (if equipped).
- The system will operate when your vehicle speed is between 60~200 km/h (40~120 mph) and both lane markings of the driving lane are detected.
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with the vehicle in the blind spot area.

WARNING

- **Collision-Avoidance Assist will be canceled under the following circumstances:**
  - **Your vehicle enters the next lane by a certain distance**
  - **Your vehicle is away from the collision risk**
  - **The steering wheel is sharply steered**
  - **The brake pedal is depressed**
  - **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating**
- **After system operation or lane change, you must drive to the center of the lane. The system will not operate if the vehicle is not driven in the center of the lane.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 30 2020-09-24 8:00:04



ONX4E070093

Collision-Avoidance Assist (while departing)

- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and a warning message will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate (if equipped).
- The system will operate when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph) and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 5 km/h (3 mph).
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with the vehicle in the blind spot area.



ONX4E070003

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the ‘Drive carefully’ warning message will appear on the cluster.

  For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 31 2020-09-24 8:00:05

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Blind-Spot Safety system:

- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Blind-Spot Safety system's warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Blind-Spot Safety system if the surrounding is noisy.**
- **Blind-Spot Safety system may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid collision.**
- **When Blind-Spot Safety system is operating, braking control by the system will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.**
- **During Blind-Spot Safety system operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.**
- **Even if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Safety system, the vehicle's basic braking performance will operate normally.**
- **Blind-Spot Safety system does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.**
- **Blind-Spot Safety system may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions.**
- **Driver should maintain control of the vehicle at all times. Do not depend on Blind-Spot Safety system. Maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.**
- **Never operate Blind-Spot Safety system on people, animal, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.**

WARNING

The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There will only be a warning when:

- **The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on**
- **ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 32 2020-09-24 8:00:05

System malfunction and limitations

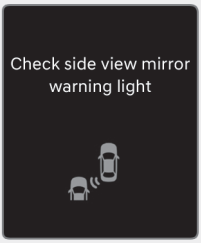
System malfunction



OTM070099N

When Blind-Spot Safety system is not working properly, the ‘Check Blind-Spot Safety system(s)’ warning message will appear on the cluster, and the system will turn off automatically or the system will be limited. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

■ Type A



OTM070100N

■ Type B



OTM070100L

When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the ‘Check side view mirror warning light’ (or 'Check outside mirror warning icon') warning message will appear on the cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

System disabled



OTM070098N

When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Blind-Spot Safety system.

If this occurs, the ‘Blind-Spot Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked’ warning message will appear on the cluster.

The system will operate normally when such foreign material or trailer, etc. is removed, and then the engine is restarted.

If the system does not operate normally after it is removed, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Blind-Spot Safety system may not properly operate.**
- **Blind-Spot Safety system may not properly operate in an area (e.g. open terrain) where any substance are not detected right after the engine is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material right after the engine is turned on.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 33 2020-09-24 8:00:05

CAUTION

Turn off Blind-Spot Safety system to install a trailer, carrier, etc., or remove the trailer, carrier, etc. to use Blind-Spot Safety system.

Limitations of the system

Blind-Spot Safety system may not operate normally, or the system may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.
- The rear corner radar is covered with snow, rain, dirt, etc.
- The temperature around the rear corner radar is high or low
- Driving on a highway (or motorway) ramp
- The road pavement (or the peripheral ground) abnormally contains metallic components (i.e. possibly due to subway construction)
- There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as sound barriers, guardrails, central dividers, entry barriers, street lamps, signs, tunnels, walls, etc. (including double structures)
- Driving in large areas where there are few vehicles or structures (i.e. desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- Driving on a wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- The other vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or the other vehicle passes by your vehicle in close proximity
- The speed of the other vehicle is very fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time
- Your vehicle passes by the other vehicle
- Your vehicle changes lane
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you
- A trailer or carrier is installed around the rear corner radar
- The bumper around the rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the rear corner radar is impacted, damaged or the radar is out of position
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tire pressure, etc.

Blind-Spot Safety system may not operate normally, or the system may operate unexpectedly when the following objects are detected:

- A motorcycle or bicycle is detected
- A vehicle such as a flat trailer is detected
- A big vehicle such as a bus or truck is detected
- A moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart or a baby stroller is detected
- A vehicle with low height such as a sports car is detected

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 34 2020-09-24 8:00:05

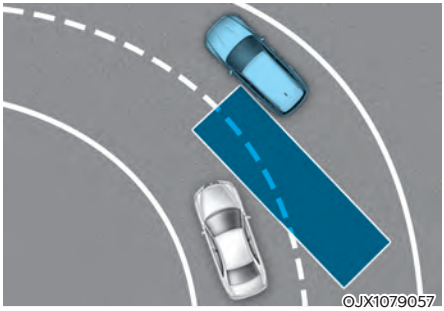
Braking control may not work, driver's attention is required in the following circumstances:

- The vehicle severely vibrates while driving over a bumpy road, uneven road or concrete patch
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tire pressure is low or a tire is damaged
- The brake is reworked
- The vehicle makes abrupt lane changes

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" and "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in chapter 7.

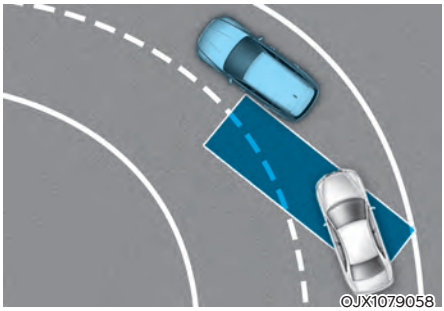
WARNING

- **Driving on a curve**



Blind-Spot Safety system may not operate properly when driving on a curved road. The system may not detect the vehicle in the next lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.

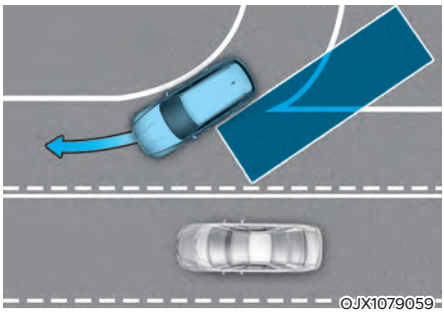


Blind-Spot Safety system may not operate properly when driving on a curved road. The system may recognize a vehicle in the same lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 35 2020-09-24 8:00:05

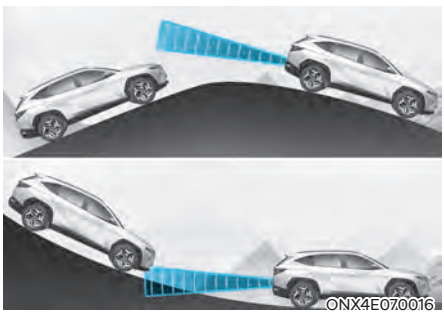
- **Driving where the road is merging/ dividing**



Blind-Spot Safety system may not operate properly when driving where the road merges or divides. The system may not detect the vehicle in the next lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.

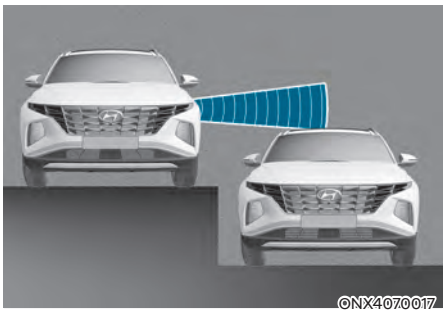
- **Driving on a slope**



Blind-Spot Safety system may not operate properly when driving on a slope. The system may not detect the vehicle in the next lane or may incorrectly detect the ground or structure.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.

- **Driving where the heights of the lanes are different**



Blind-Spot Safety system may not operate properly when driving where the heights of the lanes are different. The system may not detect the vehicle on a road with different lane heights (underpass joining section, grade separated intersections, etc.).

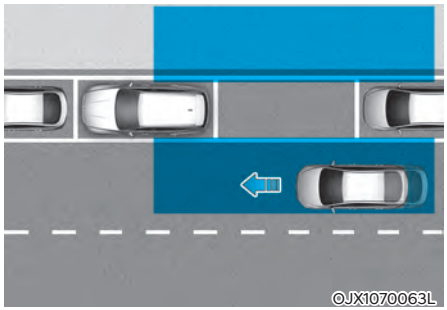
Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.

WARNING

- **When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, make sure that you turn off Blind-Spot Safety system.**
- **Blind-Spot Safety system may not operate normally if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Blind-Spot Safety system may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera or rear corner radars are initialized.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 36 2020-09-24 8:00:06

SAFE EXIT WARNING (SEW) (IF EQUIPPED)



After the vehicle stops, when an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected as soon as a passenger opens a door, Safe Exit Warning will warn the driver with a warning message and an audible warning to help prevent a collision.

CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on the speed of the approaching vehicle.

Detecting sensor



The rear corner radars are sensors located inside the rear bumper to detect the side and rear areas. Always keep the rear bumper clean for proper operation of Safe Exit Warning.

NOTICE

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radars, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in chapter 7.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 37 2020-09-24 8:00:06

Function settings

Setting functions



OCN7070042L

Safe Exit Assist

With the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position, select 'Driver Assistance → Blind-Spot Safety → Safe Exit Assist' from the Settings menu to turn on Safe Exit Warning and deselect to turn off the system.

WARNING

The driver should always be aware of unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. If 'Safe Exit Assist' is deselected, the system cannot assist you.

Information

If the engine is restarted, Safe Exit Warning will maintain the last setting.



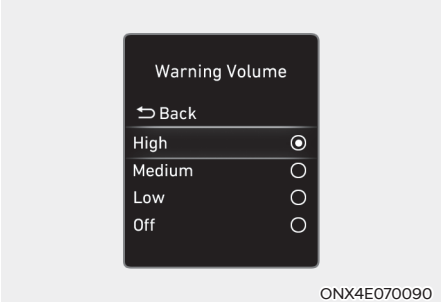
ODN8H069207L

Warning Timing

With the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Blind-Spot Safety system.

When the vehicle is first delivered, Warning Timing is set to 'Normal'. If you change the Warning Timing, the warning time of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 38 2020-09-24 8:00:06



ONX4E070090

Warning Volume

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu to change the Warning Volume to 'High', 'Medium', 'Low' or 'Off' for Blind-Spot Safety system.

However, when Warning Volume is turned off, the steering wheel vibration function (if equipped) will turn on if it was turned off.

If you change the Warning Volume, the Warning Volume of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

CAUTION

- **The setting of the Warning Timing and Warning Volume applies to all functions of the Safe Exit Warning.**
- **Even though 'Normal' is selected for Warning Timing, if the vehicles approaches at high speed from the rear, the initial warning activation time may seem late.**
- **Select 'Late' for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**

Information

If the engine is restarted, Warning Timing and Warning Volume will maintain the last setting.

Function operation

Function warning



ONX4E070020

Collision warning when exiting vehicle

- When an approaching vehicle from the rear is detected at the moment a door is opened, the 'Watch for traffic' warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound.
- Safe Exit Warning will warn the driver when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph), and the speed of the approaching vehicle from the rear is above 5 km/h (3 mph).

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 39 2020-09-24 8:00:06

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Safe Exit Warning:

- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.**
- **If any other function's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Safe Exit Warning warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Safe Exit Warning if the surrounding is noisy.**
- **Safe Exit Warning does not operate in all situations or cannot prevent all collisions.**
- **Safe Exit Warning may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions. Always check vehicle surroundings.**
- **The driver and passengers are responsible for accidents that occurs while exiting the vehicle. Always check the surroundings before you exit the vehicle.**
- **Never deliberately operate Safe Exit Warning. Doing so may lead to serious injury or death.**
- **Safe Exit Warning does not operate if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Safety system. The warning message of Blind-Spot Safety system will appear when:**
  - **Blind-Spot Safety system sensor or the sensor surrounding is polluted or covered**
  - **Blind-Spot Safety system fails to warn passengers or falsely warn passengers**

Information

After the engine is turned off, Safe Exit Warning operates approximately for 3 minutes, but turns off immediately if the doors are locked.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 40 2020-09-24 8:00:06

Function malfunction and limitations

Function malfunction



OCN7070039L

When Safe Exit Warning is not working properly, the ‘Check Blind-Spot Safety system’ warning message will appear on the cluster, and the system will turn off automatically or the system will be limited. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Function disabled



OCN7070041L

When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Safe Exit Warning.

If this occurs, the ‘Blind-Spot Safety function disabled. Radar blocked’ warning message will appear on the cluster.

The function will operate normally when such foreign material or trailer, etc. is removed, and then the engine is restarted.

If the function does not operate normally after it is removed, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 41 2020-09-24 8:00:06

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Safe Exit Warning may not properly operate.**
- **Safe Exit Warning may not properly operate in an area (e.g. open terrain) where any substance are not detected right after the engine is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material right after the engine is turned on.**

CAUTION

Turn off Safe Exit Warning to install a trailer, carrier, etc., or remove the trailer, carrier, etc. to use Safe Exit Warning.

Limitations of the function

Safe Exit Warning may not operate normally, or the function may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

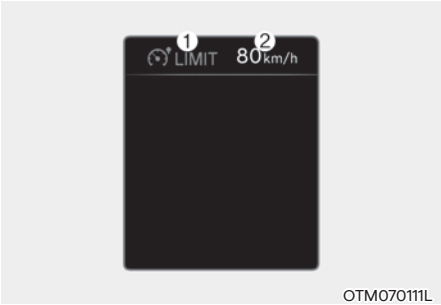
- Getting off the vehicle where trees or grass are overgrown
- Getting off the vehicle where the road is wet
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or very slow

WARNING

- **Safe Exit Warning may not operate normally if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Safe Exit Warning may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or rear corner radars are initialized.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 42 2020-09-24 8:00:06

MANUAL SPEED LIMIT ASSIST (MSLA) (IF EQUIPPED)



OTM070111L

(1) Manual Speed Limit Assist enabled indicator

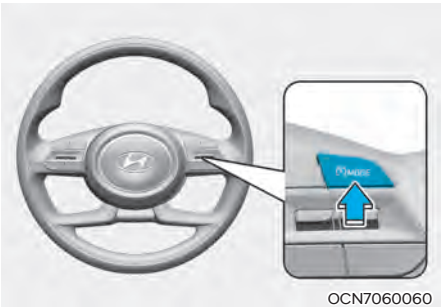
(2) Set speed

You can set the speed limit when you do not want to drive over a specific speed.

If you drive over the preset speed limit, Manual Speed Limit Assist will operate (set speed limit will blink and chime will sound) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

System operation

To set speed limit


OCN7060060

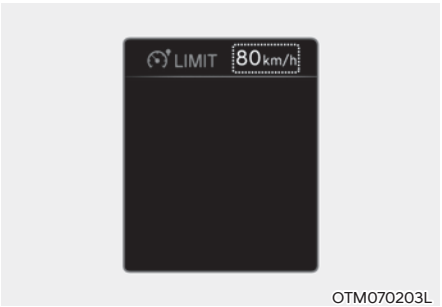
1. Press and hold Driving Assist (MODE) button at the desired speed. The Manual Speed Limit Assist enabled (LIMIT) indicator will illuminate on the cluster.


OCN7060143


OCN7060144

2. Push the + switch up or - switch down, and release it at the desired speed.

   Push the + switch up or - switch down and hold it. The speed will increase or decrease to the nearest multiple of ten (multiple of five in mph) at first, and then increase or decrease by 10 km/h (5 mph).



OTM070203L

3. The set speed limit will be displayed on the cluster.

   If you would like to drive over the preset speed limit, depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point to activate the kickdown mechanism.

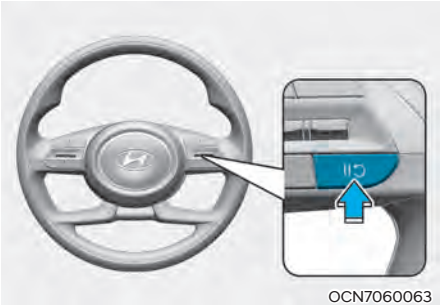
   The set speed limit will blink and chime will sound until you return the vehicle speed within the speed limit.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 43 2020-09-24 8:00:07

Information

- **When the accelerator pedal is not depressed beyond the pressure point, vehicle speed will maintain within the speed limit.**
- **A clicking sound may be heard from the kickdown mechanism when the accelerator pedal is depressed beyond the pressure point.**

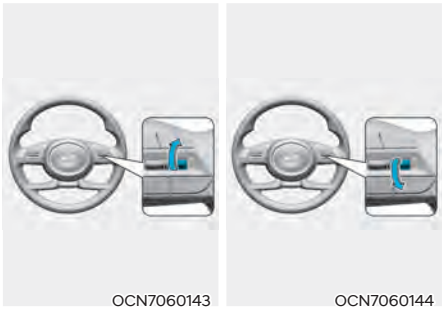
To temporarily pause the system


OCN7060063

[A] : Type A, [B] : Type B

Push the II↺ switch to temporarily pause the set speed limit. The set speed limit will turn off but the Manual Speed Limit Assist enabled (LIMIT) indicator will stay on.

To resume the system


OCN7060143 OCN7060144

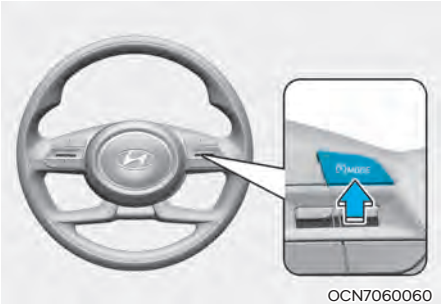
To resume Manual Speed Limit Assist after the system was paused, push the +, -, II↺ switch.

If you push the + switch up or – switch down, vehicle speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.

If you push the II↺ switch, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 44 2020-09-24 8:00:07

To turn off the system



OCN7060060

Press the Driving Assist (MODE) button to turn Manual Speed Limit Assist off. The Manual Speed Limit Assist enabled (LIMIT) indicator will go off.

Always press the Driving Assist (MODE) button to turn Manual Speed Limit Assist off when not in use.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Manual Speed Limit Assist:

- **Always set the vehicle speed to the speed limit in your country.**
- **Keep Manual Speed Limit Assist off when the system is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed. Check that the Manual Speed Limit Assist enabled (LIMIT) indicator is off.**
- **Manual Speed Limit Assist does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely and should always be aware of unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 45 2020-09-24 8:00:08

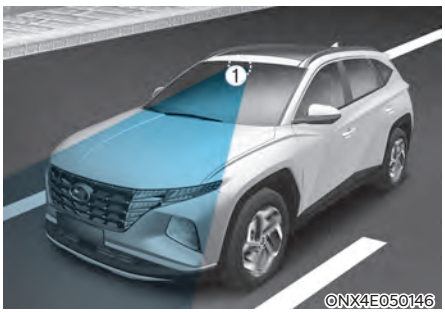
INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMIT ASSIST (ISLA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist uses information from the detected road sign and navigation system to inform the driver of the speed limit and additional information of the current road. Also, the system helps the driver to maintain within the speed limit of the road.

CAUTION

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly if the system is used in other countries.

Detecting sensor



[1] : Front view camera

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

Information

If the navigation system is available, the information from the navigation system is used along with the road sign information detected by the front view camera.

System settings

Setting functions for the system



OBC3070114TU

Speed limit

With the engine on, select or deselect 'Vehicle settings → Speed limit' from the Settings menu to set whether or not to use each function.

- If 'Speed limit assist' is selected, the system will inform the driver of speed limit and additional road signs. In addition, the system will inform the driver to change set speed of Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control to help the driver stay within the speed limit.
- If 'Speed limit warning' is selected, the system will inform the driver of speed limit and additional road signs. In addition, the system will warn the driver when the vehicle is driven faster than the speed limit.
- If 'Off' is selected, the system will turn off.

CAUTION

If 'Speed limit warning' is selected, the system will not inform the driver to adjust set speed.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 46 2020-09-24 8:00:08

Speed Limit Offset

With the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position, when 'Driver assistance → Speed limit → Speed limit tolerance' is selected, the Speed limit tolerance can be changed. Speed Limit Warning and Speed Limit Assist will operate by applying the Speed limit tolerance setting to the detected speed limit.

WARNING

- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.**
- **Speed Limit Assist function operates based on the Speed limit tolerance setting added to the speed limit. If you want to change the set speed according to the speed limit, set the offset to '0'.**
- **Speed Limit Warning function warns the driver when driving speed exceeds the speed at which the set Speed limit tolerance is added to speed limit. If you want Speed limit warning to warn you immediately when the driving speed exceeds the speed limit, set the offset to '0'.**

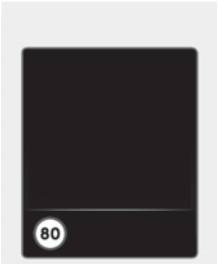
System operation

System warning and control

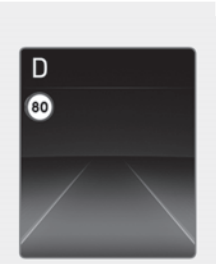
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will warn and control the vehicle by 'Displaying speed limit', 'Warning overspeed' and 'Changing set speed'.

Information

System warning and control are described based on the Speed limit tolerance set to '0'. For details on Offset setting, refer to the "System Settings".



ONX4E070094



ONX4E070095

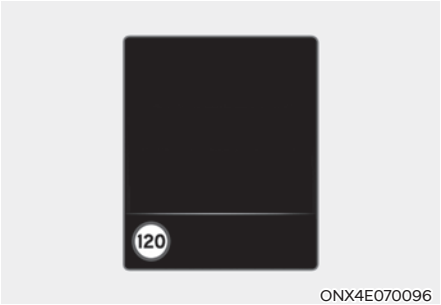
Displaying speed limit

Speed limit information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Information

- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist provides additional road sign information in addition to speed limit. The additional road sign information provided may vary according to your country.**
- **Supplementary sign displayed under the speed limit or overtaking restriction sign means the conditions under which the signs must be followed. If supplementary sign is not recognized, it will be displayed as blank.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 47 2020-09-24 8:00:08



ONX4E070096

Warning overspeed

When driving at a speed higher than the displayed speed limit, the red speed limit indicator will blink.



ONX4E070097



ONX4E070098

Changing set speed

If the speed limit of the road changes during the operation of Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control, an arrow in the direction of up or down is displayed to inform the driver that the set speed needs to be changed. At this time, the driver can change the set speed according to the speed limit by using the + or – switch on the steering wheel.

WARNING

- **If the Speed limit tolerance is set over '0', the set speed will change to a higher speed than the speed limit of the road. If you want to drive below the speed limit, set the Speed limit tolerance under '0' or use the – switch on the steering wheel to lower the set speed.**
- **Even after changing the set speed according to the speed limit of the road, the vehicle can still be driven over the speed limit. If necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed.**
- **If the speed limit of the road is under 30 km/h (20 mph), the set speed change function will not work.**
- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operates using the speed unit in the instrument cluster set by the driver. If the speed unit is set to a unit other than the speed unit used in your country, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly.**

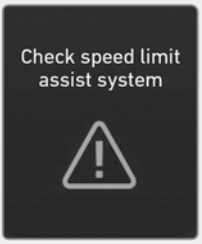
Information

- **For more details on system operation of Manual Speed Limit Assist, refer to "Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)" section in chapter 7.**
- **For more details on system operation of Smart Cruise Control, refer to "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" section in chapter 7.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 48 2020-09-24 8:00:08

System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction



OBC3070032

When Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is not working properly, the ‘Check speed limit system’ warning message will appear on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

System disabled



OTM070226L

When the front windshield where the front view camera is located is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Intelligent Speed Limit Assist. If this occurs, the ‘Speed limit system disabled. Camera obscured’ warning message will appear on the cluster.

The system will operate normally when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

If the system does not operate normally after it is removed, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message or warning light does not appear on the cluster, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly.**
- **If the detecting sensor is contaminated immediately after starting the engine, the system may not operate properly.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 49 2020-09-24 8:00:08

Limitations of the system

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate or may not provide correct information under the following circumstances:

- The road sign is contaminated or indistinguishable
  - The road sign is difficult to see due to bad weather, such as rain, snow, fog, etc.
  - The road sign is not clear or damaged
  - The road sign is partially obscured by surrounding objects or shadow
- The road signs do not conform to the standard
  - The text or picture on the road sign is different from the standard
  - The road sign is installed between the main line and the exit road or between diverging roads
  - An conditional road sign is not installed with a sign located on the road to enter or exit
  - A sign is attached to another vehicle
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel or passing under a bridge
- Headlamps are not used or the brightness of the headlamps are weak at night or in the tunnel
- Road signs are difficult to recognize due to the reflection of sunlight, street lights, or oncoming vehicles
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Driving on a road that is sharply curved or continuously curved
- Driving through speed bumps, or driving up and down or left to right on steep inclines
- The vehicle is shaking heavily

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

WARNING

- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is a supplemental system that helps the driver to comply with the speed limit on the road, and may not display the correct speed limit or control the driving speed properly.**
- **Always set the vehicle speed to the speed limit in your country.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 50 2020-09-24 8:00:08

DRIVER ATTENTION WARNING (DAW) (IF EQUIPPED)

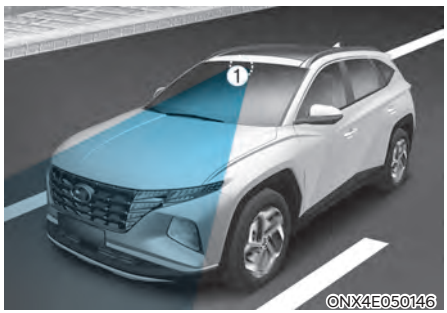
Basic function

Driver Attention Warning will help determine the driver's attention level by analyzing driving pattern, driving time, etc. while vehicle is being driven. The system will recommend a break when the driver's attention level falls below a certain level.

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert function

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert function will inform the driver when the front vehicle departs from a stop.

Detecting sensor



[1] : Front view camera

The front view camera is used to detect driving patterns and front vehicle departure while vehicle is being driven.

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

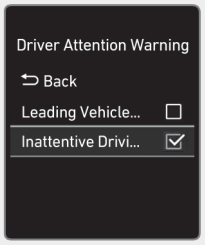
Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of Driver Attention Warning.

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

System settings

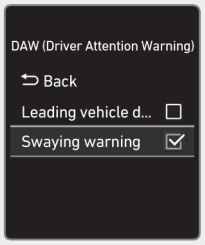
Setting functions for the system

■ Type A



OTM070188N

■ Type B



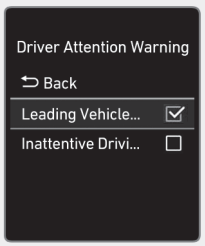
OTM070188L

Driver Attention Warning

With the engine on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Driver Attention Warning (or DAW (Driver Attention Warning))' from the Settings menu to set whether or not to use each function.

- If 'Inattentive Driving Warning' (or 'Swaying warning') is selected, the system will inform the driver the driver's attention level and will recommend taking a break when the level falls below a certain level.

■ Type A



OTM070189N

■ Type B



OTM070189L

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert

- If 'Leading Vehicle Departure Alert' is selected, the system will inform the driver when the front vehicle departs from a stop.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 51 2020-09-24 8:00:09



OTM070140N

Warning Timing

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Driver Attention Warning.

When the vehicle is first delivered, Warning Timing is set to 'Normal'. If you change the Warning Timing, the warning time of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

Information

If the engine is restarted, Driver Attention Warning will maintain the last setting.

System operation

Basic function

System display and warning

The basic function of Driver Attention Warning is to inform the driver of their 'Attention Level' and to warn the driver to 'Consider taking a break'.

Attention level

■ System off



OTM070102N

■ Standby/Disabled



OTM070106N

■ Attentive driving



OBC3070068

■ Inattentive driving



OTM070191N

- The driver can monitor his/her driving conditions on the cluster.
  - When the 'Inattentive Driving Warning' is deselected from the Settings menu, 'System Off' is displayed.
  - The system will operate when vehicle speed is between 0~180 km/h (0~110 mph).
  - When vehicle speed is not within the operating speed, the message 'Standby' (or 'Disabled') will be displayed.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 52 2020-09-24 8:00:09

- The driver's attention level is displayed on the scale of 1 to 5. The lower the level is, the more inattentive the driver is.
- The level decreases when the driver does not take a break for a certain period of time.

Taking a break



OTM070105L

- The 'Consider taking a break' message will appear on the cluster and an audible warning will sound to suggest that the driver take a break, when the driver's attention level is below 1.
- Driver Attention Warning will not suggest a break when the total driving time is shorter than 10 minutes or 10 minutes has not passed after the last break was suggested.

WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.

CAUTION

- **Driver Attention Warning may suggest a break depending on the driver's driving pattern or habits, even if the driver doesn't feel fatigued.**
- **Driver Attention Warning is a supplemental system and may not be able to determine whether the driver is inattentive.**
- **The driver who feels fatigued should take a break at a safe location, even though there is no break suggestion by Driver Attention Warning.**

Information

- **You may change settings from the instrument cluster (User Settings) or infotainment system (Vehicle Settings), whichever option that is provided with your vehicle. For more details, see "User Settings" section in chapter 4, or "Vehicle Settings" section in supplied Infotainment Manual.**
- **Driver Attention Warning will reset the last break time to 00:00 in the following situations:**
  - **The engine is turned off**
  - **The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the driver's door**
  - **The vehicle is stopped for more than 10 minutes**
- **When the driver resets Driver Attention Warning, the last break time is set to 00:00 and the driver's attention level is set to High.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 53 2020-09-24 8:00:09

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert function

■ Type A



ONX4E070099

■ Type B



ONX4E070030

When the front vehicle departs from a stop, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert will inform the driver by displaying the 'Leading vehicle is driving away' (or 'Leading vehicle is driving on') message on the cluster and an audible warning will sound.

WARNING

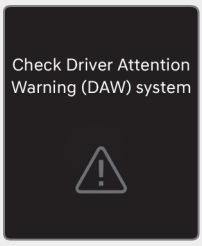
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert's warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.**
- **The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle.**

CAUTION

- **Leading Vehicle Departure Alert is a supplemental function and may not alert the driver whenever the front vehicle departs from a stop.**
- **Always check the front of the vehicle and road conditions before departure.**

System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction



OTM070107L

When Driver Attention Warning is not working properly, the 'Check Driver Attention Warning (DAW) system' warning message will appear on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Limitations of the system

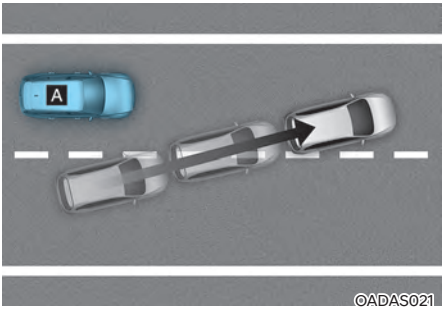
Driver Attention Warning may not work properly in the following situations:

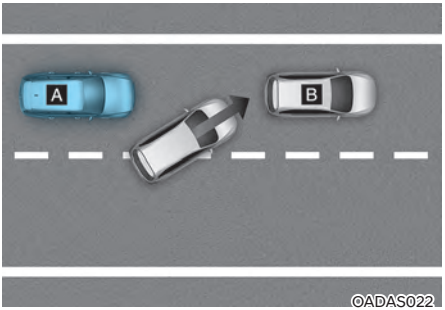
- The vehicle is driven violently
- The vehicle intentionally crosses over lanes frequently
- The vehicle is controlled by Driver Assistance system, such as Lane Keeping Assist

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 54 2020-09-24 8:00:10

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert feature

- When the vehicle cuts in

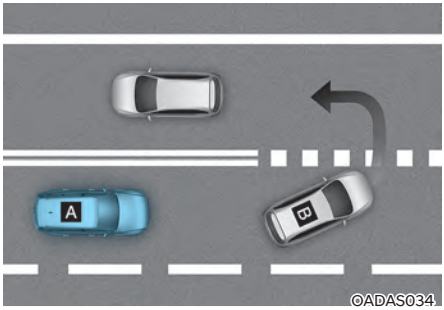




[A] : Your vehicle, [B] : Front vehicle

If a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, Leading Departure Alert may not operate properly.

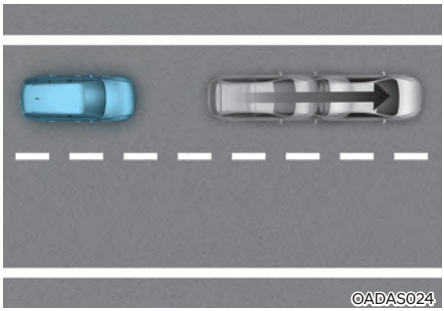
- When the vehicle ahead sharply steers



[A] : Your vehicle, [B] : Front vehicle

If the vehicle in front makes a sharp turn, such as to turn left or right or make a U-turn, etc., Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When the vehicle ahead abruptly departures



If the vehicle in front abruptly departures, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

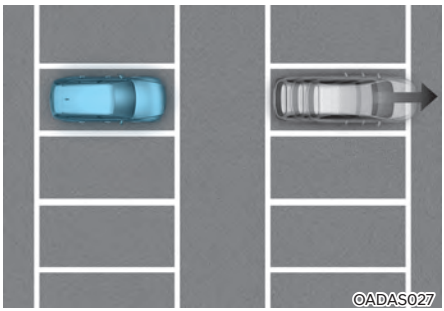
007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 55 2020-09-24 8:00:10

- When a pedestrian or bicycle is between you and the vehicle ahead



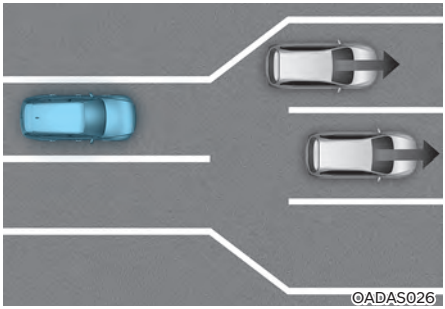
If there is a pedestrian(s) or bicycle(s) in between you and the vehicle in front, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When in a parking lot



If a vehicle parked in front drives away from you, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may alert you that the parked vehicle is driving away.

- When driving at a tollgate or intersection, etc.



If you pass a tollgate or intersection with lots of vehicles or you drive where lanes are merged or divided frequently, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 56 2020-09-24 8:00:10

BLIND-SPOT VIEW MONITOR (BVM) (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Left side



ONX4070080

■ Right side



ONX4070081

Blind-Spot View Monitor displays the rear blind spot area of the vehicle in the cluster when the turn signal is turned on to help change lanes.

Detecting sensor



ONX4070031

[1], [2] : SVM-side view camera
(camera located at bottom of the mirror)

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

System settings

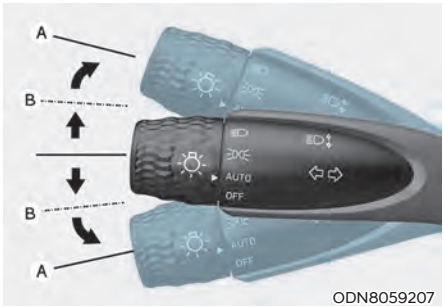
Setting functions for the system

Blind-Spot View

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Blind-Spot Safety → Blind-Spot View' from the Settings menu to turn on Blind-Spot View Monitor and deselect to turn off the system.

System operation

Operating switch



ODN8059207

Turn signal lever

Blind-Spot View Monitor will turn on and off when the turn signal is turned on and off.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 57 2020-09-24 8:00:10

Blind-Spot View Monitor

Operating conditions

When the left or right side turn signal turns on, the image in that direction is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Off conditions

- When the turn signal turns off, the image on the instrument cluster will turn off.
- When the hazard warning flasher is on, Blind-Spot View Monitor will turn off, regardless of the turn signal status.
- When other important warning is displayed on the instrument cluster, Blind-Spot View Monitor may turn off.

System malfunction

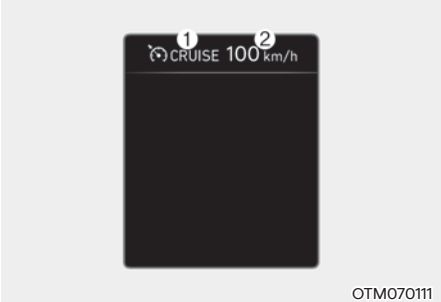
When Blind-Spot View Monitor is not working properly, or the cluster display flickers, or the camera image does not display normally, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING

- **The image shown on the cluster may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Blind-Spot View Monitor may not operate normally.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 58 2020-09-24 8:00:10

CRUISE CONTROL (CC) (IF EQUIPPED)



OTM070111

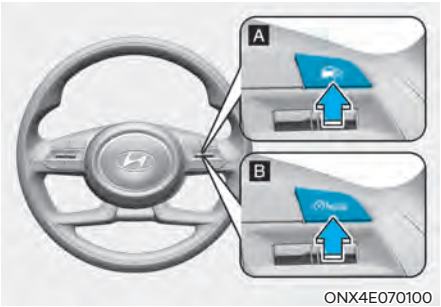
(1) Cruise indicator
(2) Set speed

Cruise Control will allow you to drive at speeds above 30 km/h (20 mph) without depressing the accelerator pedal.

System operation

To set speed

1. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 30 km/h (20 mph).



ONX4E070100

[A] : Type A, [B] : Type B

2. Press the Driving Assist button at the desired speed. The set speed and Cruise (CRUISE) indicator will illuminate on the cluster.
3. Release the accelerator pedal.

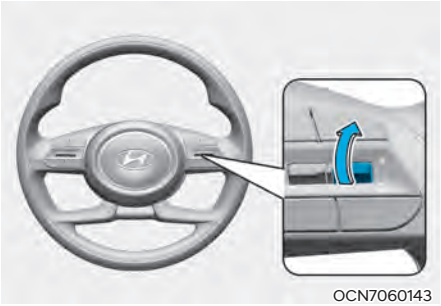
   Vehicle speed will maintain the set speed even when the accelerator pedal is not depressed.

Information

On a steep slope, the vehicle may slightly slow down or speed up while driving uphill or downhill.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 59 2020-09-24 8:00:11

To increase speed

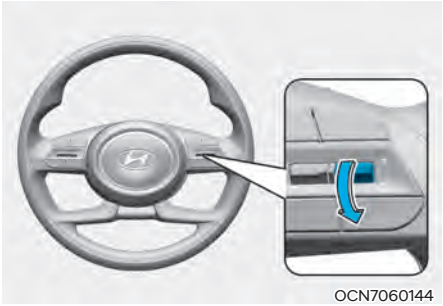


OCN7060143

- Push the + switch up and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the + switch up and hold it while monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The cruising speed will increase to the nearest multiple of ten (multiple of five in mph) at first, and then increase by 10 km/h (5 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.

  Release the switch when the desired speed is shown and the vehicle will accelerate to that speed.

To decrease speed



OCN7060144

- Push the - switch down and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the - switch down and hold it while monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The cruising speed will decrease to the nearest multiple of ten (multiple of five in mph) at first, and then decrease by 10 km/h (5 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.

  Release the switch at the speed you want to maintain.

To temporarily accelerate

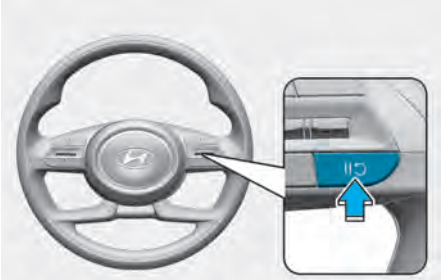
If you want to speed up temporarily when Cruise Control is on, depress the accelerator pedal.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If you push the + switch up or - switch down at increased speed, the cruising speed will be set to the current increased speed.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 60 2020-09-24 8:00:11

To temporarily pause the system


OCN7060063

Cruise Control will be paused when:

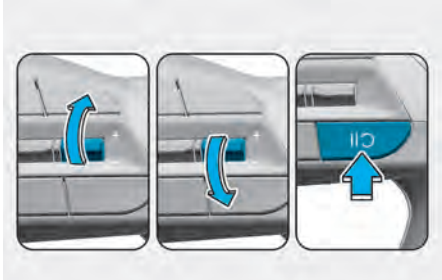
- Depressing the brake pedal.
- Pushing the II↺ button.
- Shifting the gear to N (Neutral).
- Decreasing vehicle speed to less than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is operating.
- Downshifting to 2nd gear when in Manual Shift mode.

The set speed will turn off but the Cruise (CRUISE) indicator will stay on.

NOTICE

If Cruise Control pauses during a situation that is not mentioned, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

To resume the system


OCN7060145

Push the +, - switch or II↺ button.

If you push the + switch up or - switch down, vehicle speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.

If you push the II↺ button, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.

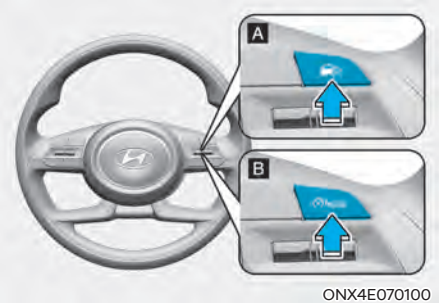
Vehicle speed must be above 30 km/h (20 mph) for the system to resume.

WARNING

Check the driving condition before using the II↺ button. Driving speed may sharply increase or decrease when you press the II↺ button.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 61 2020-09-24 8:00:11

To turn off the system



ONX4E070100

[A] : Type A, [B] : Type B

Press the Driving Assist button to turn Cruise Control off. The Cruise (CRUISE) indicator will go off.

Always press the Driving Assist button to turn Cruise Control off when not in use.

Information

If your vehicle is equipped with Manual Speed Limit Assist, press and hold the Driving Assist button to turn off Cruise Control. However, Manual Speed Limit Assist will turn on.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Cruise Control:

- **Always set the vehicle speed to the speed limit in your country.**
- **Keep Cruise Control off when the system is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed. Check that the Cruise (CRUISE) indicator is off.**
- **Cruise Control does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely and should always be aware of unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **Do not use Cruise Control when it may be unsafe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed:**
  - **When driving in heavy traffic, or when traffic conditions make it difficult to drive at a constant speed**
  - **When driving on rainy, icy, or snow-covered roads**
  - **When driving on hilly or windy roads**
  - **When driving in windy areas**
  - **When driving with limited view (possibly due to bad weather, such as fog, snow, rain and sandstorm)**
- **Do not use Cruise Control when towing a trailer.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 62 2020-09-24 8:00:11

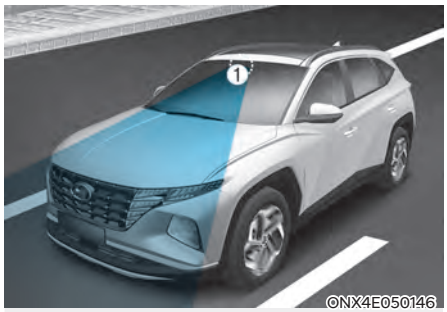
SMART CRUISE CONTROL (SCC) (IF EQUIPPED)

Smart Cruise Control is designed to detect the vehicle ahead and help maintain the desired speed and minimum distance between the vehicle ahead.

Overtaking Acceleration Assist

While Smart Cruise Control is operating, if the system judges that the driver is determined to overtake the vehicle in front, acceleration will be assisted.

Detecting senor





[1] : Front view camera,
[2] : Front radar

The front view camera and front radar are used as a detecting sensor to help detect the vehicles in front.

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

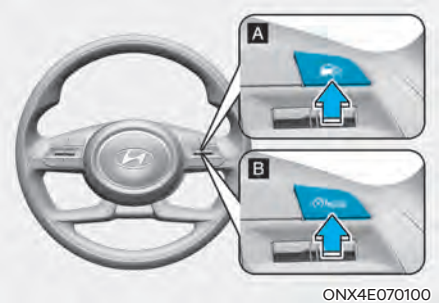
Always keep the front view camera and front radar in good condition to maintain optimal performance of Smart Cruise Control.

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera and front radar, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in chapter 7.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 63 2020-09-24 8:00:11

System settings

Setting functions for the system



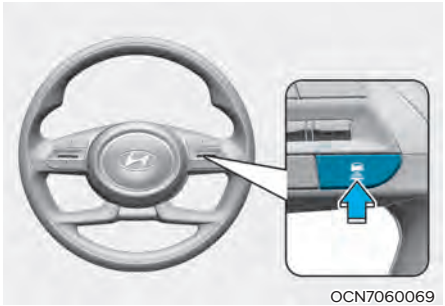
[A] : Type A, [B] : Type B

To turn on the system

- Press the Driving Assist button to turn on the system. The speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.
- If there is no vehicle in front of you, the set speed will be maintained, but if there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead. If the vehicle ahead accelerates, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the set speed.

Information

- **If your vehicle speed is between 0~ 30 km/h (0~ 20 mph) when you press the Driving Assist button, the Smart Cruise Control speed will be set to 30 km/h (20 mph).**
- **The Driving Assist button symbol may vary depending on your vehicle option.**



[A] : Type A, [B] : Type B

To set vehicle distance

Each time the button is pressed, the vehicle distance changes as follows:

Distance 4 → Distance 3 → Distance 2
↑ ↓
Distance 1 ←

Information

- **If you drive at 90 km/h (56 mph), the distance is maintained as follows:**

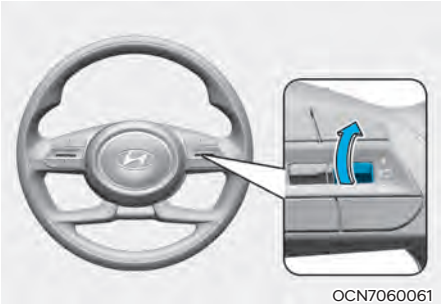
  Distance 4 - approximately 53 m (172 ft.)

  Distance 3 - approximately 40 m (130 ft.)

  Distance 2 - approximately 30 m (106 ft.)

  Distance 1 - approximately 25 m (82 ft.)
- **The distance is set to the last set distance when the engine is restarted, or when the system was temporarily canceled.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 64 2020-09-24 8:00:12

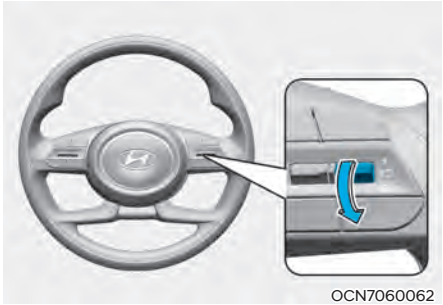

OCN7060061

To increase speed

- Push the + switch up and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the + switch up and hold it while monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The cruising speed will increase by 10 km/h or 5 mph each time the switch is operated in this manner. Release the switch when the desired speed is shown, and the vehicle will accelerate to that speed. You can set the speed to 180 km/h (110 mph).

WARNING

Check the driving condition before using the + switch. Driving speed may sharply increase when you push up and hold the + switch.

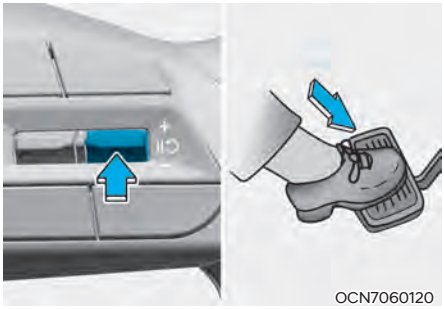

OCN7060062

To decrease speed

- Push the - switch down and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the - switch down and hold it while monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The cruising speed will decrease by 10 km/h or 5 mph each time the switch is operated in this manner.

  Release the switch at the speed you want to maintain. You can set the speed to 30 km/h (20 mph).

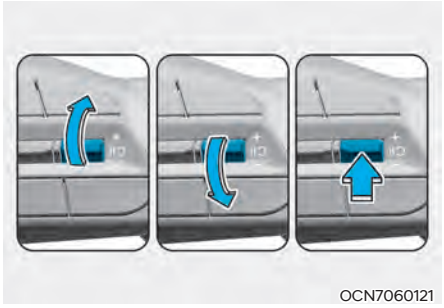
007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 65 2020-09-24 8:00:12



[A] : Type A, [B] : Type B

To temporarily cancel the system

Press the II↺ switch or depress the brake pedal to temporarily cancel Smart Cruise Control.



[A] : Type A, [B] : Type B

To resume the system

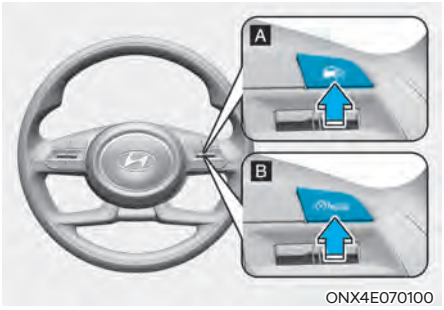
To resume Smart Cruise Control after the system was canceled, push the +, - or II↺ switch.

If you push the + switch up or - switch down, vehicle speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.

If you push the II↺ switch, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.

WARNING

Check the driving condition before using the II↺ switch. Driving speed may sharply increase or decrease when you press the II↺ switch.



[A] : Type A, [B] : Type B

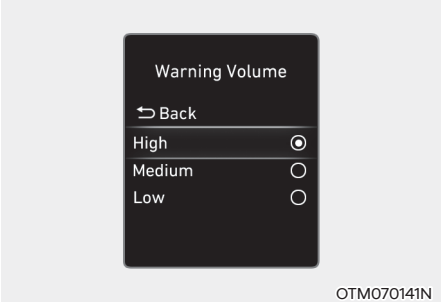
To turn off the system

Press the Driving Assist button to turn Smart Cruise Control system off.

Information

If your vehicle is equipped with Manual Speed Limit Assist, press and hold the Driving Assist button to turn off Smart Cruise Control. However, Manual Speed Limit Assist will turn on.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 66 2020-09-24 8:00:12



OTM070141N

Warning Volume

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu to change the Warning Volume 'High', 'Medium' or 'Low' for Smart Cruise Control.

If you change the Warning Volume, the Warning Volume of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

Information

If the engine is restarted, Warning Volume will maintain the last setting.

System operation

Operating conditions

Smart Cruise Control will operate when the following conditions are satisfied.

Basic function

- The gear is in D (Drive)
- The driver's door is closed
- EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is not applied
- Your vehicle speed is within the operating speed range
  - 10~180 km/h (5~110 mph): when there is no vehicle in front
  - 0~180 km/h (0~110 mph): when there is a vehicle in front
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control), TCS (Traction Control System) or ABS is on
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control), TCS (Traction Control System) or ABS is not controlling the vehicle
- Engine rpm is not in the red zone
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist brake control is not operating
- Remote Smart Parking Assist brake control is not operating

Information

At a stop, if there is no vehicle in front of your vehicle, the system will turn on when the brake pedal is depressed.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 67 2020-09-24 8:00:12

Overtaking Acceleration Assist

Overtaking Acceleration Assist will operate when the turn signal indicator is turned on to the left (left-hand drive) or turned on to the right (right-hand drive) while Smart Cruise Control is operating, and the following conditions are satisfied:

- Your vehicle speed is above 60 km/h (40 mph)
- The hazard warning flasher is off
- A vehicle is detected in front of your vehicle
- Deceleration is not needed to maintain distance with the vehicle in front

WARNING

- **When the turn signal indicator is turned on to the left (left-hand drive) or turned on to the right (right-hand drive) while there is a vehicle ahead, the vehicle may accelerate temporarily. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **Regardless of your countries driving direction, Overtaking Acceleration Assist will operate when the conditions are satisfied. When using the function in countries with different driving direction, always check the road conditions at all times.**

System display and control

Basic function

You can see the status of the Smart Cruise Control operation in the Driving Assist mode on the cluster. Refer to “LCD Display Modes” section in chapter 4.

Smart Cruise Control will be displayed as below depending on the status of the system.



OTM070156



ONX4070033

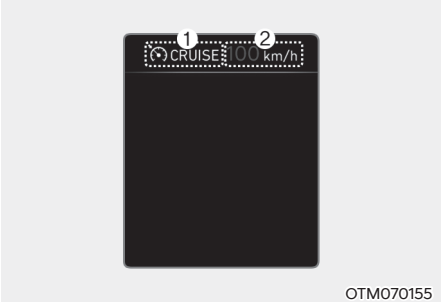
- When operating

(1) Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level are displayed.

(2) Set speed is displayed.

(3) Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the target vehicle distance are displayed.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 68 2020-09-24 8:00:13



OTM070155

- When temporarily canceled

(1) CRUISE indicator is displayed.

(2) The previous set speed is shaded.

Information

- **The distance of the front vehicle on the cluster is displayed according to the actual distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.**
- **The target distance may vary according to the vehicle speed and the set distance level. If vehicle speed is low, even though the vehicle distance have changed, the change of the target vehicle distance may be small.**

To temporarily accelerate



OTM070159



ONX4070034

If you want to speed up temporarily when Smart Cruise Control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. While the speed is increasing, the set speed, distance level and target distance will blink on the cluster.

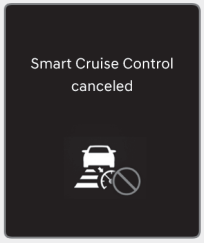
WARNING

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed and distance is not controlled automatically even if there is a vehicle in front of you.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 69 2020-09-24 8:00:15

System temporarily canceled

■ Type A



OTM070113N

■ Type B



OTM070113L

Smart Cruise Control will be temporarily canceled automatically when:

- The vehicle speed is above 190 km/h (120 mph)
- The vehicle is stopped for a certain period of time
- The accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for a certain period of time
- The conditions for the Smart Cruise Control to operate is not satisfied

If the system is temporarily canceled automatically, the ‘Smart Cruise Control canceled’ (or ‘SCC (Smart Cruise Control) cancelled’) warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver.

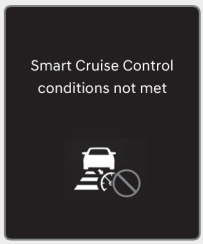
If the Smart Cruise Control is temporarily canceled while the vehicle is at a standstill with the system operating, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) maybe applied.

WARNING

When the system is temporarily canceled, distance with the front vehicle will not be maintained. Always have your eyes on the road while driving, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

System conditions not satisfied

■ Type A



OTM070112N

■ Type B



OTM070112L

If the Driving Assist button, + switch, - switch or ⏯ switch is pushed when the system’s operating conditions are not satisfied, the ‘Smart Cruise Control conditions not met’ (or SCC (Smart Cruise Ctrl. conditions not met’) will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 70 2020-09-24 8:00:15

In traffic situation



OTM070114L

In traffic, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle will start as well. In addition, after the vehicle has stopped and a certain time have passed, the 'Use switch or pedal to accelerate' message will appear on the cluster. Depress the accelerator pedal or push the + switch, - switch or ⏸↺ switch to start driving.

WARNING

While the message is displayed on the cluster, if there is no vehicle in front or the vehicle is far away from you, and the + switch, – switch or ⏸↺ switch is pushed, Smart Cruise Control will automatically cancel and EPB will be applied. However, if the accelerator pedal is depressed, EPB will not be applied even though the system is canceled. Always pay attention to the road condition ahead.

Warning road conditions ahead



ONX4E070035

In the following situation, the 'Watch for surrounding vehicles' warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver of road conditions ahead.

- The vehicle in front disappears when Smart Cruise Control is maintaining the distance with the vehicle ahead while driving below a certain speed.
- While the 'Use switch or pedal to accelerate' message is displayed on the cluster, if there is no vehicle in front or the vehicle is far away from you, and the + switch, – switch or ⏸↺ switch is pushed.

WARNING

Always pay attention to vehicles or objects that may suddenly appear in front of you, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 71 2020-09-24 8:00:15

Collision Warning



ONX4E070001

While Smart Cruise Control is operating, when the collision risk with the vehicle ahead is high, the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver. Always have your eyes on the road while driving, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

WARNING

In the following situations, Smart Cruise Control may not warn the driver of a collision.

- **The distance from the front vehicle is near, or the vehicle speed of the front vehicle is faster or similar with your vehicle**
- **The speed of the front vehicle is very slow or is at a standstill**
- **The accelerator pedal is depressed right after Smart Cruise Control is turned on**

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Smart Cruise Control:

- **Smart Cruise Control does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.**
- **Smart Cruise Control may not recognize unexpected and sudden situations or complex driving situations, so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.**
- **Keep Smart Cruise Control off when the system is not in use to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Do not open the door or leave the vehicle when Smart Cruise Control is operating, even if the vehicle is stopped.**
- **Always be aware of the selected speed and vehicle distance.**
- **Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the vehicle distance is too close during high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.**
- **When maintaining distance with the vehicle ahead, if the front vehicle disappears, the system may suddenly accelerate to the set speed. Always be aware of unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Vehicle speed may decrease on an upward slope and increase on a downward slope.**
- **Always be aware of situations such as when a vehicle cuts in suddenly.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 72 2020-09-24 8:00:16

- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, we recommend that Smart Cruise Control is turned off due to safety reasons.
- Turn off Smart Cruise Control when your vehicle is being towed.
- Smart Cruise Control may not operate normally if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- Smart Cruise Control may not detect an obstacle in front and lead to a collision. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
- Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane change may cause a delay in the system's reaction or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
- Always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely, even though a warning message does not appear or an audible warning does not sound.
- If any other system's warning message is displayed or warning sound is generated, Smart Cruise Control warning message may not be displayed and warning sound may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any traffic violation or accidents caused by the driver.
- Always set the vehicle speed to the speed limit in your country.

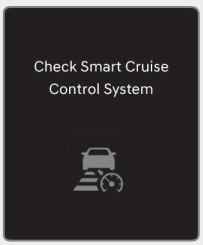
Information

- Smart Cruise Control may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started or the front view camera or front radar is initialized.
- You may hear a sound when the brake is controlled by Smart Cruise Control.

System malfunction and limitations

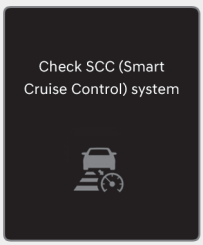
System malfunction

■ Type A



OTM070116N

■ Type B



OTM070116L

When Smart Cruise Control is not working properly, the 'Check Smart Cruise Control system' (or 'Check SCC (Smart Cruise Control) system') warning message will appear, and the ⚠ warning light will illuminate on the cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 73 2020-09-24 8:00:16

System disabled

■ Type A



OTM070115N

■ Type B



OTM070115L

When the front radar cover or sensor is covered with snow, rain, or foreign material, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Smart Cruise Control.

If this occurs the 'Smart Cruise Control disabled. Radar blocked' (or 'SCC (Smart Cruise Control) disabled. Radar blocked') warning message will appear for a certain period of time on the cluster.

The system will operate normally when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Smart Cruise Control may not properly operate.**
- **Smart Cruise Control may not properly operate in an area (e.g. open terrain), where there is nothing to detect after turning ON the engine.**

Limitations of the system

Smart Cruise Control may not operate normally, or the system may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

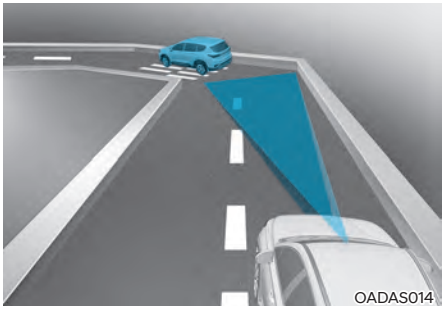
- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are contaminated or damaged
- Washer fluid is continuously sprayed, or the wiper is on
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windshield, damaged glass, or stuck of foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windshield
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Street light or light from an oncoming vehicle is reflected on the wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low
- An object is placed on the dashboard
- The surrounding is very bright
- The surrounding is very dark, such as in a tunnel, etc.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The brightness outside is low, and the headlamps are not on or are not bright
- Driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog
- Driving through steam, smoke or shadow

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 74 2020-09-24 8:00:17

- Only part of the vehicle is detected
- The vehicle in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located unusually, etc.
- The brightness outside is low, and the tail lamps are not on or are not bright
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or does not look normal (i.e. tilted, overturned, etc.)
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high
- A vehicle suddenly cuts in front
- Your vehicle is being towed
- Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge
- Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- A material is near that reflects very well on the front radar, such as a guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The bumper around the front radar is impacted, damaged or the front radar is out of position
- The temperature around the front radar is high or low
- Driving in large areas where there are few vehicles or structures (i.e. desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- The vehicle in front is made of material that does not reflect on the front radar
- Driving near a highway (or motorway) interchange or tollgate
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- Driving on a curved road
- The vehicle in front is detected late
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by a obstacle
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle in front is bent out of shape
- The front vehicle's speed is fast or slow
- With a vehicle in front, your vehicle changes lane at low speed
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- Unstable driving
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- Driving in a parking lot
- Driving through a construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations while driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tire pressure, etc.
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise

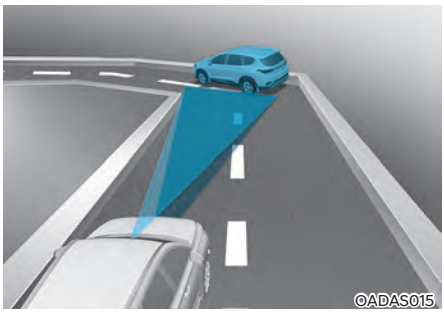
007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 75 2020-09-24 8:00:17

- Driving on a curve



On curves, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a vehicle in the same lane, and may accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

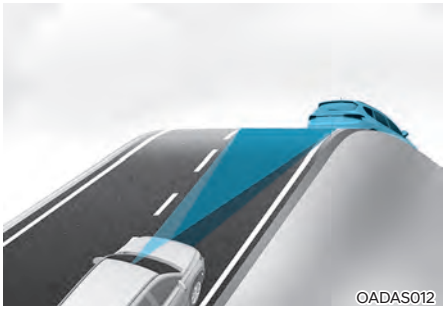
Select the appropriate set speed on curves and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.



Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane.

Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the Smart Cruise Control.

- Driving on a slope

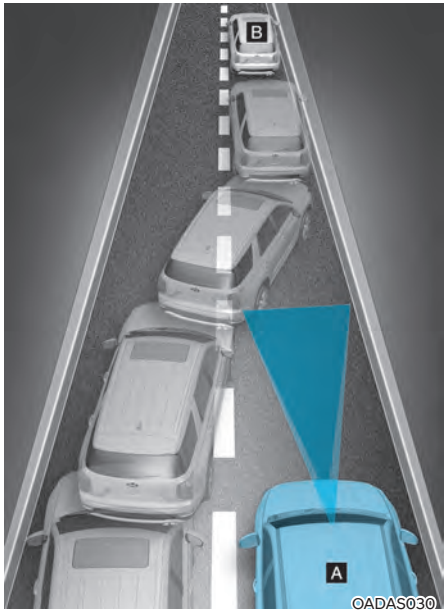


During uphill or downhill driving, the Smart Cruise Control may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed will rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 76 2020-09-24 8:00:17

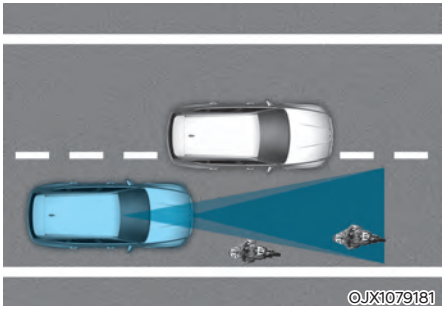
- Changing lanes



[A] : Your vehicle, [B] : Lane changing vehicle

When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

- Detecting vehicle

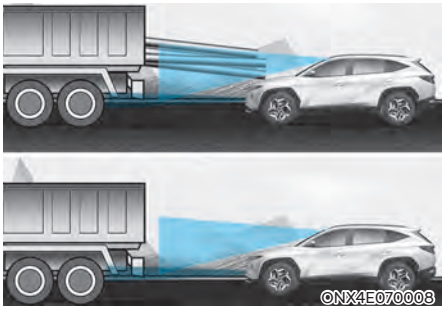


In the following cases, some vehicles in your lane cannot be detected by the sensor:

- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Oncoming vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile, such as trailers
- Narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Special vehicles
- Animals and pedestrians

Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

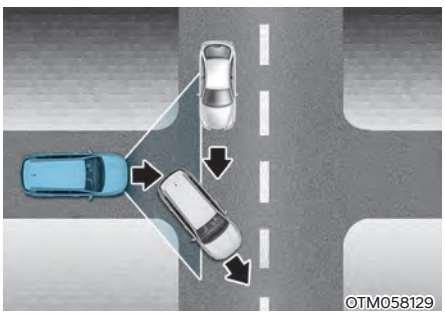
007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 77 2020-09-24 8:00:17



In the following cases, the vehicle in front cannot be detected by the sensor:

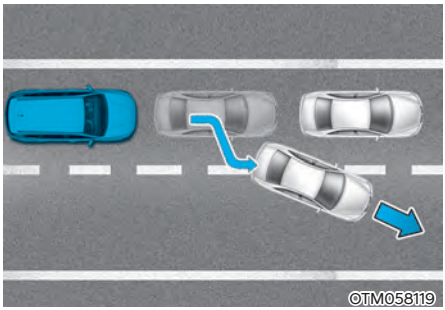
- Vehicles with higher ground clearance or vehicles carrying loads that stick out of the back of the vehicle
- Vehicles that has the front lifted due to heavy loads
- You are steering your vehicle
- Driving on narrow or sharply curved roads

Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.



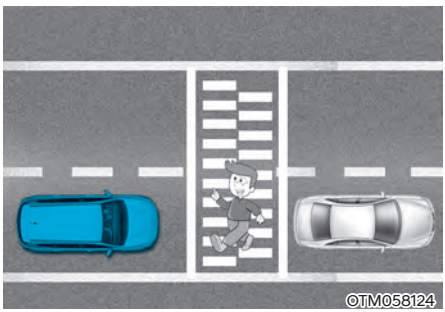
- When a vehicle ahead disappears at an intersection, your vehicle may accelerate.

  Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.



- When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect the new vehicle that is now in front of you.

  Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.



- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 78 2020-09-24 8:00:17

NAVIGATION-BASED SMART CRUISE CONTROL (NSCC) (IF EQUIPPED)

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control will help automatically adjust vehicle speed when driving on highways (or motorways) by using road information from the navigation system while Smart Cruise Control is operating.

Information

- **Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is available only on controlled access road of certain highways.**
  - ✳ **Controlled access road indicates roads with limited entrances and exits that allow uninterrupted high speed traffic flow. Only passenger cars and motorcycles are allowed on controlled access roads.**
- **Additional highways may be expanded by future navigation updates.**

Information

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operates on main roads of highways (or motorways), and does not operate on interchanges or junctions.

Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown

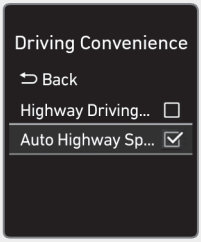
If vehicle speed is high, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function will temporarily decelerate your vehicle or limit acceleration to help you drive safely on a curve based on the curve information from the navigation.

Highway Set Speed Auto Change

Highway Set Speed Auto Change function automatically changes Smart Cruise Control set speed based on the speed limit information from the navigation.

System settings

Setting functions for the system



OTM070192N

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Driving Convenience → Auto Highway Speed Control (or Auto motorway speed control)' from the Settings menu to turn on Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control and deselect to turn off the system.

Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Driving Convenience → Highway Auto Curve Slowdown (or Curve slowdown (motorway))' from the Settings menu to turn on Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown and deselect to turn off the function.

Information

When there is a problem with Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control, the system cannot be set from the Settings menu.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 79 2020-09-24 8:00:18

System operation

Operating conditions

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is ready to operate if all of the following conditions are satisfied:

- Smart Cruise Control is operating
- Driving on main roads of highways (or motorways)

Information

For more details on how to operate Smart Cruise Control, refer to "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" section in chapter 7.

System display and control

When Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operates, it will be displayed on the cluster as follows:

- System standby



OTM070160

If the operating conditions are satisfied, the white AUTO indicator will illuminate.

- System operating



OTM070161



OTM070209L

If temporary deceleration is required in the standby state and Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating, the green AUTO symbol will illuminate on the cluster.

If the Highway Set Speed Auto Change function operates, the green AUTO symbol and set speed will illuminate on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound.

WARNING



OTM070198L

'Drive carefully' warning message will appear in the following circumstances:

- **Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is not able to slow down your vehicle to a safe speed**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 80 2020-09-24 8:00:18

Information

Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown and Highway Set Speed Auto Change function uses the same AUTO symbol.

Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown

- Depending on the curve ahead on the highway (or motorway), the vehicle will decelerate, and after passing the curve, the vehicle will accelerate to Smart Cruise Control set speed.
- Vehicle deceleration time may differ depending on the vehicle speed and the degree of the curve on the road. The higher the driving speed, deceleration will start faster.

Highway Set Speed Auto Change

- Highway Set Speed Auto Change function will operate when Smart Cruise Control set speed and the highway (or motorway) speed limit is matched.
- While Highway Set Speed Auto Change function is operating, when the highway (or motorway) speed limit changes, Smart Cruise Control set speed automatically changes to the changed speed limit.
- If Smart Cruise Control set speed is adjusted different from the speed limit, Highway Set Speed Auto Change function will be in the standby state.
- If Highway Set Speed Auto Change function has changed to the standby state by driving on a road other than the highway (or motorway) main road, Highway Set Speed Auto Change function will operate again when you drive on the main road again without setting the set speed.
- If Highway Set Speed Auto Change function has changed to the standby state by depressing the brake pedal or pressing the switch on the steering wheel, press the switch to restart the function.
- Highway Set Speed Auto Change function does not operate on highway interchanges or junctions.

Information

- **Highway Set Speed Auto Change function only operates based on the speed limits of the highway (or motorway), it does not work with speed cameras.**
- **When Highway Set Speed Auto Change function is operating, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates when the highway (or motorway) speed limit changes.**
- **The maximum set speed for Highway Set Speed Auto Change function is 140 km/h (86 mph).**
- **If the speed limit of a new road is not updated in the navigation, Highway Set Speed Auto Change function may not operate properly.**
- **If the speed unit is set to a unit other than the speed unit used in your country, Highway Set Speed Auto Change function may not operate properly.**

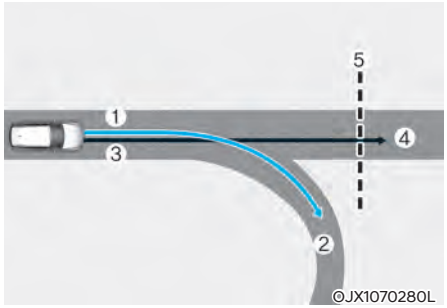
007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 81 2020-09-24 8:00:18

Limitations of the system

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate normally under the following circumstances:

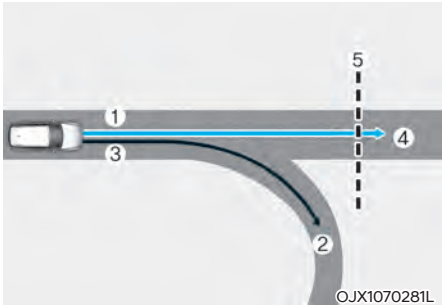
- The navigation is not working properly
- Speed limit and road information in the navigation is not updated
- The map information and the actual road is different because of real-time GPS data or map information error
- The navigation searches for a route while driving
- GPS signals are blocked in areas such as a tunnel
- The navigation is updated while driving
- Map information is not transmitted due to infotainment system's abnormal operation
- A road that divides into two or more roads and joins again
- The driver goes off course the route set in the navigation
- The route to the destination is changed or canceled by resetting the navigation
- The vehicle enters a service station or rest area
- The speed limit of some sections changes according to the road situations
- Android Auto or Car Play is operating
- The navigation cannot detect the current vehicle position (ex: elevated roads including overpass adjacent to general roads or nearby roads exist in a parallel way)
- The navigation is being updated while driving
- The navigation is being restarted while driving
- There is bad weather, such as heavy rain, heavy snow, etc.
- Driving on a road under construction
- Driving on a road that is controlled
- Driving on a road that is sharply curved
- Driving on roads with intersections, roundabouts, straight entrances and exits, etc.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 82 2020-09-24 8:00:18



[1] : Set route, [2] : Branch line, [3] : Driving route, [4] : Main road, [5] : Curved road section

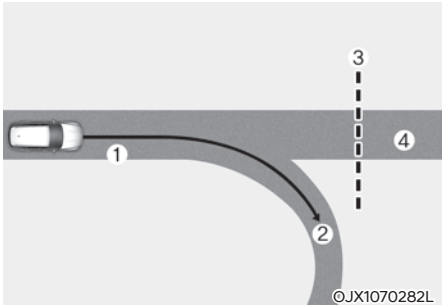
- When there is a difference between the navigation set route (branch line) and the driving route (main road), Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function may not operate until the driving route is recognized as the main road.
- When the vehicle's driving route is recognized as the main road by maintaining the main road instead of the navigation set route, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function will operate. Depending on the distance to the curve and the current vehicle speed, vehicle deceleration may not be sufficient or may decelerate rapidly.



[1] : Set route, [2] : Branch line, [3] : Driving route, [4] : Main road, [5] : Curved road section

- When there is a difference between the navigation route (main road) and the driving route (branch line), Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function will operate based on the curve information on the main road.
- When it is judged that you are driving out of the route by entering the highway interchange or junction, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function will not operate.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 83 2020-09-24 8:00:18



[1] : Driving route, [2] : Branch line,
[3] : Curved road section, [4] : Main road

- If there is no destination set on the navigation, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function will operate based on the curve information on the main road.
- Even if you depart from the main road, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function may temporarily operate due to navigation information of the highway curve section.

WARNING

- **Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a convenience function. Always have your eyes on the road, and it is the responsibility of the driver to avoid violating traffic laws.**
- **The navigation's speed limit information may differ from the actual speed limit information on the road. It is the driver's responsibility to check the speed limit on the actual driving road or lane.**
- **Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control will automatically be cancelled when you leave the highway (or motorway) main road. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.**
- **Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate due to the existence of leading vehicles and the driving conditions of the vehicle. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.**
- **When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, we recommend that Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is turned off due to safety reasons.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 84 2020-09-24 8:00:18

- After you pass through a tollgate on a highway (or motorway), Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control will operate based on the first lane. If you enter one of the other lanes, the system may not operate properly.
- The vehicle will accelerate if the driver depresses the accelerator pedal while Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating, and the system will not decelerate the vehicle.
- If the driver accelerates and releases the accelerator pedal while Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating, the vehicle may not decelerate sufficiently or may rapidly decelerate to a safe speed.
- If the curve is too large or too small, Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate.

Information

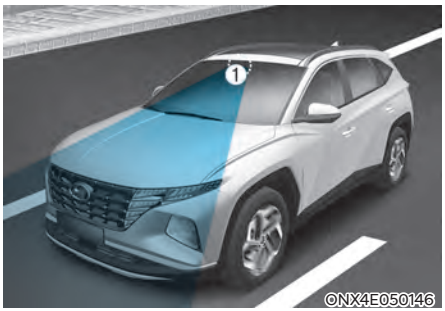
- The time gap could occur between the navigation's guidance and when Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation starts and ends.
- The speed information on the cluster and navigation may differ.
- Even if you are driving at a speed lower than Smart Cruise Control set speed, acceleration may be limited by the curve sections ahead.
- If Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating while leaving the main road to enter an interchange, junction, rest area, etc., the system may operate for a certain period of time.
- Deceleration by Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may feel it is not sufficient due to road conditions such as uneven road surfaces, narrow lanes, etc.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 85 2020-09-24 8:00:18

LANE FOLLOWING ASSIST (LFA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Lane Following Assist is designed to help detect lane markings and/or vehicles on the road, and assists the driver's steering to help center the vehicle in the lane.

Detecting sensor



[1] : Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to help detect lane markings and vehicles in front.

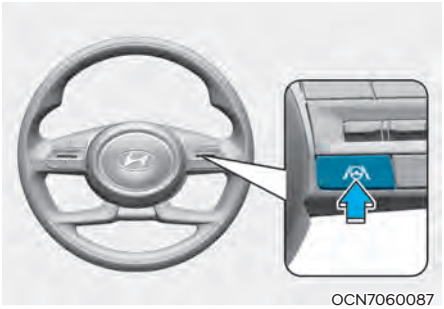
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

System settings

Setting functions for the system



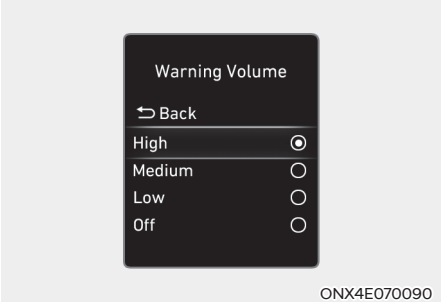
Turning the system ON/OFF

With the engine on, shortly press the Lane Driving Assist button located on the steering wheel to turn on Lane Following Assist. The white or green indicator light will illuminate on the cluster.

Press the button again to turn off the system.

If the engine is restarted, Lane Following Assist will maintain the last setting.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 86 2020-09-24 8:00:19



ONX4E070090

Warning Volume

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu to change the Warning Volume to 'High', 'Medium', 'Low' or 'Off' for Hands-off warning.

However, even if 'Off' is selected, the Hands-off Warning Volume will not turn off but the volume will sound as 'Low'.

If you change the Warning Volume, the Warning Volume of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

System operation

Warning and control



OTM070162

Lane Following Assist

If the vehicle ahead and/or both lane markings are detected and your vehicle speed is below 180 km/h (110 mph), the green indicator light will illuminate on the cluster, and the system will help center the vehicle in the lane by assisting the steering wheel.

CAUTION

When the steering wheel is not assisted, the green indicator light will blink and change to white.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 87 2020-09-24 8:00:19

■ Type A



ONX4E070091

■ Type B



ONX4E070092

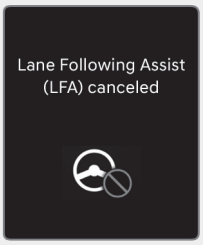
Hands-off warning

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the 'Place hands on the steering wheel' (or 'Keep hands on the steering wheel') warning message will appear and an audible warning will sound in stages.

First stage : Warning message

Second stage : Warning message (red steering wheel) and audible warning

■ Type A



OTM070117N

■ Type B



OTM070117L

If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the 'Lane Following Assist (LFA) canceled' (or 'LFA (Lane Following Assist) cancelled') warning message will appear and Lane Following Assist will be automatically canceled.

WARNING

- **Lane Following Assist does not operate at all times. It is the responsibility of the driver to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.**
- **The hands–off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel while driving.**
- **If the steering wheel is held very lightly the hands–off warning message may appear because the system may not recognize that the driver has their hands on the steering wheel.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 88 2020-09-24 8:00:19

Information

- **You may change settings from the instrument cluster (User Settings) or infotainment system (Vehicle Settings), whichever option that is provided with your vehicle. For more details, see "User Settings" section in chapter 4, or "Vehicle Settings" section in supplied Infotainment Manual.**
- **When both lane markings are detected, the lane lines on the cluster will change from grey to white.**

■ Lane undetected



ONX4070013

■ Lane detected



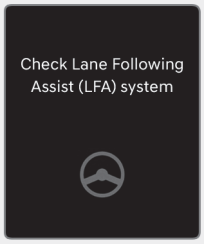
ONX4070012

- If lane markings are not detected, steering wheel control by Lane Following Assist can be limited depending on whether a vehicle is in front or the driving conditions of the vehicle.
- Even though the steering is assisted by Lane Following Assist, the driver may control the steering wheel.
- The steering wheel may feel heavier or lighter when the steering wheel is assisted by Lane Following Assist than when it is not.

System malfunction and limitations

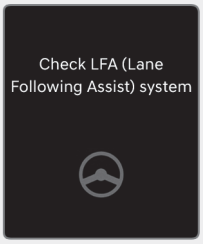
System malfunction

■ Type A



OTM070118N

■ Type B



OTM070118L

When Lane Following Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Lane Following Assist (LFA) system' (or 'Check LFA (Lane Following Assist) system') warning message will appear on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Limitations of the system

For more details on system limitations, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in chapter 7.

WARNING

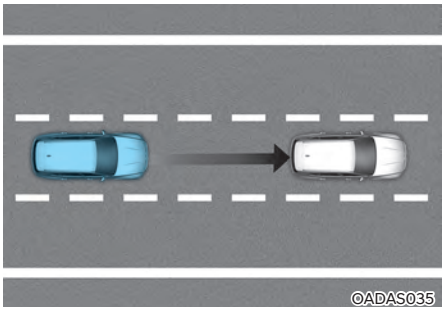
For more details on the system precautions, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in chapter 7.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 89 2020-09-24 8:00:21

HIGHWAY DRIVING ASSIST (HDA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Basic function

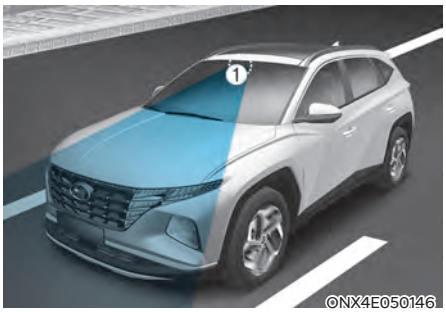
Highway Driving Assist is designed to help detect vehicles and lanes ahead, and help maintain distance from the vehicle ahead, maintain the set speed, and help center the vehicle in the lane while driving on the highway (or motorway).



Information

- **The Highway Driving Assist is available only on controlled access road of certain highways.**
  - ✳ **Controlled access road indicates roads with limited entrances and exits that allow uninterrupted high speed traffic flow. Only passenger cars and motorcycles are allowed on controlled access roads.**
- **Additional highways may be expanded by future navigation updates.**

Detecting sensor





[1] : Front view camera,
[2] : Front radar

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

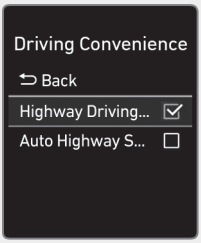
CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the detecting sensors, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in chapter 7.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 90 2020-09-24 8:00:22

System settings

Setting functions for the system



OTM070193N

Highway Driving Assist

With the engine on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Driving Convenience' from the Settings menu to set whether or not to use the following function(s).

- If 'Highway Driving Assist' (or 'HDA (Motorway Driving Assist)') is selected, it helps maintain distance from the vehicle ahead, maintain the set speed, and helps center the vehicle in the lane.

Information

- **If there is a problem with the function(s), the settings cannot be changed. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **If the engine is restarted, the function(s) will maintain the last setting.**

WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.



OTM070141N

Warning Volume

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu to change the Warning Volume to 'High', 'Medium' or 'Low' for Hands-off warning.

If you change the Warning Volume, the Warning Volume of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 91 2020-09-24 8:00:22

System operation

Basic function

System display and control

You can see the status of the Highway Driving Assist operation in the Driving Assist mode on the cluster. Refer to “LCD Display Modes” section in chapter 4.

Highway Driving Assist will be displayed as below depending on the status of the system.

■ Operating state



OTM070164



ONX4070036

■ Standby state



OTM070165

(1) Highway Driving Assist indicator, whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level are displayed.

✳ Highway Driving Assist indicator

- Green HDA : Operating state
- White HDA : Standby state

(2) Set speed is displayed.

(3) Lane Following Assist indicator displayed.

(4) Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected vehicle distance are displayed.

(5) Whether the lane is detected or not is displayed.

For more details on the display refer to “Smart Cruise Control (SCC)” and “Lane Following Assist (LFA)” sections in chapter 7.

System operating

Highway Driving Assist will operate when entering or driving on the main road of highways (or motorways), and satisfying all the following conditions:

- Lane Following Assist is operating
- Smart Cruise Control is operating

i Information

- **While driving on the highway (or motorway), if Smart Cruise Control starts operating, Highway Driving Assist will operate.**
- **When entering the main roads of highways (or motorways), Highway Driving Assist will not turn on if the Lane Following Assist is turned off even when Smart Cruise Control is operating.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 92 2020-09-24 8:00:23

- Restarting after stopping



OTM070114L

When Highway Driving Assist is operating, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving within 30 seconds after the stop, your vehicle will start as well. In addition, after the vehicle has stopped and 30 seconds have passed, the 'Use switch or pedal to accelerate' message will appear on the cluster. Depress the accelerator pedal or push the + switch, - switch or RES switch to start driving.

- Hands-off warning

■ Type A



ONX4E070091

■ Type B



ONX4E070092

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the 'Place hands on the steering wheel' (or 'Keep hands on the steering wheel') warning message will appear and an audible warning will sound in stages.

First stage : Warning message
Second stage : Warning message (red steering wheel) and audible warning

■ Type A



OTM070195N

■ Type B



OTM070195L

If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the 'Highway Driving Assist (HDA) canceled' (or 'HDA (Highway Driving Assist) cancelled') warning message will appear and Highway Driving Assist and Lane Change Assist will be automatically canceled.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 93 2020-09-24 8:00:24

System standby

When Smart Cruise Control is temporarily canceled while Highway Driving Assist is operating, Highway Driving Assist will be in the standby state. At this time, Lane Following Assist will operate normally.

System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction

■ Type A



OTM070120N

■ Type B



OTM070120L

When Highway Driving Assist or Highway Lane Change function is not working properly, the 'Check Highway Driving Assist (HDA) system' (or 'Check HDA (Motorway Driving Assist) system') warning message will appear, and the ⚠ warning light will illuminate on the cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for controlling the vehicle for safe driving.**
- **Always have your hands on the steering wheel while driving.**
- **Highway Driving Assist is a supplemental system that assists the driver in driving the vehicle and is not a complete autonomous driving system. Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.**
- **Always have your eyes on the road, and it is the responsibility of the driver to avoid violating traffic laws. The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any traffic violation or accidents caused by the driver.**
- **Highway Driving Assist may not be able to recognize all traffic situations. The system may not detect possible collisions due to limitations of the system. Always be aware of the limitations of the system. Obstacles such as vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, unspecified objects, structures, etc. that may collide with the vehicle may not be detected.**
- **Highway Driving Assist will turn off automatically under the following situations:**
  - **Driving on roads that the system does not operate, such as a rest area, intersection, junction, etc.**
  - **The navigation does not operate properly such as when the navigation is being updated or restarted**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 94 2020-09-24 8:00:24

- **Highway Driving Assist may inadvertently operate or turn off depending on road conditions (navigation information) and surroundings.**
- **Lane Following Assist may be temporarily disabled when the front view camera cannot detect lanes properly or the hands-off warning is on.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Highway Driving Assist if the surrounding is noisy.**
- **If the vehicle is driven at high speed above a certain speed at a curve, your vehicle may drive to one side or may depart from the driving lane.**
- **When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, we recommend that Highway Driving Assist is turned off due to safety reasons.**
- **The hands–off warning message may appear early or late depending on how the steering wheel is held or road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel while driving.**
- **For your safety, please read the owner's manual before using the Highway Driving Assist.**
- **Highway Driving Assist will not operate when the engine is started, or when the detecting sensors or navigation is being initialized.**

Limitations of the system

Highway Driving Assist may not operate normally, or may not operate under the following circumstances:

- The map information and the actual road is different because the navigation is not updated
- The map information and the actual road is different because of real-time GPS data or map information error
- The infotainment system is overloaded by simultaneously performing functions such as route search, video playback, voice recognition, etc.
- GPS signals are blocked in areas such as a tunnel
- The driver goes off course or the route to the destination is changed or canceled by resetting the navigation
- The vehicle enters a service station or rest area
- Android Auto or Car Play is operating
- The navigation cannot detect the current vehicle position (ex: elevated roads including overpass adjacent to general roads or nearby roads exist in a parallel way)

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, front radar, front corner radar and rear corner radar, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in chapter 7.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 95 2020-09-24 8:00:24

REAR VIEW MONITOR (RVM) (IF EQUIPPED)





Rear View Monitor will show the area behind the vehicle to assist you when parking or backing up.

Detecting sensor



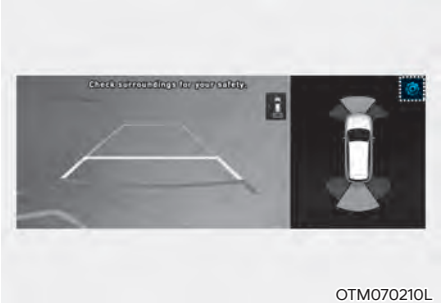
[1] : Rear view camera

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 96 2020-09-24 8:00:24

System settings

Camera settings

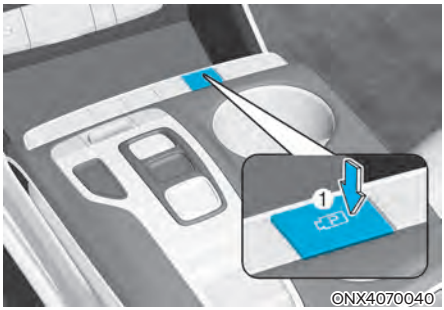


OTM070210L

- You can change Rear View Monitor ‘Display Contents’ or ‘Display Settings’ by touching the setup icon (⚙) on the screen while Rear View Monitor is operating, or selecting ‘Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Camera Settings’ from the Settings menu while the engine is on.
- In the Display Contents, you can change settings for ‘Rear View’, and in the Display Settings, you can change the screen’s ‘Brightness’ and ‘Contrast’.

System operation

Operating button



ONX4070040

Parking/View button

Press the Parking/View button (1) to turn on Rear View Monitor.

Press the button again to turn off the system.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 97 2020-09-24 8:00:24

Rear view

Operating conditions

- Shift the gear to R (Reverse), the image will appear on the screen.
- Press the Parking/View button (1) while the gear is in P (Park), the image will appear on the screen.

Off conditions

- The rear view cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse).
- Press the Parking/View button (1) again while the gear is in P (Park) with the rear view on the screen, the rear view will turn off.
- Shift the gear from R (Reverse) to P (Park), the rear view will turn off.

Rear View Hold Function

The rear view will maintain showing on the screen to help you when parking.

Operating conditions

Shift the gear from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive), the rear view will appear on the screen.

Off conditions

- When vehicle speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph), the rear view will turn off.
- Shift the gear to P (Park), the rear view will turn off.

Rear View while driving



The driver is able to check the rear view on the screen while driving, it is to assist with safe driving.

Operating conditions

Press the Parking/View button (1) while the gear is in D (Drive) or N (Neutral), the driving rear view will appear on the screen.

Off conditions

- Press the Parking/View button (1) again, the driving rear view will turn off.
- Press one of the infotainment system button (2), the driving rear view will turn off.
- Shift the gear to P (Park), the driving rear view will turn off.

When operating

- If the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), while Driving rear view is displayed on the screen, the screen will change to rear view with parking guidance.
- When Driving rear view is displayed on the screen, an icon ( ) will appear on the upper right side of the screen indicating that the rear view is being displayed.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 98 2020-09-24 8:00:24

Rear top view



When you touch the icon, the top view is displayed on the screen and shows the distance from the vehicle in the back of your vehicle while parking.

System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction

When Rear View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not display normally, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Limitations of the system

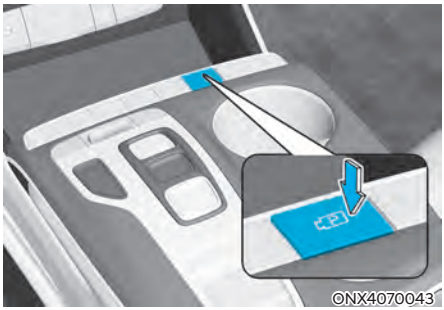
When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or when the vehicle is parked in an indoor parking lot, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.

WARNING

- **The rear view camera does not cover the complete area behind the vehicle. The driver should always check the rear area directly through the inside and outside rearview mirror before parking or backing up.**
- **The image shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.**
- **Always keep the rear view camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Rear View Monitor may not operate normally.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 99 2020-09-24 8:00:25

SURROUND VIEW MONITOR (SVM) (IF EQUIPPED)





Surround View Monitor will assist in parking using the cameras installed on the vehicle and displays images around the vehicle through the infotainment system screen.

- Parking Assist View function helps the driver to see the surroundings of the vehicle in a parking situation in various view modes.
- Rear View while driving function helps the driver to check the rear view on the screen while driving.

Detecting sensor





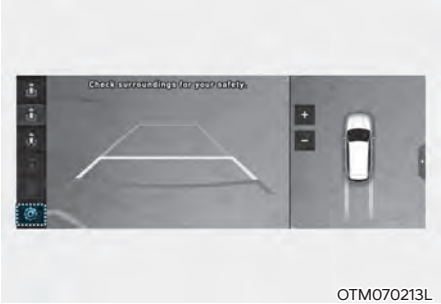
[1] : SVM-front view camera,
[2],[3] : SVM-side view camera
(under the outside rearview mirror),
[4] : SVM-rear view camera

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 100 2020-09-24 8:00:25

System settings

Camera settings



OTM070213L

- You can change Surround View Monitor ‘Display Contents’ or ‘Display Settings’ by touching the setup icon (⚙) on the screen while Surround View Monitor is operating, or selecting ‘Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Camera Settings’ from the Settings menu while the engine is on.
- In the Display Contents, you can change settings for ‘Top View Parking Guidance’, ‘Rear View Parking Guidance’ and ‘Parking Distance Warning’.
- In the Display Settings, you can change the screen’s ‘Brightness’ and ‘Contrast’.

Top View Parking Guidance

■ Front top view



ONX4070048

■ Rear top view

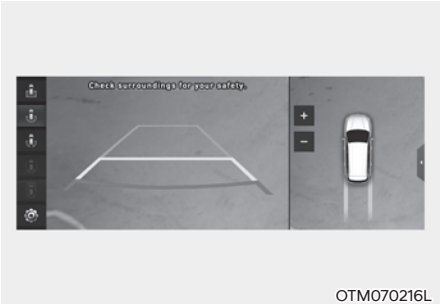


ONX4070049

- When the ‘Top View Parking Guidance’ is selected, parking guidance is displayed on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.
- You may see the front top view or the rear top view when using Top View Parking Guidance.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 101 2020-09-24 8:00:25

Rear View Parking Guidance



OTM070216L

- When the 'Rear View Parking Guidance' is selected, parking guidance is displayed in the rear view.
- The horizontal guideline of the Rear View Parking Guidance shows the distance of 0.5 m (1.6 ft.), 1 m (3.3 ft.) and 2.3 m (7.6 ft.) from the vehicle.

Parking Distance Warning



OTM070217L

- When the 'Parking Distance Warning' is selected, parking distance warning is displayed on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.
- The image will be displayed only when Parking Distance Warning is warning the driver.

Surround View Monitor Auto On

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Surround View Monitor Auto On' from the Settings menu to use the function.

To use this function, refer to "System Operation".

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 102 2020-09-24 8:00:25

System operation

Operating button





- Press the Parking/View button (1) to turn on Surround View Monitor.

  Press the button again to turn off the system.
- Other view modes can be selected by touching the view icons (2) on the Surround View Monitor screen.
- When one of the infotainment system button (3) is pressed without the gear in R (Reverse), Surround View Monitor will turn off.

Front view

The front image is displayed on the screen when the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive) to assist in parking. The front view has a top view/front view/side view.

Operating conditions

- Front view function will operate when the following conditions are satisfied:
  - While the infotainment system screen is being displayed, press the Parking/View button (1) briefly when the gear is in D (Drive) or N (Neutral) and vehicle speed is below 15 km/h (9 mph).
- Surround View Monitor Auto On function will operate when the following conditions are satisfied:
  - With 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Surround View Monitor Auto On' selected from the Settings menu, the front parking assist view screen is displayed when Parking Distance Warning warns the driver while driving in D (Drive).

Off conditions

- Press the Parking/View button (1) again, the image will turn off.
- When vehicle speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph) with the gear in D (Drive), Surround View Monitor will turn off and the screen will change back to the previous infotainment system screen. Although you drive below 10 km/h (6 mph) again, Surround View Monitor will not turn on.
- Press one of the infotainment system button (3), the screen will change to the infotainment system screen.
- Shift the gear to P (Park), the image will turn off.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 103 2020-09-24 8:00:25

Rear view

The rear image is displayed on the screen when the gear is in R (Revers) or P (Park) to assist in parking. The rear view has a top view/rear view/side view.

Operating conditions

- Shift the gear to R (Reverse), the image will appear on the screen.
- Press the Parking/View button (1) while the gear is in P (Park), the image will appear on the screen.

Off conditions

- The image cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse).
- Shift the gear from R (Reverse) to P (Park), the image will turn off.
- Press the Parking/View button (1) again while the gear is in P (Park) with the image on the screen.

Rear View while driving

The driver is able to check the rear view on the screen while driving, it is to assist with safe driving.

Operating conditions

- The engine is on.
- Press the Parking/View button (1) when vehicle speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph), Rear View while driving will appear on the screen.
- The  icon is touched on the Surround View Monitor screen when vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph), Rear View while driving will appear on the screen.

Off conditions

- Press the Parking/View button (1) again, the screen will change back to the previous infotainment system screen.
- Select other view modes from the Surround View Monitor screen when vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph), Rear View while driving will turn off.
- Press one of the infotainment system button (3), the screen will change to the infotainment system screen.
- Shift the gear to P (Park), Rear View while driving will turn off.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 104 2020-09-24 8:00:26

System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction

When Surround View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not display normally, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Limitations of the system

- When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or when the vehicle is parked in an indoor parking lot, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.
- The screen may be displayed abnormally, and an icon will appear at the top left side of the screen under the following circumstances:
  - The tailgate is opened
  - The driver or front passenger door is opened
  - The outside rearview mirror is folded

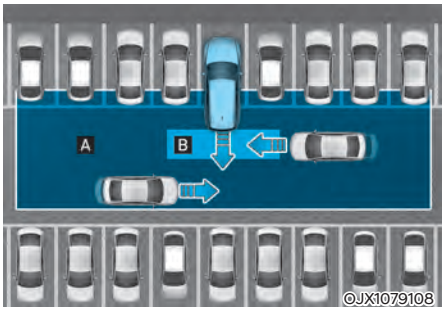
WARNING

- **ALWAYS look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles before moving the vehicle. What you see on the screen may differ from the actual vehicle's location.**
- **The image shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.**
- **When the rear view is displayed while driving, an icon ( ) appears at the top right side of the infotainment system screen to inform the driver the rear view is being displayed. Do not be confused with the front wide view image.**
- **Surround View Monitor is designed to be used on a flat surface. Therefore, if used on roads with different heights such as curbs and speed bumps, the image in the screen my not look correct.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Surround View Monitor may not operate normally.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 105 2020-09-24 8:00:26

REAR CROSS-TRAFFIC COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (RCCA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect vehicles approaching from the left and right side while your vehicle is reversing, and warn the driver that a collision is imminent with a warning message and an audible warning. Also, braking is assisted to help prevent a collision.



[A] : Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning operating range,
[B] : Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operating range

CAUTION

The time of warning may vary depending on vehicle speed of the approaching vehicle.

Information

In the following text, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning and Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will be referred as Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system.

Detecting sensor



[1] : Rear corner radar

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radar, refer to “Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)” section in chapter 7.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 106 2020-09-24 8:00:26

System settings

Setting functions for the system



OTM070194N

Rear Cross-Traffic Safety

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Rear Cross-Traffic Safety' from the Settings menu to turn on Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system and deselect to turn off the system.

WARNING

When the engine is restarted, Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system will always turn on. However, if 'Off' is selected after the engine is restarted, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

Information

Settings for Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system include Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning and Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.



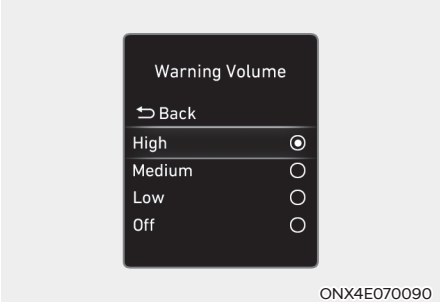
OTM070140N

Warning Timing

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system.

When the vehicle is first delivered, Warning Timing is set to 'Normal'. If you change the Warning Timing, the warning time of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 107 2020-09-24 8:00:26



ONX4E070090

Warning Volume

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu to change the Warning Volume to 'High', 'Medium', 'Low' or 'Off' for Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system.

However, when Warning Volume is turned off, the steering wheel vibration function (if equipped) will turn on if it was turned off.

If you change the Warning Volume, the Warning Volume of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

CAUTION

- **The setting of the Warning Timing and Warning Volume applies to all functions of the Rear Collision-Avoidance Assist.**
- **Even though 'Normal' is selected for Warning Timing, if the vehicles from the left and right side approaches at high speed, the initial warning activation time may seem late.**
- **Select 'Late' for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**

Information

If the engine is restarted, Warning Timing and Warning Volume will maintain the last setting.

System operation

System warning and control

Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision level: 'Collision Warning', 'Emergency Braking' and 'Stopping vehicle and ending brake control'.


OHY059034


ONX4070055


ONX4070056

Collision Warning

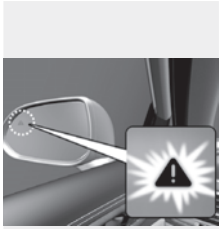
- To warn the driver of an approaching vehicle from the rear left/right side of your vehicle, the outside rearview mirror will blink and a warning will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate (if equipped). If the Rear View Monitor is operating, a warning will also appear on the infotainment system screen.

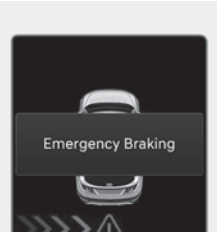
007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 108 2020-09-24 8:00:27

- The system will operate when all the following conditions are satisfied:
  - The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
  - Vehicle speed is below 8 km/h (5 mph)
  - The approaching vehicle is within approximately 25 m (82 ft.) from the left and right side of your vehicle
  - The speed of the vehicle approaching from the left and right is above 5 km/h (3 mph)

Information

If the operating conditions are satisfied, there will be a warning whenever the vehicle approaches from the left or right side even though your vehicle speed is 0 km/h (0 mph).


OHY059034



ONX4E070057


ONX4070056

Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver of an approaching vehicle from the rear left/right side of your vehicle, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and a warning message will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate (if equipped). If the Rear View Monitor is operating, a warning will also appear on the infotainment system screen.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 109 2020-09-24 8:00:27

- The system will operate when all the following conditions are satisfied:
  - The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
  - Vehicle speed is below 8 km/h (5 mph)
  - The approaching vehicle is within approximately 1.5 m (5 ft.) from the left and right side of your vehicle
  - The speed of the vehicle approaching from the left and right is above 5 km/h (3 mph)
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with approaching vehicles from the left and right.

WARNING

Brake control will end when:

- **The approaching vehicle is out of the detecting range**
- **The approaching vehicle passes behind your vehicle**
- **The approaching vehicle does not drive toward your vehicle**
- **The approaching vehicle speed slows down**
- **The driver depresses the brake pedal with sufficient power**



ONX4E070058

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.
- For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.
- During emergency braking, braking control by the system will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the brake pedal.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 110 2020-09-24 8:00:28

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system:

- For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system's warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system if the surrounding is noisy.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid collision.
- During Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
- Even if there is a problem with Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system, the vehicle's basic braking performance will operate normally.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.
- During emergency braking, braking control by the system will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the accelerator pedal.
- The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never deliberately operate Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system on people, animal, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.

CAUTION

The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There will only be a warning when:

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function

Information

- If the system assists you with braking, the driver needs to pay attention as the brake assist will end within 2 seconds. The driver must immediately depress the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings.
- Brake control will end when the driver depresses the brake pedal with sufficient power.
- After shifting the gear to R (Reverse), braking control will operate once for left and right vehicle approach.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 111 2020-09-24 8:00:28

System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction



OTM070125N

When Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system is not working properly, the 'Check Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system(s)' warning message will appear on the cluster, and the system will turn off automatically or the system will be limited. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

■ Type A



OTM070100N

■ Type B

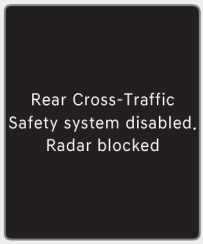


OTM070100L

When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the 'Check side view mirror warning light' (or 'Check outside mirror warning icon') warning message will appear on the cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

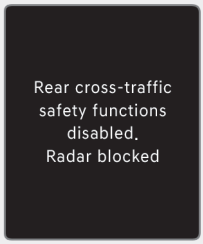
System disabled

■ Type A



OTM070124N

■ Type B



OTM070124L

When the rear bumper around the rear-side radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system.

If this occurs, the 'Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system disabled. Radar blocked' (or 'Rear cross-traffic safety functions disabled. Radar blocked') warning message will appear on the cluster.

The system will operate normally when such foreign material or trailer, etc. is removed.

If the system does not operate normally after it is removed, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 112 2020-09-24 8:00:28

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may not operate properly.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may not operate properly in an area (for example: open terrain), where any substance are not detected after turning ON the engine.**

CAUTION

Turn off Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system to install a trailer, carrier, etc., or remove the trailer, carrier, etc. to use Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system.

Limitations of the system

Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may not operate normally, or the system may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Departing from where trees or grass are overgrown
- Departing from where roads are wet
- Speed of the approaching vehicle is fast or slow

Braking control may not work, driver's attention is required in the following circumstances:

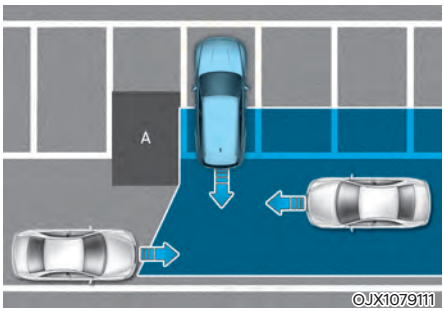
- The vehicle severely vibrates while driving over a bumpy road, uneven road or concrete patch
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tire pressure is low or a tire is damaged
- The brake is reworked
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating (if equipped)

CAUTION

For more details on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in chapter 7.

WARNING

- **Driving near a vehicle or structure**



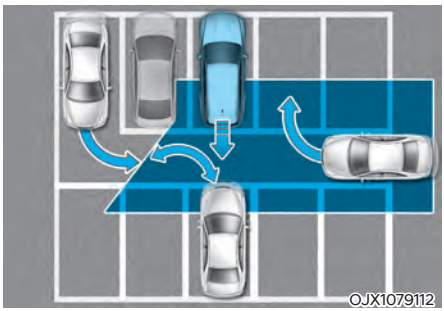
[A] : Structure

Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may be limited when driving near a vehicle or structure, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the system may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 113 2020-09-24 8:00:28

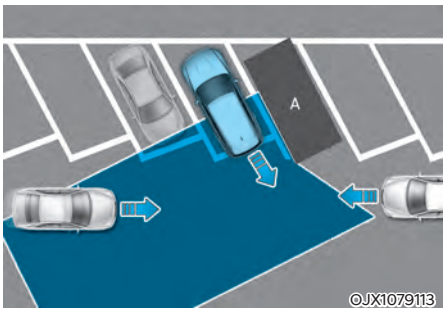
- **When the vehicle is in a complex parking environment**



Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may detect vehicles which are parking or pulling out near your vehicle (for example: a vehicle leaving beside your vehicle, a vehicle parking or pulling out in the rear area, a vehicle approaching your vehicle making a turn, etc.). If this occurs, the system may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

- **When the vehicle is parked diagonally**

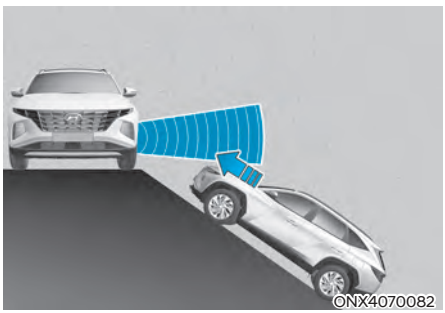


[A] : Vehicle

Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may be limited when backing up diagonally, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the system may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

- **When the vehicle is on or near a slope**

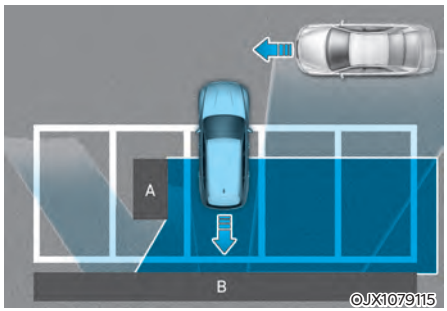


Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may be limited when the vehicle is on a uphill or downhill slope, or near it, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the system may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 114 2020-09-24 8:00:29

- **Pulling into the parking space where there is a structure**

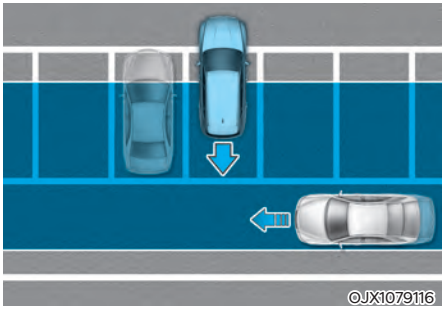


[A] : Structure, [B] :Wall

Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may detect vehicles passing by in front of you when parking in reverse into a parking space with a wall or structure in the rear or side area. If this occurs, the system may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

- **When the vehicle is parked rearward**



Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may detect vehicles passing by behind you when parking in reverse into a parking space. If this occurs, the system may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

WARNING

- **When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, we recommend that Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system is turned off due to safety reasons.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may not operate normally if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialized.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 115 2020-09-24 8:00:29

REVERSE PARKING DISTANCE WARNING (PDW) (IF EQUIPPED)

Reverse Parking Distance Warning will help warn the driver if an obstacle is detected within a certain distance when the vehicle is moving in reverse at low speeds.

Detecting sensor



[2] : Rear ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

System settings

Warning Volume

Select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Volume' from the cluster or infotainment system Settings menu to change the Warning Volume to 'High', 'Medium', or 'Low' for Reverse Parking Distance Warning.

System operation

Operating button

Parking Distance Warning Off button (if equipped)

- Press the Parking Distance Warning Off (P OFF) button to turn off Reverse Parking Distance Warning. Press the button again to turn on the system.
- When Reverse Parking Distance Warning is off (button indicator light on), if you shift the gear to R (Reverse), the system will automatically turn on.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 116 2020-09-24 8:00:29

Reverse Parking Distance Warning

- Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate when the gear is in R (Reverse).
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning detects a person, animal or object in the rear when the vehicle's rearward speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Distance from object	Warning indicator Driving rearward	Warning sound
60~120 cm (24~48 in.)		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm (12~24 in.)		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm (12 in.)		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic senor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

System malfunction and precautions

System malfunction

After starting the engine, a beep will sound when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse) to indicate the system is operating normally.

However, if one or more of the following occurs, first check whether the ultrasonic sensor is damaged or blocked with foreign material. If it still does not work properly, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

- The audible warning does not sound.
- The buzzer sounds intermittently.
- The 'Parking sensor error or blockage' warning message appears on the cluster.



ONX4E070101

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 117 2020-09-24 8:00:29

WARNING

- **Reverse Parking Distance Warning is a supplemental system. The operation of the system can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the rear view before and while parking.**
- **Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of Reverse Parking Distance Warning.**
- **Pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.**

Limitations of the system

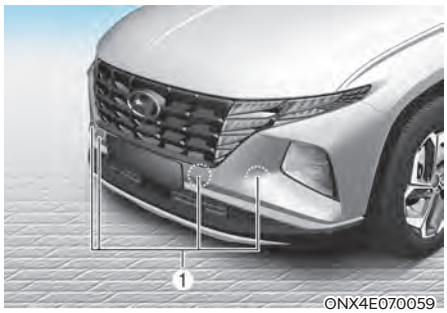
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning may not operate normally when:
  - Moisture is frozen to the sensor
  - Sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or water (The system will operate normally when such foreign material are removed.)
  - The weather is extremely hot or cold
  - The sensor or sensor assembly is disassembled
  - The surface of the sensor is pressed hard or an impact is applied with a hard object
  - The surface of the sensor is scratched with a sharp object
  - The sensors or its surrounding area is directly sprayed with high pressure washer
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning may malfunction when:
  - Heavy rain or water spray is present
  - Water flows on the surface of the sensor
  - Affected by another vehicle's sensors
  - The sensor is covered with snow
  - Driving on uneven road, gravel roads or bushes
  - Objects that generates ultrasonic waves are near the sensor
  - Installing the license plate differently from the original location
  - The vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
  - Attaching equipments or accessories around the ultrasonic sensors
- The following objects may not be detected:
  - Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles.
  - Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
  - Objects smaller than 100 cm (40 in.) in length and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.
  - Pedestrians, animals or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors
- Parking Distance Warning Indicators may be displayed differently from the actual detected location when the obstacle is located between the sensors.
- Parking Distance Warning indicator may not occur sequentially depending on vehicle speed or obstacle shape.
- If Reverse Parking Distance Warning needs repair, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 118 2020-09-24 8:00:29

FORWARD/REVERSE PARKING DISTANCE WARNING (PDW) (IF EQUIPPED)

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will help warn the driver if an obstacle is detected within a certain distance when the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse at low speeds.

Detecting sensor





[1] : Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2] : Rear ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

System settings

Warning Volume

Select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Volume' from the cluster or infotainment system Settings menu to change the Warning Volume to 'High', 'Medium', or 'Low' for Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning.

Parking Distance Warning Auto On

To use Parking Distance Warning Auto On function, select 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Parking Distance Warning Auto On' from the cluster or infotainment system Settings menu.

System operation

Operating button



007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 119 2020-09-24 8:00:29

Parking Safety button

- Press the Parking Safety (P) button to turn on Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning. Press the button again to turn off the system.
- When Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is off (button indicator light off), if you shift the gear to R (Reverse), the system will automatically turn on.
- When Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning turns on, the button indicator light will turn on. If vehicle speed is above 20 km/h (12 mph), Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will turn off (button indicator light off).

Forward Parking Distance Warning

- Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate when one of the condition is satisfied.
  - The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to D (Drive) with Reverse Parking Distance Warning on
  - The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety button indicator light is on
  - 'Parking Distance Warning Auto On' is selected from the Settings menu and the gear is in D (Drive)
- Forward Parking Distance Warning detects a person, animal or object in front when the vehicle's forward speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Forward Parking Distance Warning does not operate when the vehicle's forward speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph) even when the Parking Safety button indicator is on. Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate again when the vehicle's forward speed decreases below 10 km/h (6 mph) while the Parking Safety button indicator is on.
- When 'Parking Distance Warning Auto On' is selected, the Parking Safety button indicator light stays on.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 120 2020-09-24 8:00:29

- When 'Parking Distance Warning Auto On' is deselected, and the vehicle's forward speed is above 20 km/h (12 mph), the Parking Safety button indicator will turn off. Although you drive below 10 km/h (6 mph), the system will not turn on.

Distance from object	Warning indicator Driving forward	Warning sound
60~100 cm (24~40 in.)		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm (12~24 in.)		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm (12 in.)		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic senor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Reverse Parking Distance Warning

- Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate when the gear is in R (Reverse).
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning detects a person, animal or object in the rear when the vehicle's rearward speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- When the vehicle's rearward speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph), both the front and rear ultrasonic sensors will detect objects. However, the front ultrasonic sensors can detect a person, animal or object when it is within 60 cm (24 in.) from the sensors.

Distance from object	Warning indicator Driving rearward	Warning sound
60~120 cm (24~48 in.)		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm (12~24 in.)		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm (12 in.)		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic senor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 121 2020-09-24 8:00:30

System malfunction and precautions

System malfunction

After starting the engine, a beep will sound when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse) to indicate the system is operating normally.

However, if one or more of the following occurs, first check whether the ultrasonic sensor is damaged or blocked with foreign material. If it still does not work properly, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

- The audible warning does not sound.
- The buzzer sounds intermittently.
- The 'Parking sensor error or blockage' warning message appears on the cluster.



ONX4E070062

WARNING

- **Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is a supplemental system. The operation of the system can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the front and rear views before and while parking.**
- **Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning.**
- **Pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 122 2020-09-24 8:00:30

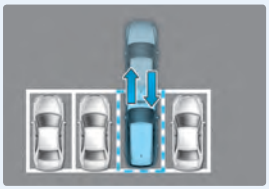
Limitations of the system

- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may not operate normally when:
  - Moisture is frozen to the sensor
  - Sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or water (The system will operate normally when such foreign material are removed.)
  - The weather is extremely hot or cold
  - The sensor or sensor assembly is disassembled
  - The surface of the sensor is pressed hard or an impact is applied with a hard object
  - The surface of the sensor is scratched with a sharp object
  - The sensors or its surrounding area is directly sprayed with high pressure washer
- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may malfunction when:
  - Heavy rain or water spray is present
  - Water flows on the surface of the sensor
  - Affected by another vehicle's sensors
  - The sensor is covered with snow
  - Driving on uneven road, gravel roads or bushes
  - Objects that generates ultrasonic waves are near the sensor
  - Installing the license plate differently from the original location
  - The vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
  - Attaching equipments or accessories around the ultrasonic sensors
- The following objects may not be detected:
  - Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles.
  - Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
  - Objects smaller than 100 cm (40 in.) in length and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.
  - Pedestrians, animals or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors
- Parking Distance Warning Indicators may be displayed differently from the actual detected location when the obstacle is located between the sensors.
- Parking Distance Warning indicator may not occur sequentially depending on vehicle speed or obstacle shape.
- If Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning needs repair, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 123 2020-09-24 8:00:30

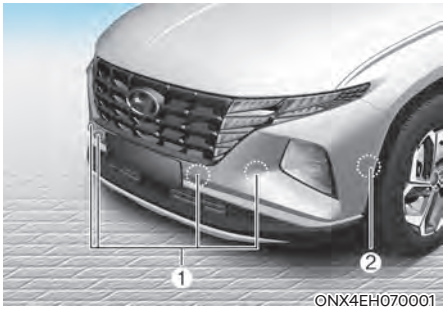
REMOTE SMART PARKING ASSIST (RSPA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Remote Smart Parking Assist uses vehicle sensors to help the driver park and exit parking spaces remotely from outside the vehicle by controlling the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshifts.

Function	Description
Remote Moving Forward/ Backward	Remotely moving forward or in reverse  OJX1079037

- Remote Moving Forward/Backward function helps the driver move the vehicle forward or in reverse from outside the vehicle using the smart key.
- When Remote Smart Parking Assist operates, Surround View Monitor and Parking Distance Warning will also operate. For more details, refer to “Surround View Monitor (SVM) and “Parking Distance Warning (PDW)” sections in chapter 7.

Detecting sensor



ONX4EH070001



ONX4EH070002

[1] : Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2] : Front side ultrasonic sensors,
[3] : Rear side ultrasonic sensors,
[4] : Rear ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 124 2020-09-24 8:00:30

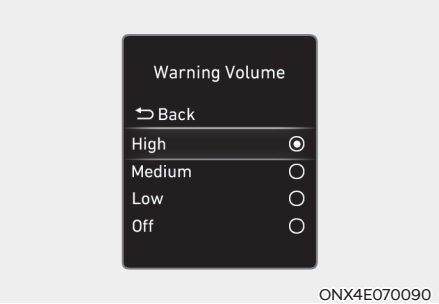
CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensors:

- **Never disassemble the detecting sensor or sensor assembly, or apply any impact on it.**
- **If the detecting sensor have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Remote Smart Parking Assist may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.**
- **When the ultrasonic sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be not operate until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.**
- **Do not push, scratch or strike the ultrasonic sensor. Sensor damage could occur.**
- **Do not spray the ultrasonic sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer.**

System settings

Settings functions for the system



ONX4E070090

Warning Volume

With the engine on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu to change the Warning Volume to 'High', 'Medium', 'Low' or 'Off' for Remote Smart Parking Assist.

However, even if 'Off' is selected, the volume will not turn off but the volume will sound as 'Low'.

If you change the Warning Volume, the Warning Volume of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 125 2020-09-24 8:00:30

System operation

Remote Smart Parking Assist button

Parking/View button	Smart key
 ONX4070043	 OTM070220L

Location	Name	Symbol	Description
Inside vehicle	Parking/View button		• Press and hold the Parking/View button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist. Also, Forward/Reverse Parking Distance warning will automatically turn on.
	Parking Safety button		• Press the Parking Safety button while Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating to end system operation.
Smart key	Remote Start button		• Press the Remote Start button after the door is locked with the engine off to start the engine remotely. • Press the Remote Start button while Remote Moving Forward/Backward function is operating to end function operation.
	Forward button		• When using the Remote Moving Forward/ Backward function, the vehicle moves in the direction of the button while the button is pressed.
	Reverse button		

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 126 2020-09-24 8:00:30

Remote Moving Forward/Backward

Operating order

Remote Moving Forward/Backward operates in the following order:

1. Getting ready to Remote Moving Forward/Backward
2. Remote Moving

1. Getting ready to Remote Moving Forward/Backward

There are two ways to operate Remote Moving Forward/Backward function.



OTM070178L

Method (1) Using the function with engine off

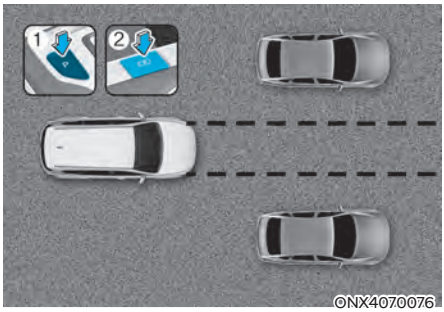
(1) Within a certain range from the vehicle press the door lock ( ) button on the smart key and lock all doors.

(2) Press and hold the Remote Start button (HOLD) within 4 seconds until the engine starts.

- For more details on remotely starting the engine, refer to “Remote Start” section in chapter 6.

Information

If the vehicle is remotely started that has been parked in cold weather for a long time, the operation of Remote Moving Forward/Backward function may be delayed depending on the engine condition.



ONX4070076



OTM070223L

Method (2) Using the function with engine on

(1) Park the vehicle in front of the space where you want to use Remote Moving Forward/Backward function, and shift the gear to P (Park).

(2) Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Smart Parking Assist. A message ‘Under Remote Control’ will appear on the infotainment system screen.

(3) Get out of the vehicle with the smart key and close all doors.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 127 2020-09-24 8:00:31

- 'Agree' must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Remote Moving Forward/Backward function.

2. Remote Moving



(1) Press and hold one of the Forward (P) or Reverse (P) button on the smart key. Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift. The vehicle will move in the direction of the button pressed.

(2) While Remote Moving Forward/Backward function is operating, if the you do not hold down the Forward (P) or Reverse (P) button, the vehicle will stop and system control will pause. The function will start operating again when the button is pressed and held again.

(3) When the vehicle reaches the target location, release the smart key Forward or Reverse button.

(4) When the driver gets in the vehicle with the smart key, a message will appear informing the driver Remote Moving Forward/Backward function is complete on the infotainment system screen and the engine will remain on.

In addition, when the Remote Start (HOLD) button is pressed on the smart key from outside the vehicle, a message will appear informing the driver Remote Moving Forward/Backward function is complete and the engine will turn off.

- Check that all smart keys are outside the vehicle when using Remote Moving Forward/Backward function.
- Remote Moving Forward/Backward function will operate only when the smart key is within 4 m (13 ft.) from the vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Forward or Reverse button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance to the vehicle and press the button again.
- The detecting range of the smart key may vary depending on the surroundings that are affected by radio waves such as transmission tower, broadcast station, etc.
- When remotely moving forward using method (1), it is recognized as an exit situation, and the vehicle moves 4 m (13 ft.) to check for pedestrians, animals or objects around the vehicle. After confirmation, the steering wheel is controlled according to the condition ahead.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 128 2020-09-24 8:00:31

- When remotely moving forward using method (2), it is recognized as a parking situation, and will immediately control the steering wheel according to the condition ahead to assist with entering the parking space and aligning the vehicle. However, performance may reduce depending on the pedestrians, animals, shape of objects, location, etc. around the vehicle.
- For moving remotely in reverse, both method (1) and (2) aligns the steering wheel first, and then will only move the vehicle straight.
- When remotely moving forward or in reverse is completed, the vehicle will automatically shift to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

CAUTION

- **When using Remote Moving Forward/Backward function, make sure that all passengers have gotten out of the vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle's battery is discharged or Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunctions when parked in a narrow parking space, Remote Moving Forward/Backward function will not operate. Always park your vehicle in a space wide enough for you to get in or out of your vehicle.**
- **Please note that depending on the parking space, you may not be able to exit from the space you have entered by using Remote Moving Forward/Backward function.**
- **After parking, the surrounding may change due to the movement of surrounding vehicles. If this occurs, Remote Moving Forward/Backward function may not operate.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle, close windows and sunroofs, and make sure the engine is off before locking the doors.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 129 2020-09-24 8:00:31

System operation status

Operation status	Smart key LED	Hazard warning light
Under control	Green LED continuously blinks	-
Pause	Red LED continuously blinks	Blinks
Off	Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 3 times and turns off
Complete	Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 1 time and turns off

✳ Operation status by the hazard warning light may not be applicable based on the regulation of your country.

✳ If the smart key is not within the operating range from the vehicle (approximately 4m (13 ft.)), the smart key LED will not illuminate or blink. Use the smart key within the operating range.

How to turn off Remote Moving Forward/Backward function while operating

- Press the Parking/View (P) button while the infotainment system screen guides the driver using method 2.
- Shift the gear except to P (Park) while the infotainment system screen guides the driver using method 2.
- Press the Parking Safety (P) button or select 'Cancel' on the infotainment system screen.
- Press the Remote Start (HOLD) button on the smart key while the vehicle is being controlled by Remote Moving Forward/Backward function. Remote Moving Forward/Backward function will turn off. At this time, the engine will turn off.
- Get on the vehicle with the smart key. Remote Moving Forward/Backward function will turn off. At this time, the engine will remain on.

The function will pause in the following conditions when:

- There is a pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
- The door or tailgate is open
- The Forward (P) or Reverse (P) button is not continuously pressed
- Simultaneously pressing multiple buttons on a smart key
- The smart key is not operated within 4 m (13 ft.) from the vehicle
- Button of another smart key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates while the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 130 2020-09-24 8:00:31

- The vehicle moves 7 m (22 ft.) while the smart key is pressed with Remote Moving Forward/Backward function (maximum travel distance per button press)

When Remote Moving Forward/ Backward function is paused, the vehicle will stop. If the condition that made the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

The function will cancel in the following conditions when:

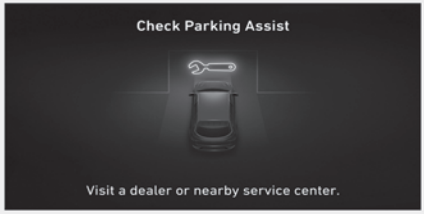
- The steering wheel is steered
- The gear is shifted while the vehicle is moving
- Operating EPB while the vehicle is moving
- The engine hood is open
- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed when all the doors are closed
- The smart key is outside the vehicle when the brake pedal is depressed while the driver's door is open
- Rapid acceleration occurs
- Vehicle skid occurs
- The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
- There are pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time
- Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Remote Moving Forward/Backward function has started to operate
- The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
- The function is paused for more than 1 minute
- The total travel distance of the vehicle has exceeded 14 m (45 ft.) after Remote Moving Forward/Backward function operation
- The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working normally
- There is a problem with the smart key or the smart key battery is low
- ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
- The alarm of the Theft Alarm System sounds

When Remote Moving Forward/ Backward function is canceled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 131 2020-09-24 8:00:31

System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction



OTM070222L

System check

When Remote Smart Parking Assist is not working properly, the ‘Check Parking Assist’ warning message will appear on the infotainment system screen. If the message appears, stop using the system, and we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

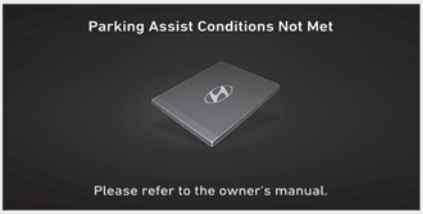


OJX1079200L

System canceled

When Remote Parking Assist is operating, the system can be canceled, and the ‘Parking Assist Canceled’ warning message may appear regardless of the parking order. Other messages may appear depending on the situations. Follow the instructions provided on the infotainment system screen while parking your vehicle with Remote Parking Assist. Always look around and pay attention when using the system.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 132 2020-09-24 8:00:31



OTM070221L

System standby

When 'Parking Assist Conditions Not Met' message appears, when Parking/View (P) button has been pressed and held, Remote Smart Parking Assist is in standby. After a while, press and hold the Parking/View (P) button again to see if the system works.

The message appears even when the smart key's battery is low. Check the smart key battery level.

Limitations of the system

In the following circumstances, system performance to park or exit the vehicle may be limited, there may be a risk of collision, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may turn off. Park or exit the vehicle manually if necessary.

- An object is attached to the steering wheel
- The vehicle is installed with a snow chain, spare tire or different size wheel
- Tire pressure is lower or higher than the standard tire pressure
- Your vehicle is loaded with cargo longer or wider than your vehicle or a trailer is connected to your vehicle
- There is a problem with the wheel alignment
- Your vehicle is leaned severely to one side
- Your vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch
- The license plate is installed differently from the original location
- There is a person, animal or object above or below the ultrasonic sensor when Remote Smart Parking Assist is activated
- The parking space is curved or diagonal
- There is an obstacle such as a person, animal or object (trash can, bicycle, motorcycle, shopping cart, narrow pillar etc.) near the parking space

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 133 2020-09-24 8:00:32

- There is a circular pillar or narrow pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as fire extinguisher, etc. near the parking space
- The road surface is bumpy (curbstone, speed bump, etc.)
- The road is slippery
- The parking space is near a vehicle with higher ground clearance or big, such as a truck, etc.
- The parking space is Inclined
- There is heavy wind
- Operating the system on uneven roads, gravel roads, bushes, etc.
- The performance of the ultrasonic sensor is affected by extremely hot or cold weather
- The ultrasonic sensor is covered with snow or water
- An object that generates ultrasonic waves is nearby
- A wireless device with a transmission function operates near the ultrasonic sensors
- Your vehicle is affected by another vehicle's Parking Distance Warning
- The sensor is mounted or positioned incorrectly by an impact to the bumper
- When the ultrasonic sensor cannot detect the following objects:
  - Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles
  - Objects smaller than 100 cm (40 in.) in length and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter
  - Objects which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow

Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate normally under the following circumstances:

- Parking on inclines



Park manually when parking on inclines.

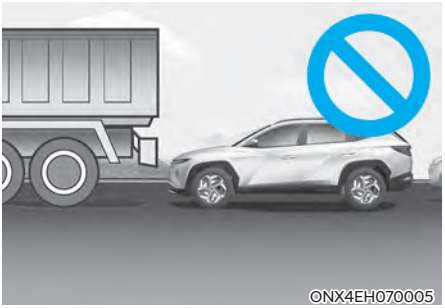
- Parking on uneven road



Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel when the vehicle slips, or the vehicle cannot move due to road conditions such as pebbles or fragmented stones.

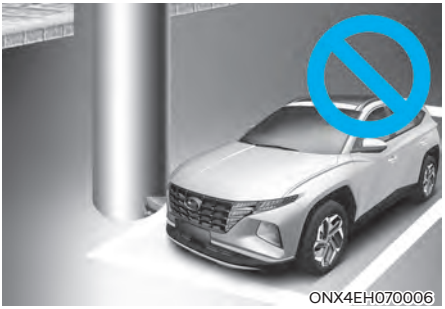
007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 134 2020-09-24 8:00:32

- Parking behind a truck



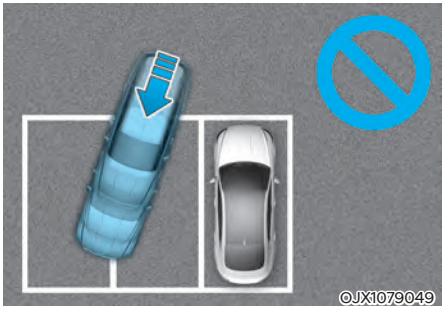
Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist around vehicles with higher ground clearance, such as a bus, truck, etc. It may lead to an accident.

- Parking near a pillar



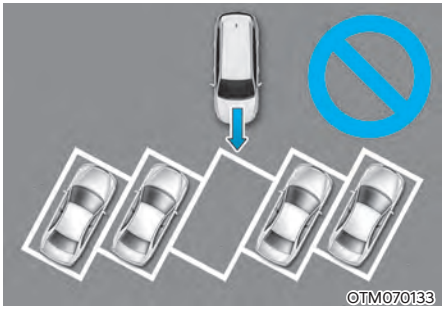
Remote Smart Parking Assist performance may reduce when there is a pillar or pillar surrounded by objects such as a fire extinguisher near the parking space.

- Parking in a parking space with a vehicle on one side only



If Remote Smart Parking Assist is used, when parking in a parking space with a vehicle only on one side, your vehicle may cross the parking line to avoid the parked vehicle.

- Parking diagonal



Remote Smart Parking Assist does not provide diagonal parking. Even if your vehicle was able to enter the parking space, do not use the system because the system cannot operate normally.

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 135 2020-09-24 8:00:32

- Parking in snow



Snow may interfere with sensor operation, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel if the road is slippery while parking.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Remote Smart Parking Assist:

- **The driver is responsible for safe parking and exit when using Remote Smart Parking Assist. Make sure there are no pedestrians, animals or objects around the vehicle when using the system.**
- **When using Remote Smart Parking Assist, stay out of the way in the direction the vehicle moves for your safety.**
- **Always check surroundings when using Remote Smart Parking Assist. You may collide with pedestrians, animals, or objects if they are near the sensor or are in the sensor's blind spot area.**
- **A collision may occur if a pedestrian, animal, or object suddenly appears while Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating.**
- **Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist when under the influence of alcohol.**
- **Do not let children or other people to use the smart key.**
- **If Remote Smart Parking Assist is used continuously for a long period, it may adversely affect system performance.**
- **Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate normally if the vehicle needs wheel alignment adjustment such as when the vehicle tilts to one side. We recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Noise may be heard when braking occurs by Remote Smart Parking Assist or when the brake pedal is depressed by the driver.**
- **Remote Smart Parking Assist may suddenly apply the brake to avoid collision.**
- **Use the system only in a parking space that is large enough for the vehicle to move safely.**

NOTICE

- **If the 3rd stage warning (continuous beep) of the Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning sounds while Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating, it means the obstacle detected is close to your vehicle. At this time, Remote Smart Parking Assist will temporarily stop operating. Make sure there are no pedestrians, animals, or objects around your vehicle.**
- **Depending on brake operation, the stop lights may come on while the vehicle is moving.**

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 136 2020-09-24 8:00:32

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY (IF EQUIPPED)

The radio frequency components (Rear Corner Radar) complies:

- For Taiwan

電信法第 48 條，低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法
第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

OANATEL069

- Thailand



OANATEL111

- For Indonesia



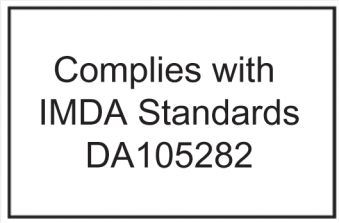
OANATEL070

- For Malaysia



OANATEL057

- For Singapore



OANATEL068

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 137 2020-09-24 8:00:32

- Europe

Trade mark or Trade name : Hyundai Mobis
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 06141, Republic of Korea
Frequency : 76-77 GHz
Max EIRP(Peak) :
Normal Resolution 28.17 dBm
High Resolution : 29.18 dBm

The antenna(s) must be installed such that a minimum separation distance of at least 20 cm is maintained between the radiator (antenna) and all persons at all times. This device must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Hereby, Hyundai Mobis Co.,Ltd declares that the radio equipment type MAR120 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.
The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://www.mobis.co.kr/upload/CE/MOBIS_MAR120_Radar.pdf

OANATEL112

- For Ukraine



UA RF : 3MOBSR120

Hyundai Mobis Co., ТОВ
Гангнам-гу 203, Тегеран-ро
Сеул 06141
Республіка Корея
UNIT ASSY-RR CORNER RADAR
MAR120
Частотний діапазон: 76 – 77 ГГц
Потужність передачі: 28.17 дБм (макс.) EIRP, 29.18 дБм (макс.) EIRP

справжнім Hyundai Mobis Co., ТОВ заявляє, що тип радіообладнання MAR120 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання:
повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на вебсайті за такою адресою:

http://www.mobis.co.kr/upload/CE/MOBIS_MAR120_Radar.pdf

OANATEL071

- Moldova



OANATEL061

- Jordan

Hyundai Mobis Co.,Ltd
UNIT ASSY-RR CORNER RADAR
MAR120

OANATEL080

- Untied Arab Emirates



OANATEL079

- Ghana

NCA Approved: SRO-1M-7E4-X46

OANATEL072

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 138 2020-09-24 8:00:33

- Serbia and Montenegro



OANATEL083

- Republic of South Africa



OANATEL081

- Zambia



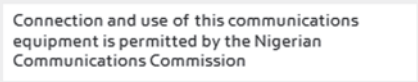
OANATEL075

- Russia



OANATEL078

- Nigeria



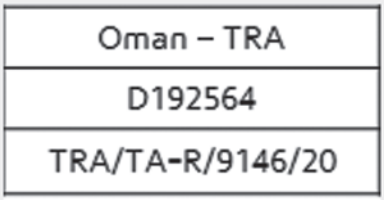
OANATEL076

- Morocco



OANATEL077

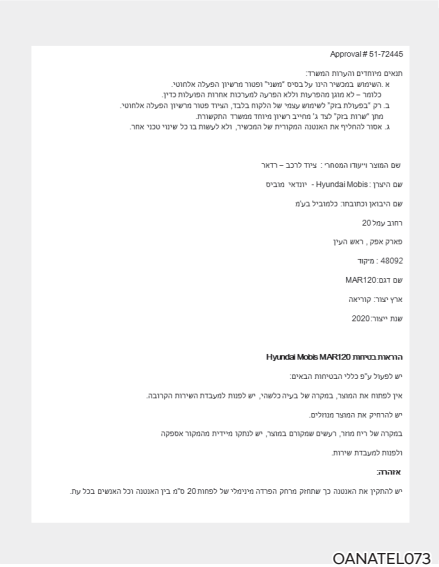
- Oman



OANATEL082

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 139 2020-09-24 8:00:33

- Israel



Approval # 51-72445

תנאים מיוחדים והערות המשרד:
א. השימוש במכשיר הינו על בסיס "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
כלומר – לא מונו מופרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות המפעלות כדין.
ב. רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, העידר פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
מתן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.
ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

שם המוצר וייעודו המסחרי : ציוד לרכב – רדאר

שם היצרן : Hyundai Mobis - יונדאי מובייס

שם היבואן וכתובתו: כלמוביל בע"מ

רחוב עמל 20

פארק אפק , ראש העין

מיקוד : 48092

שם דגם: MAR120

ארץ ייצור: קוריאה

שנת ייצור: 2020

הוראות בטיחות Hyundai Mobis MAR120

יש לפעול ע"פ כללי הבטיחות הבאים:

אין לפתוח את המוצר, במקרה של בעיה כלשהי, יש לפנות למעבדת השירות הקרובה.

יש להרחיק את המוצר מנוזלים.

במקרה של ריח מוזר, רעשים שמקורם במוצר, יש לנתקו מיידית מהמקור אספקה

ולפנות למעבדת שירות.

אזהרה:

יש להתקין את האנטנה כך שתחזק מרחק הפרדה מינימלי של לפחות 20 ס"מ בין האנטנה וכל האנשים בכל עת.

OANATEL073

007_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 140 2020-09-24 8:00:33

8. Emergency situations

Hazard warning flasher 8-3

In case of an emergency while driving 8-3
- If the engine stalls while driving 8-3
- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing 8-3
- If you have a flat tire while driving 8-4

If the vehicle will not be ready to start 8-4

If the 12 volt battery is discharged 8-5
- Before jump starting 8-5
- Jump starting 8-6

If the engine overheats 8-8

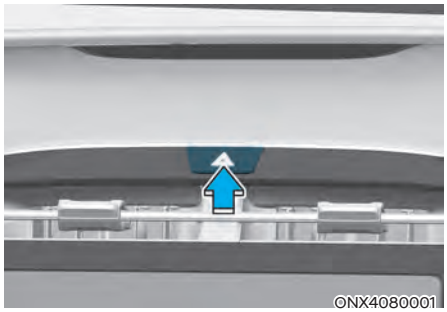
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) 8-10
- Check tire pressure 8-10
- Tire pressure monitoring system 8-11
- Low tire pressure warning light 8-12
- Low tire pressure position and tire pressure telltale 8-12
- TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system) malfunction indicator 8-13
- Changing a tire with TPMS 8-13

If you have a flat tire (with spare tire) 8-15
- Jack and tools 8-15
- Changing tires 8-16
- Jack label 8-21
- Ec declaration of conformity for jack 8-22

If you have a flat tire (with tire mobility kit) 8-23
Introduction 8-23
Notes on the safe use of the tire mobility kit 8-24
Components of the tire mobility kit 8-25
Using the tire mobility kit 8-26
Checking the tire inflation pressure 8-29
Towing 8-31
Towing service 8-31
Removable towing hook 8-32
Emergency towing 8-33
Emergency commodity 8-35
Fire extinguisher 8-35
First aid kit 8-35
Triangle reflector 8-35
Tire pressure gauge 8-35
Pan-european ecall system 8-36
Information on data processing 8-38
Pan-european ecall system 8-39

8

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER



The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

To turn the hazard warning flasher on or off, press the hazard warning flasher button with the ignition switch in any position. The button is located in the center fascia panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates regardless of whether your vehicle is in the READY state or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILE DRIVING

If the engine stalls while driving

- Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on your hazard warning flasher.
- Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

If the engine stalls at a crossroads or crossing, if safe to do so, move the shift button to the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe location.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 3 2020-09-24 8:01:11

If you have a flat tire while driving

If a tire goes flat while you are driving:

- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down while driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
- When the vehicle is stopped, press the hazard warning flasher button, move the shift button into P (Park), apply the parking brake, and place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
- When changing a flat tire, follow the instructions provided later in this chapter.

IF THE VEHICLE WILL NOT BE READY TO START

- Be sure the shift button is in P (Park). The vehicle starts only when the shift button is in P (Park).
- This vehicle does not have a regular 12V battery that needs periodic replacement. It is lithium ion polymer type integrated into the HEV high voltage battery. The vehicle has a 12V battery protection system that cuts 12V battery from vehicle draw to prevent full discharge. If vehicle will not start, first try pressing the 12V Battery Reset switch (left side of the steering wheel near the fuel door open switch) to reconnect the 12V battery, but you must start vehicle within 15 seconds of pressing the 12V Battery Reset switch. After starting the vehicle (indicator ON), operate the vehicle safely outdoors in ready mode stopped and/or drive it for 30 minutes total to charge the 12V battery fully.
- Check the fuel level and add fuel if necessary.

If the vehicle still does not start, we recommend that you call an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for assistance.

NOTICE

Push or pull starting the vehicle may cause the catalytic converter to overload which can lead to damage to the emission control system.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 4 2020-09-24 8:01:11

IF THE 12 VOLT BATTERY IS DISCHARGED

Before jump starting

This vehicle does not have a regular 12V battery that needs periodic replacement. It is lithium ion polymer type integrated into the HEV high voltage battery. The vehicle has a 12V battery protection system that cuts 12V battery from vehicle draw to prevent full discharge.

Using the 12V battery reset switch


ONX4HQ010015

1. Press the 12V Battery Reset switch to reconnect the 12V battery.
2. Start the vehicle within 15 seconds of pressing the 12V Battery Reset switch.
3. After starting the vehicle (🚗 indicator on), operate the vehicle safely outdoors in ready mode stopped and/or drive it for 30 minutes total to charge the 12V battery fully.

If you do not start the vehicle immediately after pressing the 12V Battery Reset switch, the power of 12V battery is automatically disconnected after few seconds to save the 12V battery from additional discharge. If the 12V battery is disconnected prior to starting the vehicle, press the 12V Battery Reset switch again and then immediately start the vehicle as explained.

Repeated use of the 12V Battery Reset switch without a sufficient engine ON cycle (30 Min+) may cause over discharge of the 12V battery, which will prevent the vehicle from starting. If the 12V battery is over discharged to a point that the reset does not work, try to jump-start the vehicle.

i Information

After starting the vehicle (🚗 indicator on), the 12V battery is being charged whether the engine is running or not. Although there is no engine sound, it is unnecessary to depress the accelerator pedal.

The following items may need to be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

See chapter 4 and 5 for:

- Power Windows
- Trip Computer
- Climate Control System
- Clock
- Audio System
- Sunroof

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 5 2020-09-24 8:01:12

NOTICE

External power source using 12V battery

The use of external power accessories may reduce performance and function of the vehicle. Especially, the use of dash cameras may shut off the power of the vehicle prior to the dash camera's automatic shut-down.

If the power of the vehicle is shut off, start the vehicle as explained. (refer to "Using the 12V Battery Reset Switch")

Jump starting

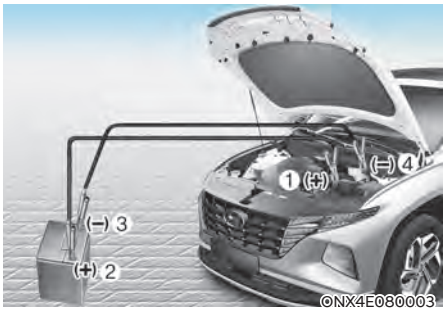
In the event vehicle still does not have a functional 12V battery (check if interior lights will not turn on) then you can try a jump start to the engine compartment jumper terminals using a 12V booster pack or jumper cables from another vehicle's 12V battery according to the following instructions.

CAUTION

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Follow the jump starting procedure in this section to avoid serious injury or damage to your vehicle. If in doubt about how to properly jump start your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have a service technician or towing service do it for you.

1. Position the vehicles close enough that the jumper cables will reach, but do not allow the vehicles to touch.

   Avoid fans or any moving parts in the engine compartment at all times, even when the vehicles are turned off.
2. Turn off all electrical devices such as radios, lights, air conditioning, etc. Put the vehicles in P (Park) and set the parking brake. Turn both vehicles OFF.



3. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one jumper cable to the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).
4. Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the red, positive (+) battery/ jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
5. Connect the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) battery/chassis ground of the assisting vehicle (3).
6. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).

   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery or jumper terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 6 2020-09-24 8:01:12


ONX4HQ010015

7. Press the 12V Battery Reset switch.
8. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for a few minutes.
9. Start your vehicle as soon as possible. After starting the vehicle (indicator on), operate the vehicle safely outdoors in ready mode stopped and/or drive it for 30 minutes total to charge the 12V battery fully.

If your vehicle will not start after a few attempts, it probably requires servicing. In this event please seek qualified assistance. If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Disconnect the jumper cables in the exact reverse order you connected them:

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) battery/chassis ground of the assisting vehicle (3).
3. Disconnect the second jumper cable from the red, positive (+) battery/ jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).

Information

The voltage range of the charger should be 13.3~14V and its current range should be less than 60A. (13.8V is recommended).

CAUTION

- **The use of an improper charger with a voltage and current range higher than specified may cause overheating and damage to the 12V battery.**
- **The use of an incorrect charger will lead to a power shut-off to save the 12V battery. Stop using the incorrect charger once the power of the vehicle is shut off.**

Information



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to your vehicle:

- **Only use a 12-volt power supply (battery or jumper system) to jump start your vehicle.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle by push-starting.**

CAUTION

Do not jump start another vehicle with your hybrid vehicle. Jump starting another vehicle will damage the hybrid vehicle's 12 volt battery (lithium polymer type).

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 7 2020-09-24 8:01:12

IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine may be overheating. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift button in P (Park) and set the parking brake
3. Make sure that there is no hot steam gushing out of the engine compartment. When it is safe to do so, open the engine compartment, and check the water-pump connector. When the water-pump connector is disconnected, stop the engine, re-connect the water-pump connector, and then re-start the engine.
4. Set the temperature and the air flow to the maximum, and turn ON the air conditioner.

WARNING



While the engine is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving parts such as the cooling fan and drive belt to prevent serious injury.

5. When the Service warning light (HEV) illuminates on the instrument cluster, immediately stop the engine, and we recommend you to contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. When the engine warning light (engine) illuminates, or when the coolant or hot steams gush out of the engine compartment, leave the engine compartment opened, while running the engine. This is to ventilate the engine compartment and to cool down the engine.
6. Check the coolant temperature gauge on the instrument cluster to make sure the coolant temperature is sufficiently cooled down. Check the coolant level. When it is insufficient, check its connection with the radiator, the heater hose, and the water pump for any leakage. When there is no leakage, add the coolant. However, if the problems persists, such as the illumination of the warning lights, leakages, or the cooling-fan malfunction, which may overheat the engine, immediately stop the engine, we recommend you to contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 8 2020-09-24 8:01:12

WARNING



Never remove the engine coolant cap and/or inverter coolant cap or the drain plug while the engine and radiator are hot.

Hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.

Turn the hybrid system off and wait until the engine cools down. Use extreme care when removing the engine coolant cap and/or inverter coolant cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back while the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.

7. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
8. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, we recommend that you call an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for assistance.

CAUTION

- **Serious loss of coolant indicates a leak in the cooling system and we recommend the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.**

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 9 2020-09-24 8:01:12

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)



ONX4080004



ONX4E080005

(1) Low Tire Pressure Telltale/TPMS Malfunction Indicator

(2) Low Tire Pressure Position Telltale and Tire Pressure Telltale (Shown on the LCD display)

Check tire pressure



ONX4E040019

- You can check the tire pressure in the Warning mode on the cluster.

  Refer to the “LCD Display Modes” in chapter 4.
- Tire pressure is displayed after a few minutes of driving after initial engine start up.
- If tire pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, “Drive to display” message will appear. After driving, check the tire pressure.
- The displayed tire pressure values may differ from those measured with a tire pressure gauge.
- You can change the tire pressure unit in the User Settings mode on the instrument cluster.
  - psi, kpa, bar **(Refer to “LCD Modes” in chapter 4)**.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 10 2020-09-24 8:01:14

Tire pressure monitoring system

WARNING

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure.

Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

NOTICE

If any of the below happens, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

1. **The Low Tire Pressure Telltale/TPMS Malfunction Indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is placed to the ON position or the vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode.**
2. **The TPMS Malfunction Indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.**
3. **The Low Tire Pressure Position Telltale remains illuminated.**

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 11 2020-09-24 8:01:14

Low tire pressure warning light

Low tire pressure position and tire pressure telltale



ONX4E040019

When the tire pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated and a warning message displayed on the cluster LCD display, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. The Low Tire Pressure Position Telltale will indicate which tire is significantly underinflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible. Inflate the tires to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tire inflation pressure label located on the driver's side center pillar outer panel.

If you cannot reach a service station or if the tire cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire.

The Low Tire Pressure Telltale will remain on and the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may blink for one minute and then remain illuminated (when the vehicle is driven approximately 10 minutes at speed above 25 km/h (15.5 mph)) until you have the low pressure tire repaired and replaced on the vehicle.

CAUTION

In winter or cold weather, the Low Tire Pressure Telltale may be illuminated if the tire pressure was adjusted to the recommended tire inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tire pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tire inflation pressure and adjust the tires to the recommended tire inflation pressure.

WARNING

Low pressure damage

Significantly low tire pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tires can cause the tires to overheat and fail.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 12 2020-09-24 8:01:16

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator

The TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

We recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the Low Tire Pressure Position Telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an under-inflated tire.

NOTICE

The TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is near electric power supply cables or radio transmitters such as police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, transmitting towers, etc.

Additionally, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate if snow chains are used or electronic devices such as computers, chargers, remote starters, navigation, etc. This may interfere with normal operation of the TPMS.

Changing a tire with TPMS

If you have a flat tire, the Low Tire Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that you have the flat tire repaired by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible or replace the flat tire with the spare tire.

NOTICE

It is recommended that you do not use a puncture-repairing agent not approved by HYUNDAI dealer or the equivalent specified for your vehicle to repair and/or inflate a low pressure tire. Tire sealant not approved by HYUNDAI dealer or the equivalent specified for your vehicle may damage the tire pressure sensor.

The spare tire (if equipped) does not come with a tire pressure monitoring sensor. When the low pressure tire or the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the Low Tire Pressure Telltale will remain on. Also, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is driven at speed above 25 km/h (15.5 mph) for approximately 10 minutes.

Once the original wheel equipped with a tire pressure monitoring sensor is reinflated to the recommended pressure and reinstalled on the vehicle, the Low Tire Pressure Telltale and TPMS Malfunction Indicator will go off within a few minutes of driving.

✳ All vehicles sold in the EUROPE market during below period must be equipped with TPMS.

- New model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2012 ~
- Current model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2014~ (Based on vehicle registrations)

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 13 2020-09-24 8:01:16

If the indicators do not extinguish after a few minutes, please visit an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem (except for the spare tire). You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

You may not be able to identify a tire with low pressure by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tire pressure gauge to measure. Please note that a tire that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tire that is cold.

A cold tire means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km (1 mile) in that 3 hour period.

Allow the tire to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tire is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

WARNING

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

WARNING

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tire pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.

WARNING

For Europe

- **Do not modify the vehicle; it may interfere with the TPMS function.**
- **The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.**

  For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.
- **If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by a HYUNDAI dealer or the equivalent approved for your vehicle. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.**

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 14 2020-09-24 8:01:16

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE (WITH SPARE TIRE, IF EQUIPPED)

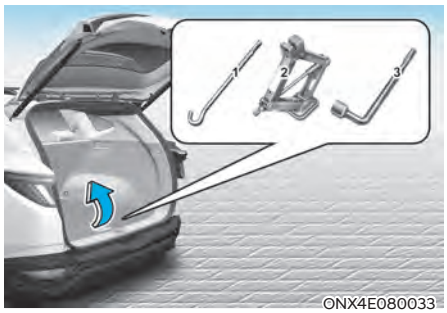
WARNING

Changing a tire can be dangerous. Follow the instructions in this section when changing a tire to reduce the risk of serious injury or death.

CAUTION

Be careful as you use the jack handle to stay clear of the flat end. The flat end has sharp edges that could cause cuts.

Jack and tools



(1) Jack handle
(2) Jack
(3) Wheel nut wrench

The jack, jack handle, and wheel nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment under the luggage box cover.

The jack is provided for emergency tire changing only.



Turn the winged hold down bolt counterclockwise to remove the spare tire.

Store the spare tire in the same compartment by turning the winged hold down bolt clockwise.

To prevent the spare tire and tools from "rattling", store them in their proper location.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 15 2020-09-24 8:01:16


OTL065040

If it is hard to loosen the tire hold down wing bolt by hand, you can loosen it easily using the jack handle.

1. Put the jack handle (1) inside of the tire hold-down wing bolt.
2. Turn the tire hold-down wing bolt counterclockwise with the jack handle.

Changing tires

WARNING

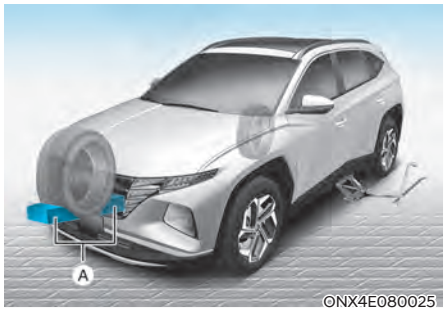
A vehicle can slip or roll off of a jack causing serious injury or death to you or those nearby. Take the following safety precautions:

- **Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**
- **NEVER attempt to change a tire in the lane of traffic. ALWAYS move the vehicle completely off the road on level, firm ground away from traffic before trying to change a tire. If you cannot find a level, firm place off the road, call a towing service for assistance.**
- **Be sure to use the jack provided with the vehicle.**
- **ALWAYS place the jack on the designated jacking positions on the vehicle and NEVER on the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.**
- **Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is on the jack.**
- **Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle while it is on the jack.**
- **Keep children away from the road and the vehicle.**

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 16 2020-09-24 8:01:16

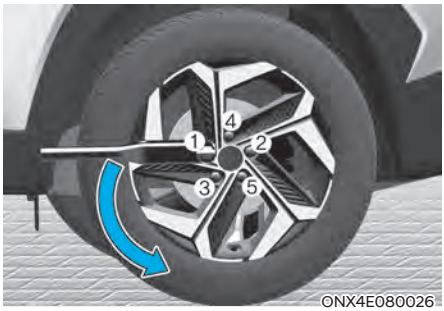
Follow these steps to change your vehicle's tire:

1. Park on a level, firm surface.
2. Move the shift button into P (Park), apply the parking brake, and place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
3. Press the hazard warning flasher button.
4. Remove the wheel lug wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tire from the vehicle.



[A] : Block

5. Block both the front and rear of the tire diagonally opposite of the tire you are changing.



6. Loosen the wheel bolts counterclockwise one turn each in the order shown above, but do not remove any wheel bolts until the tire has been raised off of the ground.



7. Place the jack at the designated jacking position under the frame closest to the tire you are changing. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two notches. Never jack at any other position or part of the vehicle. Doing so may damage the side seal molding or other parts of the vehicle.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 17 2020-09-24 8:01:16


ONX4E080035

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tire clears the ground. Make sure the vehicle is stable on the jack.
9. Loosen the lug nuts with the wheel lug nut wrench and remove them with your fingers. Remove the wheel from the studs and lay it flat on the ground out of the way.

   Remove any dirt or debris from the studs, mounting surfaces, and wheel.

WARNING

Wheels may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that interferes with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub.

If there is, remove it. If there is not good contact on the mounting surface between the wheel and hub, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.

10. Install the spare tire onto the studs of the hub.
11. Tighten the lug nuts with your fingers onto the studs with the smaller end of the lug nuts closest to the wheel.
12. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



OTL065007

13. Use the wheel lug nut wrench to tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Double-check each lug nut until they are tight. After changing tires, we recommend that an authorized HYUNDAI dealer tighten the lug nuts to their proper torque as soon as possible. **The wheel lug nut should be tightened to 11~13 kgf·m (79~94 lbf·ft).**

If you have a tire gauge, check the tire pressure (see “Tires and Wheels” section in chapter 2 for tire pressure instructions.). If the pressure is lower or higher than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and adjust it to the recommended pressure. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tire pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tire. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible. After changing tires, secure the flat tire and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 18 2020-09-24 8:01:16

NOTICE

Check the tire pressure as soon as possible after installing a spare tire. Adjust it to the recommended pressure.

CAUTION

Your vehicle has metric threads on the studs and wheel bolts. Make certain during tire changing that the same bolts that were removed are reinstalled. If you have to replace your wheel bolts make sure they have metric threads to avoid damaging the studs and ensure the wheel is properly secured to the hub. We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for assistance.

WARNING

Wheel studs

If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.

If any of the equipment such as the jack, wheel bolts, studs, or other equipment is damaged or in poor condition, do not attempt to change the tire and call for assistance.

Use of compact spare tires (if equipped)

Compact spare tires are designed for emergency use only. Drive carefully on the compact spare tire and always follow the safety precautions.

WARNING

To prevent compact spare tire failure and loss of control possibly resulting in an accident:

- **Use the compact spare tire only in an emergency.**
- **NEVER operate your vehicle over 80 km/h (50 mph).**
- **Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tire.**
- **Do not use the compact spare tire continuously. Repair or replace the original tire as soon as possible to avoid failure of the compact spare tire.**

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 19 2020-09-24 8:01:16

When driving with the compact spare tire mounted to your vehicle:

- Check the tire pressure after installing the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).
- Do not take this vehicle through an automatic car wash while the compact spare tire is installed.
- Do not use the compact spare tire on any other vehicle because this tire has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The compact spare tire's tread life is shorter than a regular tire. Inspect your compact spare tire regularly and replace worn compact spare tires with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer while the compact spare tire is installed.

Information

When the original tire and wheel are repaired and reinstalled on the vehicle, the wheel bolt torque must be set correctly. The correct wheel bolt tightening torque is 11~13 kgf.m (79~94 lbf.ft).

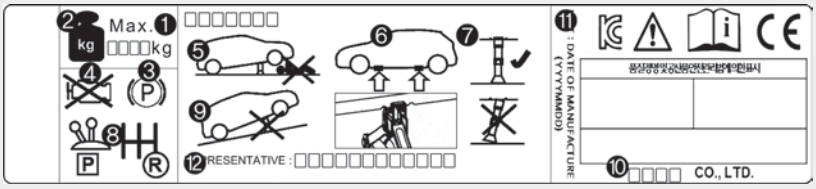
NOTICE

To prevent damaging the compact spare tire and your vehicle:

- **Drive slowly enough for the road conditions to avoid all hazards, such as a potholes or debris.**
- **Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tire diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tire and reduces the ground clearance approximately 25 mm (1 inch).**
- **Do not use tire chains on the compact spare tire. Because of the smaller size, a tire chain will not fit properly.**
- **Do not use the compact spare tire on any other wheels, nor should standard tires, snow tires, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the compact spare wheel.**

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 20 2020-09-24 8:01:16

Jack label



OOS067043

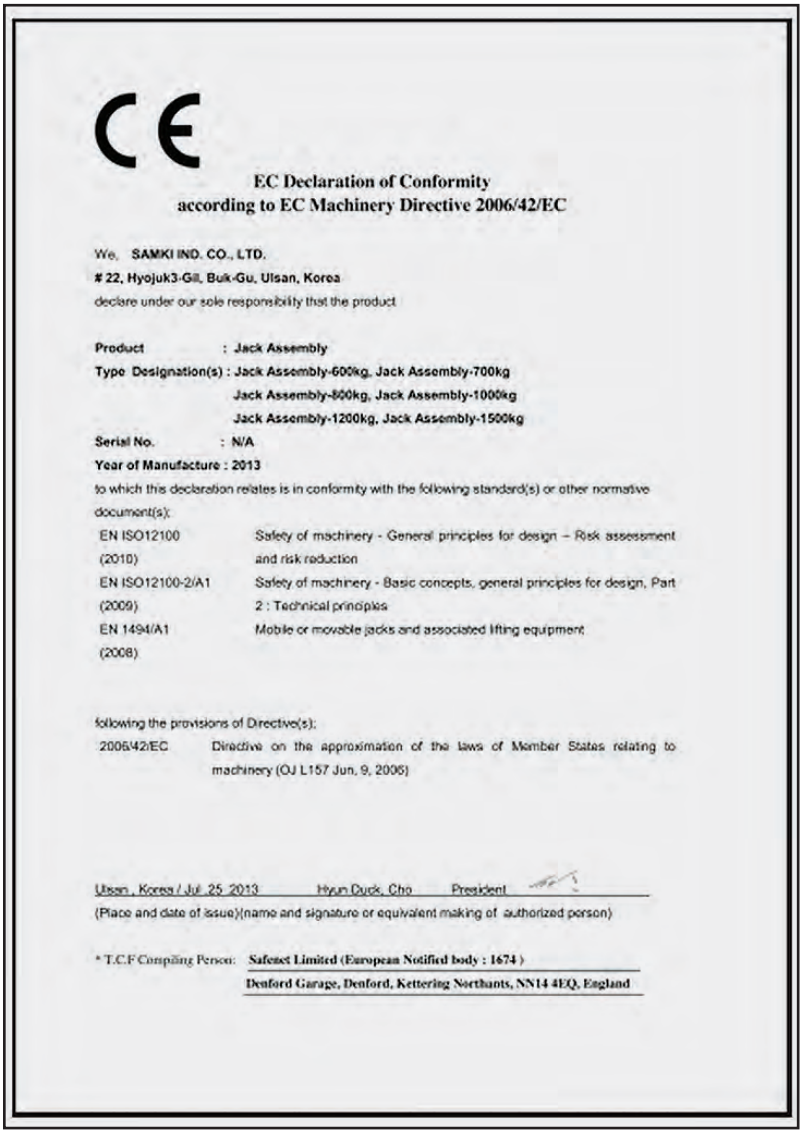
The actual Jack label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

For more detailed specifications, refer to the label attached to the jack.

1. Model Name
2. Maximum allowable load
3. When using the jack, set your parking brake.
4. When using the jack, stop the engine.
5. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
6. The designated locations under the frame
7. When supporting the vehicle, the base plate of jack must be vertical under the lifting point.
8. Shift the gear to the P position on vehicles with automatic transmission.
9. The jack should be used on firm level ground.
10. Jack manufacture
11. Production date
12. Representative company and address

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 21 2020-09-24 8:01:17

EC declaration of conformity for jack



CE

EC Declaration of Conformity
according to EC Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC

We, **SAMKI IND. CO., LTD.**
 # 22, Hyojuk3-Gil, Buk-Gu, Ulsan, Korea
declare under our sole responsibility that the product

Product : **Jack Assembly**
Type Designation(s) : **Jack Assembly-600kg, Jack Assembly-700kg**
Jack Assembly-800kg, Jack Assembly-1000kg
Jack Assembly-1200kg, Jack Assembly-1500kg
Serial No. : **N/A**
Year of Manufacture : **2013**
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s):

EN ISO12100 (2010)	Safety of machinery - General principles for design – Risk assessment and risk reduction
EN ISO12100-2/A1 (2009)	Safety of machinery - Basic concepts, general principles for design, Part 2 : Technical principles
EN 1494/A1 (2008)	Mobile or movable jacks and associated lifting equipment

following the provisions of Directive(s):

2006/42/EC	Directive on the approximation of the laws of Member States relating to machinery (OJ L157 Jun. 9, 2006)

Ulsan , Korea / Jul. 25. 2013 Hyun Duck, Cho President
(Place and date of issue)(name and signature or equivalent making of authorized person)

* T.C.F Compiling Person: **Safenet Limited (European Notified body : 1674)**
Denford Garage, Denford, Kettering Northants, NN14 4EQ, England

ONX4E080036

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 22 2020-09-24 8:01:17

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE (WITH TIRE MOBILITY KIT, IF EQUIPPED)



For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.

(1) Compressor

(2) Sealant bottle

The Tire Mobility Kit is a temporary fix to the tire and we recommend the tire to be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

CAUTION

When two or more tires are flat, do not use the tire mobility kit because the supported one sealant of Tire Mobility Kit is only used for one flat tire.

WARNING

Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit to repair punctures in the tire walls. This can result in an accident due to tire failure.

WARNING

Have your tire repaired as soon as possible. The tire may lose air pressure at any time after inflating with the Tire Mobility Kit.

Introduction

With the Tire Mobility Kit you stay mobile even after experiencing a tire puncture.

The compressor and sealing compound system effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger car tire caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tire.

After you ensure that the tire is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tire (distance up to 200 km (120 miles)) at a max. speed of (80 km/h (50 mph)) in order to reach a service station or tire dealer for the tire replacement.

It is possible that some tires, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tire may adversely affect tire performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving maneuvers, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is in use.

The Tire Mobility Kit is not designed or intended as a permanent tire repair method and is to be used for one tire only.

This instruction shows you step by step how to temporarily seal the puncture simply and reliably.

Read the section “Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit”.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 23 2020-09-24 8:01:17

WARNING

Do not use the TMK if a tire is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.

Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tire can be sealed using the TMK.

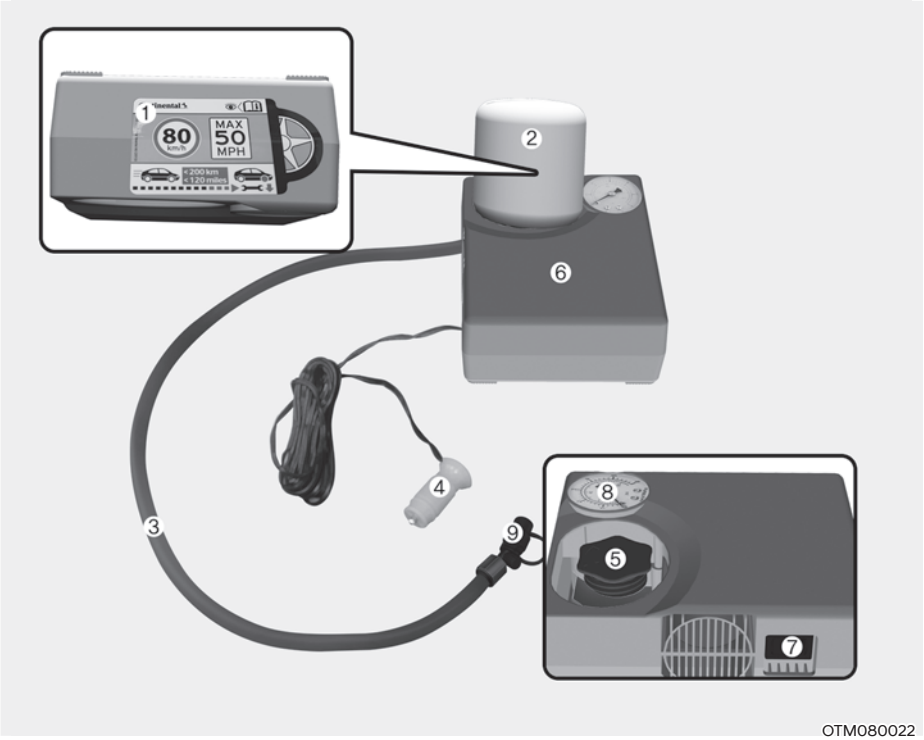
Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the Tire Mobility Kit away from moving traffic.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the Tire Mobility Kit for sealing/inflation passenger car tires. Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tire can be sealed using the tire mobility kit.
- Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tires.
- When the tire and wheel are damaged, do not use Tire Mobility Kit for your safety.
- Use of the Tire Mobility Kit may not be effective for tire damage larger than approximately 4 mm (16 inch).

  Please contact the nearest HYUNDAI dealer if the tire cannot be made roadworthy with the Tire Mobility Kit.
- Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if a tire is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.
- Do not remove any foreign objects such as nails or screws that have penetrated the tire.
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the vehicle in the ready ( ) mode. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the Tire Mobility Kit unattended while it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 minutes at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).
- In case of skin contact with the sealant, wash the area thoroughly with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of eye contact with the sealant, flush your eyes for at least 15 minutes. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of swallowing the sealant, rinse the mouth and drink plenty of water. However, never give anything to an unconscious person and seek medical attention immediately.
- Long time exposure to the sealant may cause damage to bodily tissue such as kidney, etc.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 24 2020-09-24 8:01:17

Components of the Tire Mobility Kit



OTM080022

1. Speed restriction label
2. Sealant and sealant bottle
3. Connection hose of compressor and tire
4. Connector and cable for connection of power outlet
5. Holder for the sealant bottle
6. Compressor
7. ON/OFF switch
8. Pressure gauge for displaying the tire inflation pressure
9. Valve for reducing tire inflation pressure

Connectors, cable and connection hose are stored in the compressor housing.

Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 25 2020-09-24 8:01:17

WARNING

Do not use the tire sealant after the sealant has expired (i.e. past the expiration date on the sealant container). This can increase the risk of tire failure.

WARNING

- **Keep out of reach of children.**
- **Avoid contact with eyes.**
- **Do not swallow.**

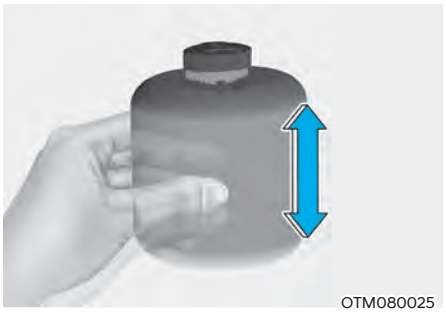
Using the Tire Mobility Kit

WARNING



ONX4080010

Detach the speed restriction label (1) from the sealant bottle (2), and place it in a highly visible place inside the vehicle such as on the steering wheel to remind the driver not to drive too fast.


OTM080025

1. Shake the sealant bottle (2).

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 26 2020-09-24 8:01:18

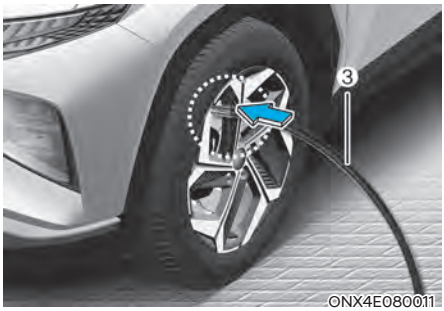


OTM080023

2. Remove the cover (A) of the sealant bottle (2) and compressor (6).


OTM080024

3. Connect the sealant bottle (2) and compressor (6).
4. Make sure that the valve (9) for reducing tire inflation pressure is closed.



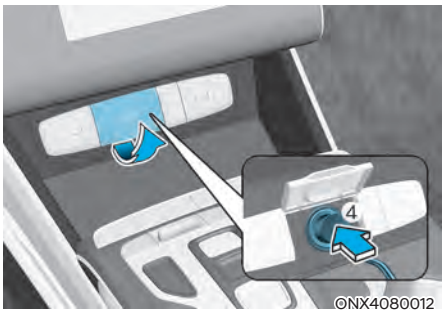
ONX4E080011

5. Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the defective and screw the connection hose (3) of the compressor and tire.

NOTICE

Securely install the sealant filling hose to the valve. If not, sealant may flow backward, possibly clogging the filling hose.

6. Make sure the compressor turns off by pressing [O] of the main switch (7).



ONX4080012

7. Connect the cable and connector (4) to the power outlet in the vehicle.
8. Start the vehicle.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 27 2020-09-24 8:01:18

9. With the vehicle ON (indicator ON), switch on the compressor and let it run for approximately 5~7 minutes to fill the sealant up to proper pressure. **(Refer to "Tire and Wheels" section in chapter2)**. The inflation pressure of the tire after filling is unimportant and will be checked/corrected later.

   Be careful not to overinflate the tire and stay away from the tire when filling it.

CAUTION

Do not attempt to drive your vehicle if the tire pressure is below 200 kpa (29 psi). This could result in an accident due to sudden tire failure.

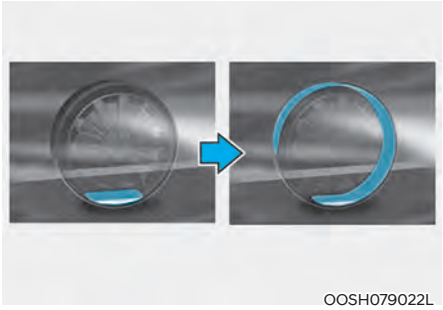
10. Switch off the compressor.
11. Detach the hoses from the sealant bottle connector and from the tire valve.

Return the Tire Mobility Kit to its storage location in the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not leave your vehicle running in a poorly ventilated area for extended periods of time. Carbon monoxide poisoning and suffocation can occur.

Distributing the sealant



OOSH079022L

12. Immediately drive approximately 7~10 km (4~6 miles or about 10 minutes) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tire.

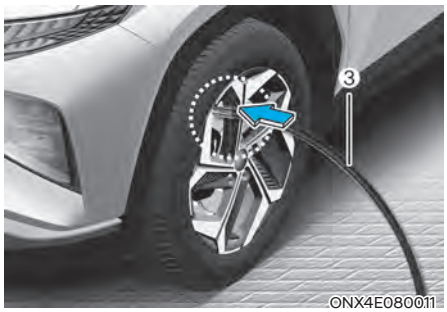
Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). If possible, do not fall below a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph).

While driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road.

Call for road side service or towing.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 28 2020-09-24 8:01:18

13. After driving approximately 7~10 km (4~6 miles or about 10 minutes), stop at a safe location.



14. Connect the connection hose (3) of the compressor and tire into the tire valve.
15. Connect cables (4) to the battery.
16. Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the recommended tire inflation.

    With the vehicle in the ready ( ) mode, proceed as follows.

    - **To increase the inflation pressure:**

      Switch on the compressor.
      To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.
    - **To reduce the inflation pressure:**

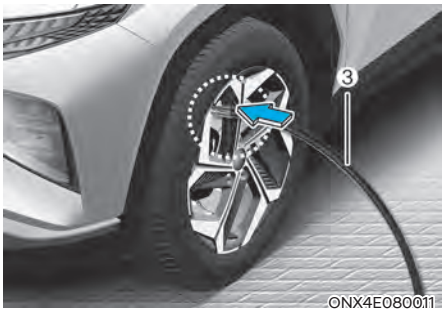
      Press the button (9) on the compressor.

NOTICE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

1. After driving approximately 7~10 km (4~6 miles or about 10 minutes), stop at a safe location.



2. Connect the connection hose (3) of the compressor and tire into the tire valve.
3. Connect cables (4) to the battery.
4. Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the recommended tire inflation.

   With the vehicle in the ready ( ) mode, proceed as follows.

   - **To increase the inflation pressure:**

     Switch on the compressor.
     To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.
   - **To reduce the inflation pressure:**

     Press the button (9) on the compressor.

NOTICE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 29 2020-09-24 8:01:18

Information

The pressure gauge may show higher than actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tire pressure, the compressor needs to be turned off.

CAUTION

If the inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to Distributing the sealant. Then repeat steps 1 to 4.

Use of the TMK may be ineffectual for tire damage larger than approximately 4 mm (0.16 in).

We recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer if the tire cannot be made roadworthy with the Tire Mobility Kit.

WARNING

The tire inflation pressure must be inflated to the proper pressure (Refer to “Tire and Wheels” section in chapter 2). If it is not, do not continue driving.

Call for road side service or towing.

CAUTION

Tire pressure sensor

The sealant on the tire pressure sensor and wheel should be removed when you replace the tire with a new one and inspect the tire pressure sensors. We recommend that you get this done at an authorized dealer.

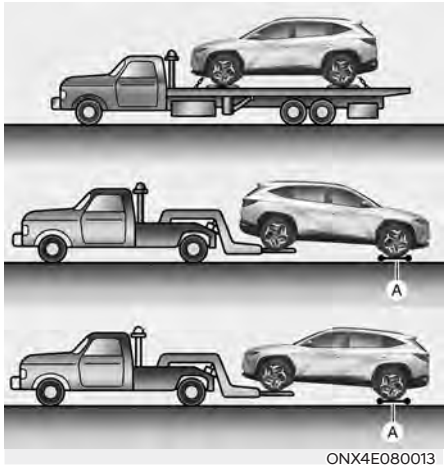
Information

When reinstalling the repaired or replaced tire and wheel on the vehicle, tighten the wheel bolt to 11~13 kgf·m (79~94 lbf·ft).

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 30 2020-09-24 8:01:18

TOWING

Towing service



ONX4E080013

[A] : Dollies

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer or a commercial tow-truck service.

Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

For 2WD vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the rear wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the rear wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the rear of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the front.

For 4WD vehicles, it must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.

NOTICE

Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.

CAUTION

- **Do not tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.**



ONX4E080015

- **Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.**



ONX4E080016

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 31 2020-09-24 8:01:18

When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies:

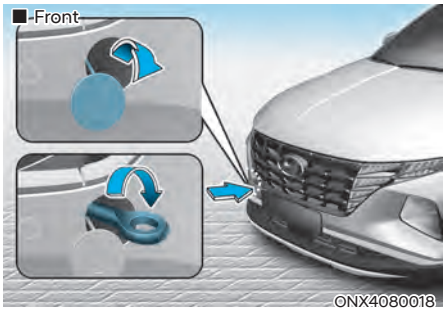
1. Release EPB before turning off the engine.
2. Place the ignition switch to the OFF position.
3. Change the gear to N (Neutral) while pressing the brake pedal.
4. Place the ignition switch to the ACC position.

CAUTION

Failure to shift the gear to N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transmission.

Removable towing hook

1. Open the tailgate, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.

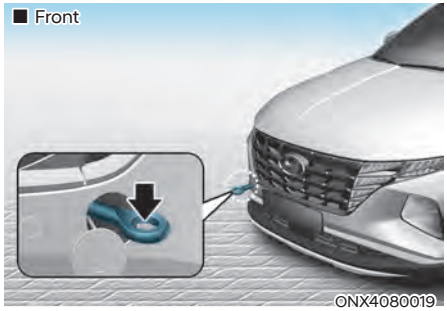




2. Remove the hole cover by pressing the lower part of the cover on the bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 32 2020-09-24 8:01:18

Emergency towing





If towing is necessary, we recommend you have it done by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer or a commercial tow truck service.

If a towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook at the front (or rear) of the vehicle.

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle with a cable or chain. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good working condition.

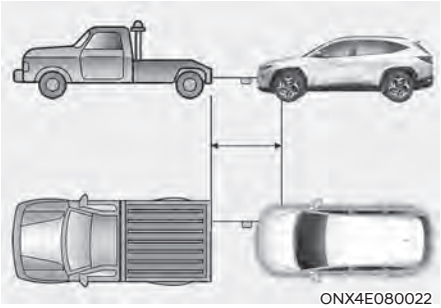
CAUTION

The driver must be in the vehicle for steering and braking operations when the vehicle is being towed. Passengers other than the driver must not be in the vehicle.

Always follow these emergency towing precautions:

- Place the ignition switch in the ACC position so the steering wheel is not locked.
- Shift the gear to N (Neutral).
- Release the parking brake.
- Depress the brake pedal with more force than normal as you will have reduced braking performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- Use a vehicle heavier than your own to tow your vehicle.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.
- Before emergency towing, check that the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply steady and even force.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 33 2020-09-24 8:01:19



ONX4E080022

- Use a towing cable or chain less than 5 m (16 feet) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm (12 inches) wide) in the middle of the cable or chain for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so the towing cable or chain remains tight during towing.
- Before towing, check the automatic transmission for fluid leaks under your vehicle. If the automatic transmission fluid is leaking, flatbed equipment or a towing dolly must be used.

NOTICE

Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle in a slow and gradual manner while maintaining tension on the tow rope or chain to start or drive the vehicle, otherwise tow hooks and the vehicle may be damaged.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle and vehicle components when towing:

- **Always pull straight ahead when using the towing hooks. Do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle.**
- **Do not use the towing hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.**
- **Limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h (10 mph) and drive less than 1.5 Km (1 mile) when towing to avoid serious damage to transmission. (for Automatic transmission vehicle)**

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 34 2020-09-24 8:01:19

EMERGENCY COMMODITY (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle is equipped with emergency commodities to help you respond to emergency situation.

Fire extinguisher

If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, follow these steps carefully.

1. Pull out the safety pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle towards the base of the fire.
3. Stand approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher. If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.
4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire. After the fire appears to be out, watch carefully since it may re-ignite.

First aid kit

Supplies for use in giving first aid such as scissors, bandage and adhesive tape, etc. are provided.

Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to problems.

Tire pressure gauge (if equipped)

Tires normally lose some air in day-to-day use, and you may have to add a air periodically and usually it is not a sign of a leaking tire, but of normal wear. Always check tire pressure when the tires are cold because tire pressure increases with temperature.

To check the tire pressure, take the following steps:

1. Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tire.
2. Press and hold the gauge against the tire valve. Some air will leak as you begin and more will leak if you don't press the gauge in firmly.
3. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
4. Read the tire pressure on the gauge to see whether the tire pressure is low or high.
5. Adjust the tire pressure to the specified pressure. Refer to "Tires and Wheels" section in chapter 2.
6. Reinstall the inflation valve cap.

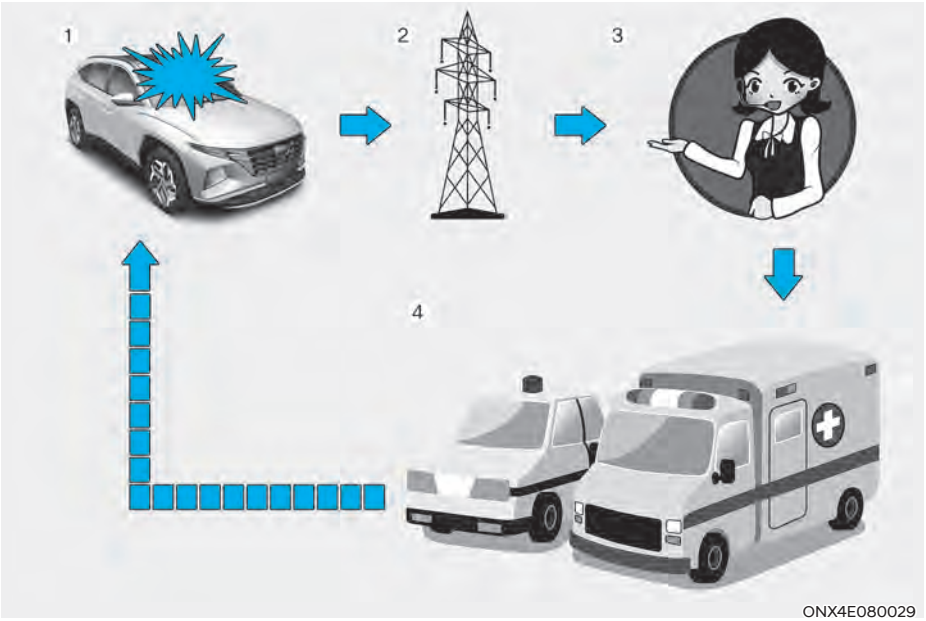
008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 35 2020-09-24 8:01:19

PAN-EUROPEAN ECALL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The vehicle is equipped with a device* connected with the Pan-European eCall system for making emergency call to response teams. The Pan-European eCall system is an automatic emergency call service made in event of a traffic accident or other** accidents on the roads of Europe. (only in countries with regulation on this system)

The system allows contacting with an officer of the single duty dispatch service in case of accidents on the roads of Europe. (only in countries with regulation on this system)

The Pan-European eCall system given conditions, stated in the Owner's Manual as well as Warranty and Service book transmits data to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) including such information as vehicle location, vehicle type, VIN (vehicle identification number of the vehicle).



ONX4E080029

1. Road accident
2. Wireless network
3. Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP)
4. Rescue

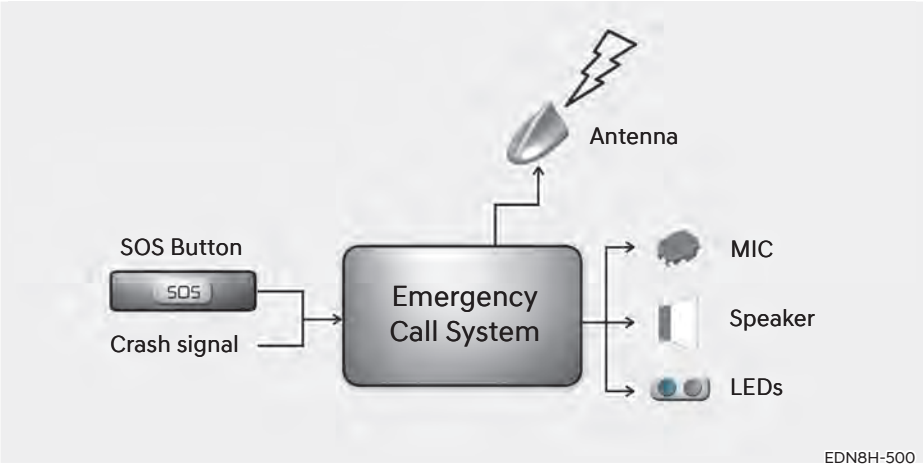
* Pan-European eCall device in the Owner's Manual means equipment, installed in the vehicle, which provides connection with the Pan-European eCall system.

** "Other accidents" mean any accidents on the roads of Europe (only in countries with regulation on this system) resulted in injured people and/or necessity of provision of assistance. In case of registration of any accident, it is necessary to stop a vehicle, press button SOS (location of the button is specified on the picture in the chapter "Pan-European eCall (IF EqUIPPED)") of the Owner's Manual. When making a call, the system gathers information about the vehicle (from which a call was made), after which connects the car with an officer of the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) to tell about the reason of the emergency call.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 36 2020-09-24 8:01:19

Once the data which is stored in the Pan-European eCall system is delivered to the rescue center to assist the driver and passengers with proper rescue operations, the data will be deleted after rescue operation is completed.

Description of the ecall in-vehicle system



Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: refer to this section. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of invehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident.

It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: refer to this section.

In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: refer to this section.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 37 2020-09-24 8:01:20

Information on data processing

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.

Types of data and its recipients

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:

- Vehicle Identification Number
- Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle)
- Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen)
- Vehicle recent locations and direction of travel
- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp
- Any additional data (if applicable): Not applicable

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112. Additional information (if available): Not applicable

(1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).

(2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).

(3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

Arrangements for data processing

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered. Additional remarks (if any): Not applicable

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status. Additional remarks (if any): Not applicable

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 38 2020-09-24 8:01:20

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.

The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated. Additional remarks (if any): Not applicable

Modalities for exercising data subject's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Not applicable

Pan-European eCall System



Elements of the Pan-European eCall system, installed in passenger compartment:

(1) SOS button

(2) LED

SOS button: the driver/passenger makes an emergency call to the single duty dispatch service by pressing the button.

LED: The red and green LED illuminates for 3 seconds when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. After that they will switch off at normal operation of the system.

If there are some problems in the system, the LED remains in red.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 39 2020-09-24 8:01:20

Automatic accident reporting



ONX4E080030

The Pan-European eCall device automatically makes an emergency call to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) for proper rescuing operations in event of vehicle accident.

For proper emergency services and support the Pan-European eCall system automatically transmits the accident data to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) when a traffic accident is detected.

In this case, the emergency call cannot be hung up by pressing the SOS button and the Pan-European eCall system remains connected until the emergency service officer, receiving the call, disconnects the emergency call.

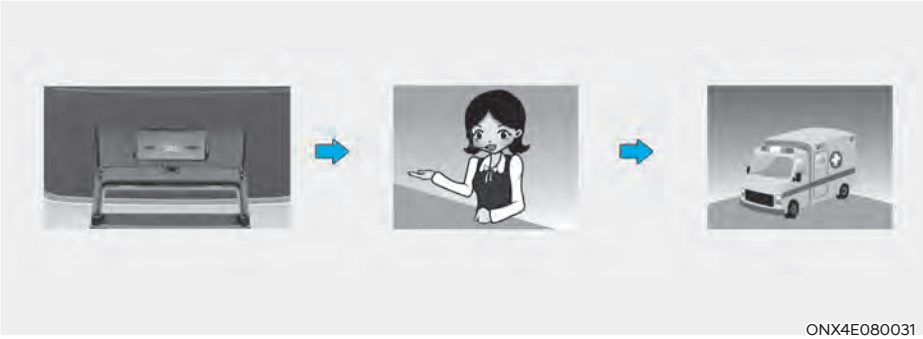
In minor traffic accidents the Pan-European eCall system may not execute an emergency call. However, an emergency call may be made manually by pressing the SOS button.

CAUTION

Operation of the system is impossible in case of absence of mobile transmission and GPS and Galileo signals.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 40 2020-09-24 8:01:20

Manual accident reporting



ONX4E080031

The driver or passenger manually can make an emergency call in the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP), by pressing SOS button to call the necessary emergency services.

A call to the emergency services through the Pan-European eCall system can be cancelled by pressing the SOS button again only before the call connection.

After activation of emergency call in the manual mode (for proper emergency services and support), the Pan-European eCall system automatically transmits the road accident data / or data on other accident to the officer of the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) (during emergency call) by pressing the SOS button.

If the driver or passenger accidentally presses the SOS button, it can be cancelled by pressing the button again. (For Russia)

If the driver or passenger accidentally presses the SOS button, it can be cancelled by pressing the button again in 3 seconds. It can't be canceled after that. (Except Russia)

In case of road accident or other accident for activation of emergency call in manual mode it is necessary:

1. Stop the vehicle in accordance with traffic rules to ensure safety to yourself and other participants of road traffic;
2. Press the SOS button, when pressing the button SOS registration of the device in the wireless telephonic communication networks is carried out, minimum data set about vehicle and its location is collected in accordance with of the technical requirements of the device. After that connection with the officer of the Pan-European eCall system is made for clearing up reasons (conditions) of the emergency call.
3. After clearing up reasons of the emergency call, the officer of the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) sends emergency services and completes the emergency call.

If the emergency call is not carried out in accordance with the procedure, mentioned above, the emergency call will be considered as erroneous.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 41 2020-09-24 8:01:20

WARNING

Emergency power supply of the Pan-European eCall system from the battery

- **The Pan-European eCall system battery supplies power during 1 hour in case main power source of the vehicle is cut off due to the collision during the emergency situations.**
- **The Pan-European eCall system battery should be replaced every 3 years. For more information refer to the Maintenance Schedule in chapter 9.**

LED illumination in red (system malfunction)

If red LED illuminates in normal driving conditions, this can indicate malfunction of the Pan-European eCall system. We recommend that you check the Pan-European eCall system at an authorized HYUNDAI dealer immediately.

Otherwise correct operation of the Pan-European eCall system device, installed in your vehicle is not guaranteed. Owner of the vehicle incurs liability for consequences, occurred as a result of nonobservance of conditions, mentioned above.

Arbitrary Removal or Modification

The Pan-European eCall system calls emergency services for assistance. Thus, any arbitrary removal or changes to the Pan-European eCall system settings may affect your driving safety. Also, it may even make an erroneous emergency call to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP). Thereby, we kindly ask you not to make any changes by yourself or by the third parties in the settings of the equipment of the Pan-European eCall system, installed in your vehicle.

008_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 42 2020-09-24 8:01:20

9. Maintenance

Engine compartment 9-3

Maintenance services 9-4
- Owner's responsibility 9-4
- Owner maintenance precautions 9-4

Owner maintenance 9-5
- Owner maintenance schedule 9-5

Scheduled maintenance services 9-7
- Normal maintenance schedule- For Europe 9-8
- Maintenance under severe usage conditions- For Europe 9-12
- Normal maintenance schedule - Except Europe 9-14
- Maintenance under severe usage conditions - Except Europe 9-18

Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 9-20

Engine oil 9-22
- Checking the engine oil level 9-22
- Checking the engine oil and filter 9-23

Engine coolant/inverter coolant 9-24
- Checking the coolant level 9-24
- Changing coolant 9-26

Hybrid Starter & Generator (HSG) belt 9-27
- Checking the Hybrid Starter & Generator (HSG) belt 9-27

Brake fluid 9-27
- Checking the brake fluid level 9-27

Washer fluid 9-28
- Checking the washer fluid level 9-28

Air cleaner 9-29
- Filter replacement 9-29

Cabin air filter 9-30
- Filter inspection 9-30
- Filter replacement 9-30

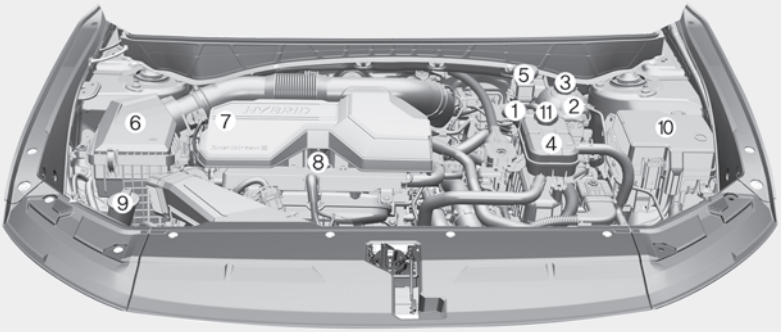
Wiper blades 9-31
- Blade inspection 9-31
- Blade replacement 9-31

Battery 9-35
For best battery service 9-36
Battery capacity label 9-37
Battery recharging 9-37
Reset items 9-38
Tires and wheels 9-39
Tire care 9-39
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures 9-39
Check tire inflation pressure 9-40
Tire rotation 9-41
Wheel alignment and tire balance 9-42
Tire replacement 9-42
Wheel replacement 9-43
Tire traction 9-43
Tire maintenance 9-43
Tire sidewall labeling 9-44
Low aspect ratio tires 9-47
Fuses 9-48
Instrument panel fuse replacement 9-49
Engine compartment panel fuse replacement 9-50
Fuse/relay panel description 9-51
Light bulbs 9-60
Headlamp, position lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement 9-61
Headlamp aiming (For Europe) 9-63
Side repeater lamp replacement 9-67
Rear combination lamp replacement 9-67
High mounted stop lamp replacement 9-70
License plate lamp replacement 9-71
Interior light replacement 9-71
Appearance care 9-73
Exterior care 9-73
Interior care 9-77
Emission control system 9-80
Procedure for entering forced engine activation mode 9-83

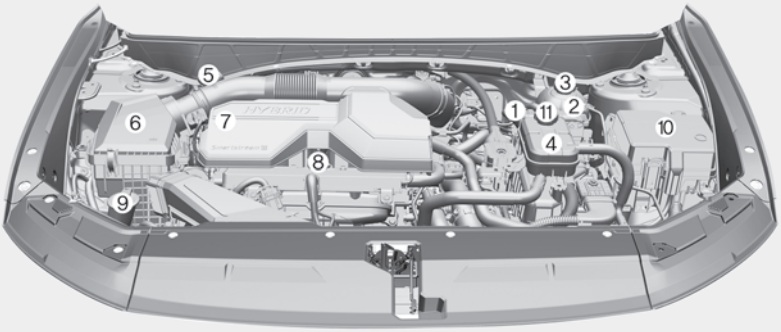
9

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ Smartstream G1.6 T-GDi HEV
- Left-hand drive



- Right-hand drive



The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

ONX4EH090001/ ONX4EH090001R

1. ECU
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Engine coolant reservoir cap
4. Inverter coolant reservoir
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6. Air cleaner
7. Engine oil filler cap
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
10. Fuse box
11. Invert coolant reservoir cap

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 3 2020-09-24 8:04:08

MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. An authorized HYUNDAI dealer meets HYUNDAI's high service quality standards and receives technical support from HYUNDAI in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

Owner's responsibility

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Service Passport.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

Owner maintenance precautions

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury. This chapter provides instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

Your vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle.

NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Service Passport provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 4 2020-09-24 8:04:08

OWNER MAINTENANCE

WARNING

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that having it done by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. ALWAYS follow these precautions for performing maintenance work:

- **Park your vehicle on level ground, move the shift button into the P (Park) position, apply the parking brake, and place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.**
- **Block the tires (front and back) to prevent the vehicle from moving.**

  Remove loose clothing or jewelry that can become entangled in moving parts.
- **If you must run the engine during maintenance, do so out doors or in an area with plenty of ventilation.**
- **Keep flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery and fuel-related parts.**

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that we recommend to be performed by the owner or an authorized HYUNDAI dealer at the frequencies indicatedto help ensure safe, depenable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance vehicle checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labor, parts and lubricants used.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for fuel:

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level.
- Check for low or under-inflated tires.

WARNING

Be careful when checking your engine coolant/inverter coolant level when the engine is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns and other injuries.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 5 2020-09-24 8:04:08

While operating your vehicle:

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice if there is any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when traveling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transmission occurs, check the transmission fluid level.
- Check the automatic transmission P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

At least monthly:

- Check coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tires including the spare for tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Check for loose wheel lug nuts.

At least twice a year: (i.e., every Spring and Autumn)

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windshield washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with a clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlamp alignment.
- Check muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the seat belts for wear and function.

At least once a year:

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and hood hinges.
- Lubricate door and hood locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weather strips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate automatic transmission linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 6 2020-09-24 8:04:08

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, you must follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10miles) in freezing temperature
- Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust conditions
- Driving in heavy traffic area
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly
- Using for towing or camping, and driving with loading on the roof
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing
- Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go condition
- Engine oil usage which is not recommended (mineral type, semi-synthetic, lower grade, etc.)

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 7 2020-09-24 8:04:08

Normal maintenance schedule- For Europe

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance.
Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Miles×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Km×1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Engine oil and engine oil filter *1	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Air cleaner filter	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Fuel additives *2	Add every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

*1 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.

*2 : If good quality gasolines meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized HYUNDAI dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

✳ The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, we recommend replacing the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consulting with an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for details.

** The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount of oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 8 2020-09-24 8:04:08

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 9

Normal maintenance schedule- For Europe

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Miles×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Km×1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Spark plugs *3	Replace every 165,000 km (102,500 miles)							
Vapor hose and fuel filler cap				I				I
Fuel tank air filter				I				I
Vacuum hose	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel lines, hoses and connections				I				I
HSG (Hybrid Starter & Generator) belt *4	Inspect every 15,000km(10,000 miles) or 12 months, replace every 105,000km(70,000 miles) or 84 months							

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.
*3 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.
*4 : Inspect HSG belt for evidence of cuts, crocks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. If drive belt noise occurs, readjust drive belt tension before replacement.

2020-09-24 8:04:08

Normal maintenance schedule- For Europe

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Miles×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Km×1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Cooling system	Inspect “Coolant level adjustment and leak” every day							
	At first, inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Engine coolant / Inverter coolant *5	At first, replace 210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 120 months after that, replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months *6							
All electrical systems				I				I
Pan-European eCall system battery (if equipped)	Replace every 3 years							
Automatic transmission fluid	No check, No service required							
Brake lines, hoses and connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake pedal		I		I		I		I
Parking brake		I		I		I		I
Brake fluid	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Brake discs and pads	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

*5 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine/hybrid system damage.

*6 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it’s interval when you do maintenance of other items.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 10 2020-09-24 8:04:08

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 11

Normal maintenance schedule- For Europe

MAINTENANCE ITEM \ MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Miles×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Km×1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Driveshaft and boots		I		I		I		I
Propeller shaft		I		I		I		I
Tire (pressure & tread wear)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front suspension ball joints	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Bolt and nuts on chassis and body	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioner refrigerant	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioner compressor	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cabin air filter		R		R		R		R
Exhaust system		I		I		I		I
Rear differential oil (4WD) *7				I				I
Transfer case oil (4WD) *7				I				I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.
*7 : Transfer case oil / Rear differential oil should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water

2020-09-24 8:04:08

Maintenance under severe usage conditions- For Europe

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.
R : Replace
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance Intervals	Driving condition
Engine oil and filter	R	Replace every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Air cleaner filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Spark plugs	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	A, B, H, I
HSG (Hybrid Starter & Generator) belt	R	Every 45,000 km (30,000 miles) or 36 months	C, D, E, K
	I	Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months	
Automatic transmission fluid	R	Replace every 90,000 km (56,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 12 2020-09-24 8:04:08

Maintenance under severe usage conditions- For Europe

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance Intervals	Driving condition
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Driveshaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Propeller shaft	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Cabin air filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Rear differential oil (4WD)	R	Replace every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, G, H, I, J
Transfer case oil (4WD)	R	Replace every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, G, H, I, J

Severe driving conditions

A. Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature
B. Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
C. Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt spread roads
D. Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E. Driving in heavy dust conditions
F. Driving in heavy traffic area
G. Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
H. Using for towing or camping, and driving with loading on the roof
I. Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
J. Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration
K. Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions
L. Engine oil usage which is not recommended(mineral type, semi-synthetic, lower grade, etc.)

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 13 2020-09-24 8:04:08

Normal maintenance schedule - Except Europe

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance.
Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	Miles×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
	Km×1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Engine oil and engine oil filter *1		Replace every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months							
Fuel additives *3		Replace every 10,000 km (6,200 miles) or 12 months							
Air cleaner filter	For Middle East *2	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Except Middle East *2	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

*1 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.

*2 : Middle East includes Libya, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt and Iran.

*3 : If good quality gasolines meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized HYUNDAI dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

** The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount of oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 14 2020-09-24 8:04:08

Normal maintenance schedule - Except Europe

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Miles×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Km×1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Spark plugs *4	Replace every 165,000 km (102,500 miles)							
Vapor hose and fuel filler cap				I				I
Fuel tank air filter		I		R		I		R
Fuel filter *5		I		R		I		R
Vacuum hose	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel lines, hoses and connections				I				I
HSG (Hybrid Starter & Generator) belt *6	Inspect every 15,000km(10,000 miles) or 12 months, replace every 105,000km(70,000 miles) or 84 months							

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

*4 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

*5 : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem, etc, we recommend replacing the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consulting with an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for details.

*6 : Inspect HSG belt for evidence of cuts, crocks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. If drive belt noise occurs, readjust drive belt tension before replacement.

Normal maintenance schedule - Except Europe

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Miles×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Km×1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Cooling system	Inspect “Coolant level adjustment and leak” every day							
	At first, inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Engine coolant / Inverter coolant *7	At first, replace 210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 120 months after that, replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months*8							
All electrical systems		I		I		I		I
Pan-European eCall system battery (if equipped)	Replace every 3 years							
Automatic transmission fluid	No check, No service required							
Brake lines, hoses and connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake pedal		I		I		I		I
Parking brake		I		I		I		I
Brake fluid	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Brake discs and pads	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

*7 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine/hybrid system damage.

*8 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it’s interval when you do maintenance of other items.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 16 2020-09-24 8:04:08

Normal maintenance schedule - Except Europe

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Miles×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Km×1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Driveshaft and boots		I		I		I		I
Propeller shaft		I		I		I		I
Tire (pressure & tread wear)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front suspension ball joints	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Bolt and nuts on chassis and body	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioner refrigerant	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioner compressor	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cabin air filter	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Exhaust system		I		I		I		I
Rear differential oil (4WD) *9				I				I
Transfer case oil (4WD) *9				I				I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.
*9 : Transfer case oil / Rear differential oil should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water

Maintenance under severe usage conditions - Except Europe

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.
R : Replace
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance Intervals	Driving condition
Engine oil and engine oil filter	R	Replace every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Air cleaner filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Spark plugs	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	A, B, H, I
HSG (Hybrid Starter & Generator) belt	R	Every 45,000 km (30,000 miles) or 36 months	C, D, E, K
	I	Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months	
Automatic transmission fluid	R	Every 100,000 km (62,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 18 2020-09-24 8:04:09

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance Intervals	Driving condition
Driveshaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Propeller shaft	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Cabin air filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Rear differential oil (4WD)	R	Replace every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, G, H, I, J
Transfer case oil (4WD)	R	Replace every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, G, H, I, J

Severe driving conditions

A. Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature
B. Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
C. Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt spread roads
D. Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E. Driving in heavy dust conditions
F. Driving in heavy traffic area
G. Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
H. Using for towing or camping, and driving with loading on the roof
I. Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
J. Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration
K. Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions
L. Engine oil usage which is not recommended(mineral type, semi-synthetic, lower grade, etc.)

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 19 2020-09-24 8:04:09

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

HSG (Hybrid Starter & Generator) belt

Inspect all HSG belt for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary.

The HSG belt should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend an authorized HYUNDAI dealer replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately.

Fuel filter

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently. After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. We recommend Fuel Filters to be installed by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Vapor hose and fuel filler cap

The vapor hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure a new vapor hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

Air cleaner filter

A genuine HYUNDAI air cleaner filter is recommended when the filter is replaced.

Spark plugs

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

Cooling system

Check cooling system components, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Engine coolant/inverter coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Automatic transmission fluid

Automatic transmission fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.

We recommend that the automatic transmission fluid is changed by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer according to the maintenance schedule.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 20 2020-09-24 8:04:09

Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

Brake fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between the MIN and the MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 4 specification.

Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system.

Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads, the disc, and the rotor for any excessive wear-out. Inspect calipers for any fluid leakage

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, refer to the HYUNDAI web site.

(http://service.hyundai-motor.com)

Exhaust pipe and muffler

Visually inspect the exhaust pipes, muffler and hangers for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Start the engine and listen carefully for any exhaust gas leakage. Tighten connections or replace parts as necessary.

Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and the hybrid system off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel. Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage.

Replace any damaged parts.

Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

Air conditioning refrigerant

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

Propeller shaft

Check the propeller shaft, boots, clamps, rubber couplings and center-bearing rubber for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and if necessary, repack the grease.

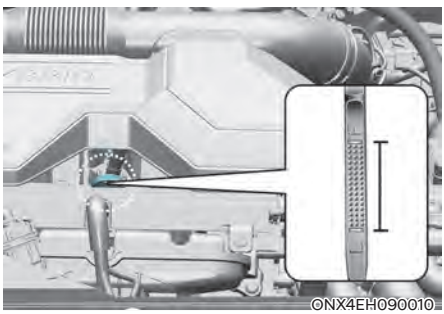
009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 21 2020-09-24 8:04:09

ENGINE OIL

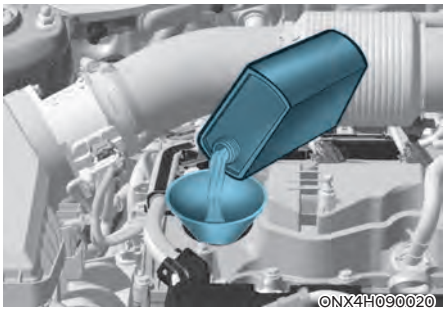
Checking the engine oil level

Engine oil is used for lubrication and cooling, so it is gradually consumed during driving the vehicle. Regularly check and manage the oil level using the following procedure.

1. Follow all of the oil manufacturer's precautions.
2. Be sure the vehicle is on the level ground in P (Park) with the parking brake set and the wheels blocked.
3. Turn the engine on and allow the engine to reach normal operating temperature.
4. Turn the engine off and wait about 15 minutes for the oil to return to the oil pan.
5. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.



6. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F (Full) and L (Low).



7. Check if the oil level is between the F-L line and refill it if the oil level is near the L line.

Use only the specified engine oil (Refer to "Recommended Lubricants and Capacities" section in chapter 2).

NOTICE

To prevent damage to your engine:

- **Do not overfill with engine oil. Add oil in small quantities and recheck level to ensure engine is not overfilled.**
- **Do not spill engine oil when adding or changing engine oil. Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components. Wipe off spilled oil immediately.**
- **The engine oil consumption may increase while you break in a new vehicle and it will be stabilized after driving 6,000 km.**
- **The engine oil consumption can be affected by driving habits, climate conditions, traffic conditions, oil quality, etc. Therefore, it is recommended that you inspect the engine oil level regularly and refill it if necessary.**
- **The engine oil change interval is set for the purpose of preventing oil deterioration, and is not related the amount of oil consumption; so, check and refill the amount of the oil regularly.**

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 22 2020-09-24 8:04:09

Checking the engine oil and filter



OCN7080082L

We recommend that the engine oil and filter be changed by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.

WARNING

- **If exceeding the maintenance schedule for replacement of engine oil, the engine oil performance may deteriorate and the engine condition may be affected. Therefore, the replacement cycle should be observed.**
- **To keep the engine in optimal condition, use recommended engine oil. If not using the recommended oil, replace it according to the severe usage maintenance conditions.**

WARNING

- **Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time.**
- **Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.**
- **If the oil pressure lowers due to insufficient engine oil, etc., the engine oil pressure warning light turns on and an enhanced engine protection system that limits the engine's power is activated. After that, engine warning light turns on if driving repeatedly and continuously. When oil pressure is restored to an optimal level, the oil pressure warning light and the protection system that limits engine power will turn off.**

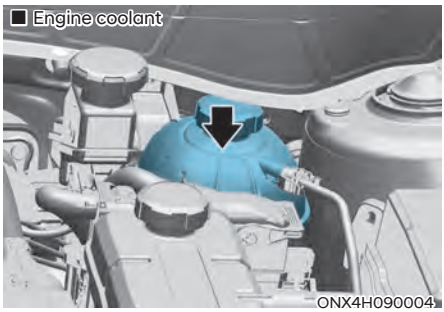
009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 23 2020-09-24 8:04:09

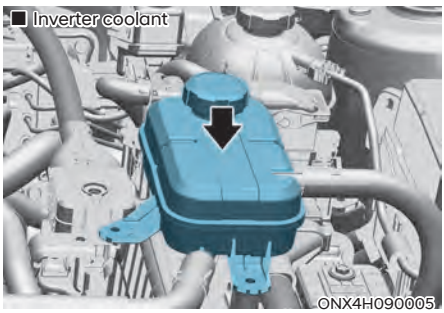
ENGINE COOLANT/INVERTER COOLANT

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year-round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season and before traveling to a colder climate.

Checking the coolant level



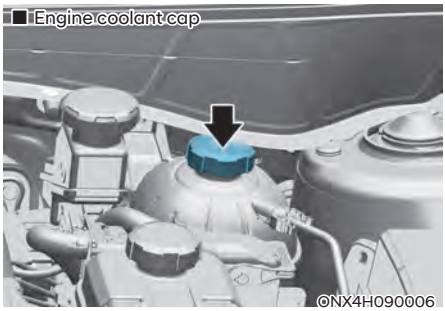


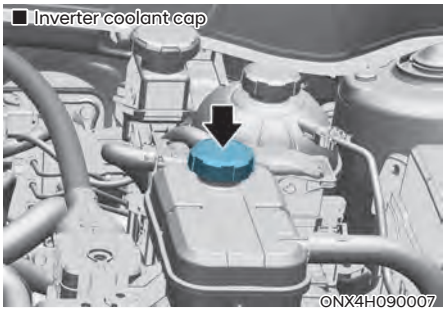
Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between the MAX and the MIN marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add the selected anti-freeze according to the proper coolant mix ratio to bring the level to the MAX mark, but do not overfill.

If frequent additions are required, we recommend that you see an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for a cooling system inspection.





WARNING

Never remove the engine coolant cap and/or inverter coolant cap or the drain plug while the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.

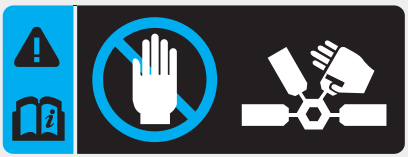
009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 24 2020-09-24 8:04:09

Turn the vehicle off and wait until the engine cools down. Use extreme care when removing the engine coolant cap and/or inverter coolant cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back while the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.

Information

The engine coolant and/or inverter coolant level is influenced by the hybrid system temperature. Before checking or refilling the engine coolant and/or inverter coolant, turn the hybrid vehicle off.

WARNING



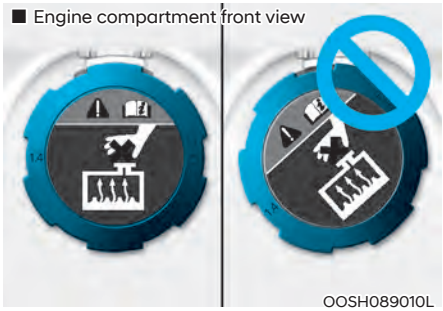
The electric motor for the cooling fan may continue to operate or start up when the engine is not running and can cause serious injury. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the rotating fan blades of the cooling fan.

Always turn off the vehicle unless the vehicle has to be inspected with the engine on. Be cautious as the cooling fan may operate if the negative (-) battery terminal is not disconnected.

WARNING

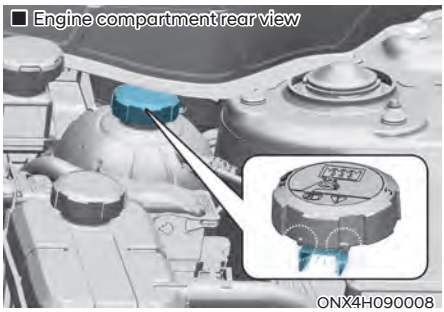
Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refilling coolant. Otherwise the engine could be overheated while driving.

■ Engine compartment front view



1. Check if the coolant cap label is straight In front.

■ Engine compartment rear view



2. Make sure that the tiny protrusions inside the coolant cap is securely interlocked.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 25 2020-09-24 8:04:10

Recommended coolant

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water, distilled water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory.
- An incorrect coolant mixture can result in severe malfunction or engine/hybrid system damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an phosphate-based ethylene glycol coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- Do not use alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixing percentage, refer to the following table:

Ambient Temperature	Mixture Percentage (volume)	
	Antifreeze	Water
-15°C (5°F)	35	65
-25°C (-31°F)	40	60
-35°C (31°F)	50	50
-45°C (-49°F)	60	40

Information

If in doubt about the mix ratio, a 50% water and 50% antifreeze mix is the easiest to mix together as it will be the same quantity of each. It is suitable to use for most temperature ranges of -35°C (-31°F) and higher.

Changing coolant

We recommend that coolant be changed by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.

WARNING

Do not use engine coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.

Engine coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Engine coolant may also cause damage to paint and body trim.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to engine parts, put a thick towel around the engine coolant cap and/or inverter coolant cap before refilling the coolant to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts, such as the alternator.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 26 2020-09-24 8:04:10

HYBRID STARTER & GENERATOR (HSG) BELT

Checking the Hybrid Starter & Generator (HSG) belt

We recommend that you have the Hybrid Starter & Generator (HSG) belt inspected or replaced according to the Maintenance Schedule in this chapter by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

CAUTION

When the HSG belt is worn out or damaged, replace the belt.

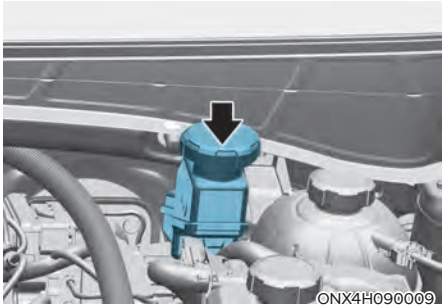
Otherwise, it may cause engine overheating or battery discharge.

WARNING

- **Turn the vehicle off while you inspect the engine or Hybrid Starter & Generator (HSG) belt. Otherwise it may result in serious injury.**
- **Keep hands, clothing etc. away from the Hybrid Starter & Generator (HSG) belt.**

BRAKE FLUID

Checking the brake fluid level


ONX4H090009

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add the specified brake fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the brake system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING

If the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid this could indicate a leak in the brake system. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 27 2020-09-24 8:04:10

WARNING

Do not allow brake fluid to come in contact with your eyes. If brake fluid comes in contact with your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

NOTICE

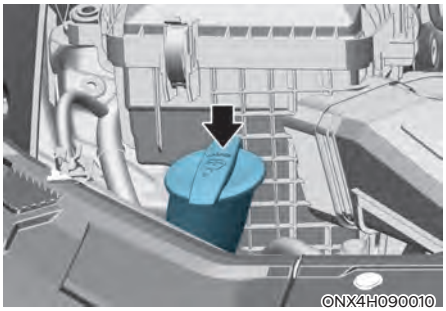
- **Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.**
- **Brake fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should NEVER be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly.**
- **Do not use the wrong kind of brake fluid. A few drops of mineral based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake system can damage brake system parts.**

Information

Use only the specified brake fluid (refer to "Recommended Lubricants and Capacities" section in chapter 2).

WASHER FLUID

Checking the washer fluid level



Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

WARNING

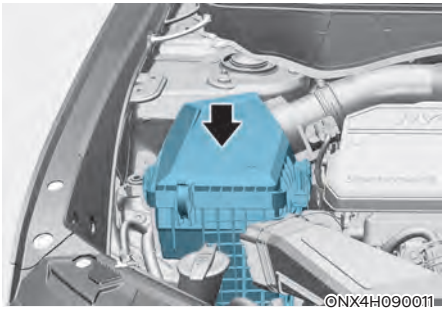
To prevent serious injury or death, take the following safety precautions when using washer fluid:

- **Do not use engine coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir. Engine coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Washer fluid may contain alcohol and can be flammable.**
- **Do not drink washer fluid and avoid contact with skin. Washer fluid is harmful to humans and animals.**
- **Keep washer fluid away from children and animals.**

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 28 2020-09-24 8:04:10

AIR CLEANER

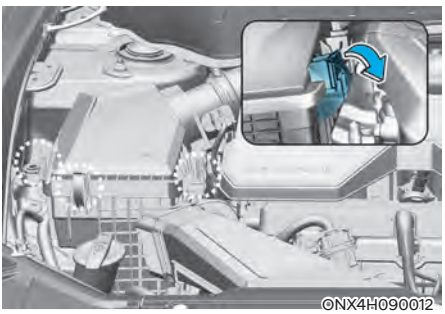
Filter replacement



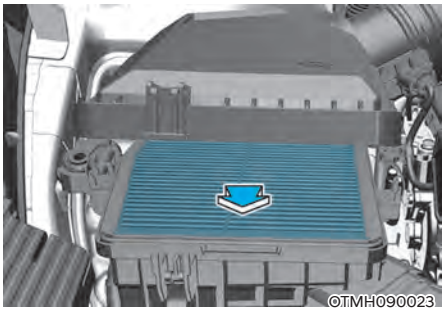
Do not attempt to wash or to rinse it, as water will damage the filter.

If soiled, the air cleaner filter must be replaced.

Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.



1. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.



2. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner.
3. Replace the air cleaner filter.
4. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.
5. Check that the cover is firmly installed.

Information

If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the air cleaner filter more often than the usual recommended intervals (Refer to "Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" section in this chapter).

NOTICE

- **Do not drive with the air cleaner filter removed. This will result in excessive engine wear.**
- **When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.**
- **Use HYUNDAI genuine parts or the equivalent speficied for your vehicle. Use of parts without the matching quality could damage the air flow sensor.**

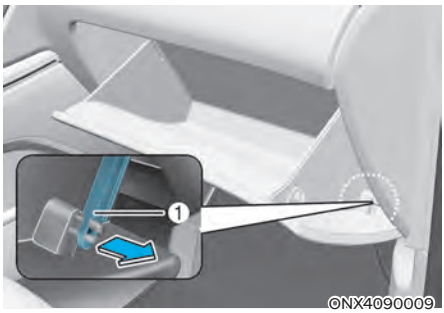
009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 29 2020-09-24 8:04:10

CABIN AIR FILTER

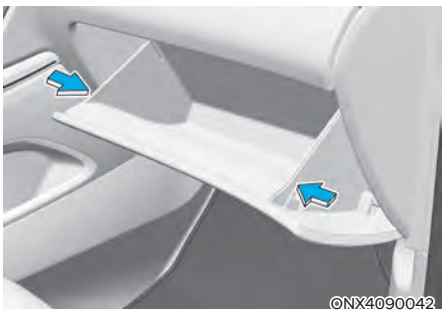
Filter inspection

The cabin air filter should be replaced according to the Maintenance Schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced sooner. Replace the cabin air filter by following the procedure below and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

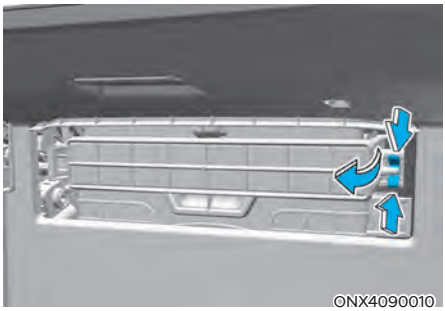
Filter replacement



1. Open the glove box and remove the support rod (1).

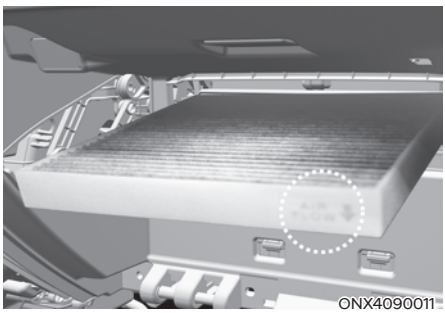


2. Push in both sides of the glove box as shown. This will ensure that the glove box stopper pins will get released from its holding location allowing the glove box to hang.



3. Press and hold the lock on the right side of the cover.
4. Pull out the cover.
5. Replace the cabin air filter.
6. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

NOTICE



Install a new cabin air filter in the correct direction with the arrow symbol (↓) facing downwards, to prevent noise and reduce effectiveness.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 30 2020-09-24 8:04:10

WIPER BLADES

Blade inspection

Contamination of either the windshield or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windshield wipers.

Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, arms or other components, do not:

- **Use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.**
- **Attempt to move the wipers manually.**
- **Use non-specified wiper blades.**

Information

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windshield difficult to clean.

Information

Wiper blades are consumable items. Normal wear of the wipers may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

NOTICE

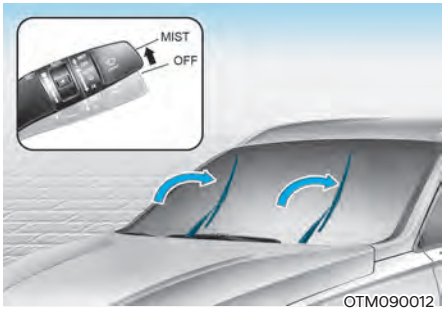
The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.

NOTICE

- **In order to prevent damage to the hood and the wiper arms, the wiper arms should only be lifted when in the top wiping position.**
- **Always return the wiper arms to the windshield before driving.**

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 31 2020-09-24 8:04:10

Front windshield wiper service positions

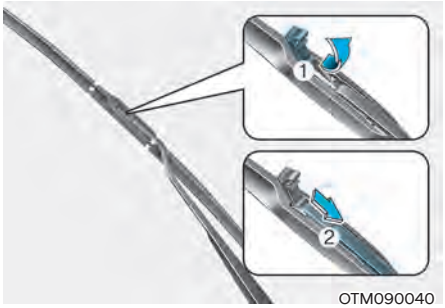


This vehicle has a “hidden” wiper design which means that the wipers cannot be lifted when they are in their bottom resting position.

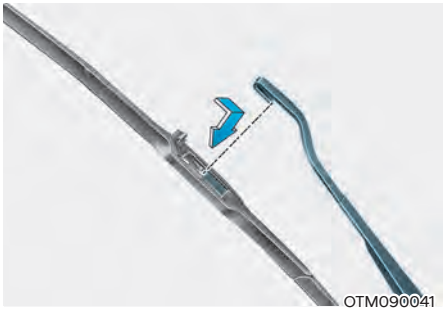
1. Within 20 seconds of turning off the engine, lift and hold the wiper lever up to the MIST (or down to the V) position for about 2 seconds until the wipers move to the top wipe position.
2. At this time you can lift the wipers off the windshield.
3. Gently put the wipers back down onto the windshield.
4. Turn the wipers to any ON position to return the wipers to the bottom resting position.



1. Raise the wiper arm.



2. Lift up the wiper blade clip. Then pull down the blade assembly and remove it.



3. Install the new blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.
4. Return the wiper arm on the windshield.

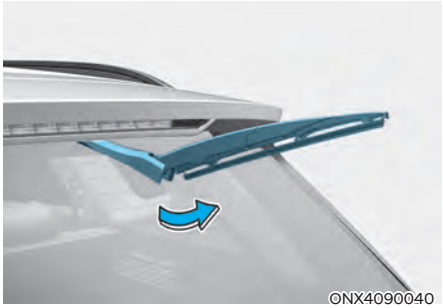
009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 32 2020-09-24 8:04:11

Rear window wiper blade replacement

Move the rear wiper to the bottom middle part, and lift up the wiper arm. Pull the wiper blade to remove it.


ONX4090039

1. Within 20 seconds after the vehicle ignition is OFF, pull down the wiper lever to MIST position for over 2 seconds until the wiper moves down to the bottom middle part.


ONX4090040

2. Raise the wiper arm.


ONX4E090051

3. Lift up the wiper blade, and pull it out.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 33 2020-09-24 8:04:11



ONX4E090052

4. Install the new blade assembly by inserting the center part into the slot in the wiper arm until it clicks into place.

   If the replacement is complete, put down the wiper arm to place it on the rear windshield, and turn the vehicle ignition to ON and operate the wipers to check the blade is installed correctly.
5. Make sure the blade assembly is installed firmly by trying to pull it slightly.

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, we recommend that the wiper blade be replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

CAUTION

If the wiper arm receives too much force while pulling the blade, the center part may be damaged.

CAUTION

- **The wiper could not operate for approx. 10 seconds when the wiper is operated without washer fluid or the blades are frozen. This is not a malfunction, it is a wiper protection system activated by motor overload circuit within the wiper motor.**
- **The front windshield should be cleaned with water hose and wiped with clean towel with wiper blades raised up. Also, the wiper blades should be wiped clean when the grease or wax is applied to the blades.**

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 34 2020-09-24 8:04:11

BATTERY

WARNING

To prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:



Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of reach of children.



Batteries contain sulfuric acid which is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.

If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.**
- **NEVER attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.**
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. NEVER touch these components with the engine running or when the Engine Start/ Stop button is in the ON position.**

NOTICE

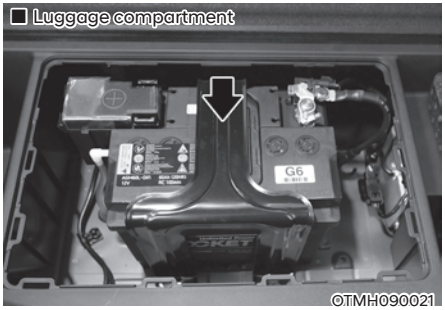
- **When you do not use the vehicle for a long time in a low temperature area, disconnect the battery and keep it indoors.**
- **Always charge the battery fully to prevent battery case damage in low temperature areas.**

NOTICE

If you connect unauthorized electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorized devices.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 35 2020-09-24 8:04:11

For best battery service



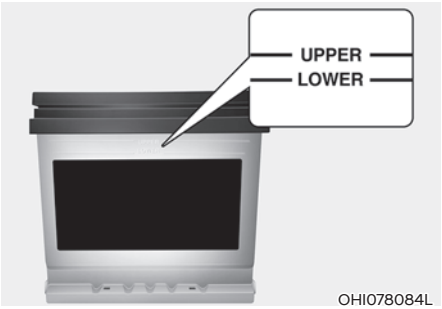
- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

Information

To check the batteries, open the cover (B).

For 7-seater, the clips (A) must be removed first to open the cover.

Information - For batteries marked with UPPER and LOWER



If your vehicle is equipped with a battery marked with LOWER (MIN) and UPPER (MAX) on the side, you should check the electrolyte level.

The electrolyte level should be between LOWER (MIN) and UPPER (MAX). When the electrolyte level is low, add distilled (or de-mineralized) water. (Never add sulfuric acids or other electrolyte).

Be careful not to spill distilled (or demineralized) water over the battery surface or other adjacent components.

Also, do not overfill the battery cells.

If not, it may corrode the battery or other components. Finally, securely close the cell cap. However, we recommend you to contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for better battery service.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 36 2020-09-24 8:04:11

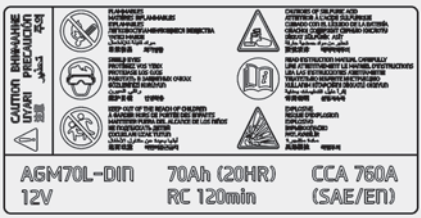
Battery capacity label

■ Type A



OTM090063L

■ Type B



OTM090064L

1. MF68L-DIN : The HYUNDAI model name of battery
2. 12V : The nominal voltage
3. 68Ah (20HR) : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
4. RC 110min : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
5. 600A : The cold-test current in amperes by SAE/EN

Battery recharging

By battery charger

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged over a short time (because, for example, the headlamps or interior lights were left on while the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electrical load while the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

WARNING

Always follow these instructions when recharging your vehicle's battery to avoid the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH from explosions or acid burns:

- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.**
- **Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.**
- **Always work outdoors or in an area with plenty of ventilation.**
- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**
- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in a well ventilated area.**
- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin boiling violently.**

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 37 2020-09-24 8:04:12

- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected. Disconnect the battery charger in the following order:**
  1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
  2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
  3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**
- **We recommend that you use batteries for replacement from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

NOTICE

AGM battery (if equipped)

- **Absorbent Glass Matt (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and we recommend that the AGM battery be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.**
- **When replacing the AGM battery, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.**

By jump starting

After a jump start from a good battery, drive the vehicle for 20-30 minutes before it is shutoff. The vehicle may not restart if you shut it off before the battery had a chance to adequately recharge. See “Jump Starting” in chapter 8 for more information on jump starting procedures.

Information



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

Reset items

The following items may need to be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (see chapter 5)
- Sunroof (see chapter 5)
- Trip computer (see chapter 5)
- Climate control system (see chapter 5)
- Driver position memory system (see chapter 5)
- Clock (see chapter 5)
- Infotainment system (see infotainment system manual)

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 38 2020-09-24 8:04:12

TIRES AND WHEELS

WARNING

Tire failure may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. To reduce risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, take the following precautions:

- **Inspect your tires monthly for proper inflation as well as wear and damage.**
- **The recommended cold tire pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tire label located on the driver's side center pillar. Always use a tire pressure gauge to measure tire pressure. Tires with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling.**
- **Check the pressure of the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tires on your vehicle.**
- **Replace tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tires can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, or traction.**
- **ALWAYS replace tires with the same size, type, construction and tread pattern as each tire that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tires and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) resulting in a serious accident.**

Tire care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tire inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.


ONX4E010022

All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver's side center pillar.

Recommended cold tire inflation pressures

All tire pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tires are cold. "Cold tires" means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (one mile).

Warm tires normally exceed recommended cold tire pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure or the tires will be under-inflated. For recommended inflation pressure, refer to "Tire and Wheels" section in chapter 2.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 39 2020-09-24 8:04:12

WARNING

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, vehicle handling, and minimum tire wear.

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure that could result in loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Severe under-inflation can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tire failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

CAUTION

- **Under-inflation results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation is also possible. Keep your tire pressures at the proper levels. If a tire frequently needs refilling, we recommend it be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Over-inflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the center of the tire tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.**

Check tire inflation pressure

Check your tires, including the spare tire, once a month or more.

How to check

Use a good quality tire pressure gauge to check tire pressure. You can not tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated when they are under-inflated.

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tire and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended pressure. Make sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

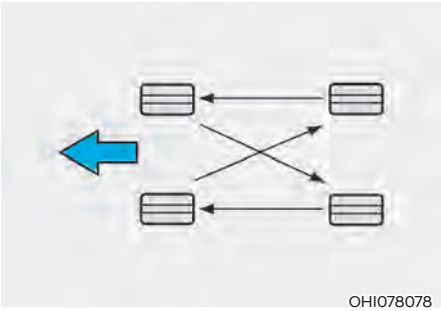
009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 40 2020-09-24 8:04:12

Tire rotation

To equalize tread wear, HYUNDAI recommends that the tires be rotated according to the maintenance schedule or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tires for correct balance.

When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tire. Replace the tire if you find any of these conditions. Replace the tire if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tire pressures to specification and check wheel bolt tightness (proper torque is 11~13 kgf.m [79~94 lbf.ft]).



OHI078078

Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tires are rotated.

Information

The outside and inside of the unsymmetrical tire is distinguishable. When installing an unsymmetrical tire, be sure to install the side marked “outside” face the outside. If the side marked “inside” is installed on the outside, it will have a negative effect on vehicle performance.

WARNING

- **Do not use the compact spare tire for tire rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tires under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 41 2020-09-24 8:04:12

Wheel alignment and tire balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

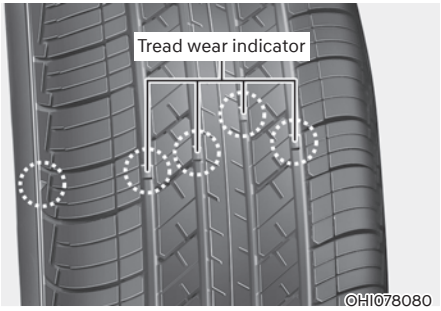
In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

NOTICE

Incorrect wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.

Tire replacement



If the tire is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) of tread left on the tire. Replace the tire when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tire.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY:

- **Replace tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tires can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.**
- **Always replace tires with the same size as each tire that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tires and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) resulting in a serious accident.**
- **When replacing tires (or wheels), it is recommended to replace the two front or two rear tires (or wheels) as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.**
- **Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, HYUNDAI recommends that tires be replaced after six (6) years of normal service.**
- **Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this warning may cause sudden tire failure, which could lead to a loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 42 2020-09-24 8:04:12

Compact spare tire replacement (if equipped)

A compact spare tire has a shorter tread life than a regular size tire. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tire. The replacement compact spare tire should be the same size and design tire as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tire wheel. The compact spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tire wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tire.

WARNING

The original tire should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare and loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. The compact spare tire is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle over 80 km/h (50 mph) when using the compact spare tire.

Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

Tire traction

Tire traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tires, tires that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tires should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

Tire maintenance

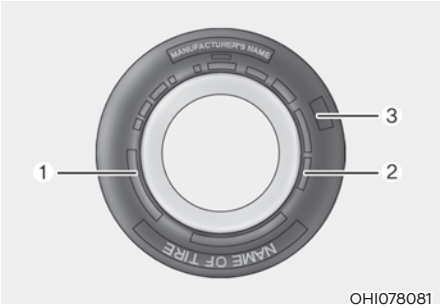
In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tire life. Additionally, a tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 43 2020-09-24 8:04:12

Tire sidewall labeling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides the tire identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tire in case of a recall.



OHI078081

1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or brand name is shown.

2. Tire size designation

A tire's sidewall is marked with a tire size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tires for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tire size designation mean.

Example tire size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tire size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

235/60R18 102H

235 - Tire width in millimeters.

60 - Aspect ratio. The tire's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tire construction code (Radial).

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

102 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry.

H - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

7.5J X 18

7.5 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 44 2020-09-24 8:04:12

Tire speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger vehicle tires. The speed rating is part of the tire size designation on the sidewall of the tire. This symbol corresponds to that tire's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

3. Checking tire life (TIN : Tire Identification Number)

Any tires that are over six years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tire) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tire sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tire consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO

The front part of the DOT shows a plant code number, tire size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1520 represents that the tire was produced in the 15th week of 2020.

4. Tire ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tire. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

6. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. When replacing the tires on the vehicle, always use a tire that has the same load rating as the factory installed tire.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 45 2020-09-24 8:04:12

7. Uniform tire quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the sidewalls of passenger vehicle tires. The tires available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may vary with respect to grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature - A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 46 2020-09-24 8:04:12

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, over-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tire failure. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Low aspect ratio tires (if equipped)

The aspect ratio is lower than 50 on low aspect ratio tires.

Because low aspect ratio tires are optimized for handling and braking, their sidewall is a little stiffer than a standard tire. Also low aspect ratio tires tend to be wider and consequently have a greater contact patch with the road surface. In some instances they may generate more road noise compared with standard tires.

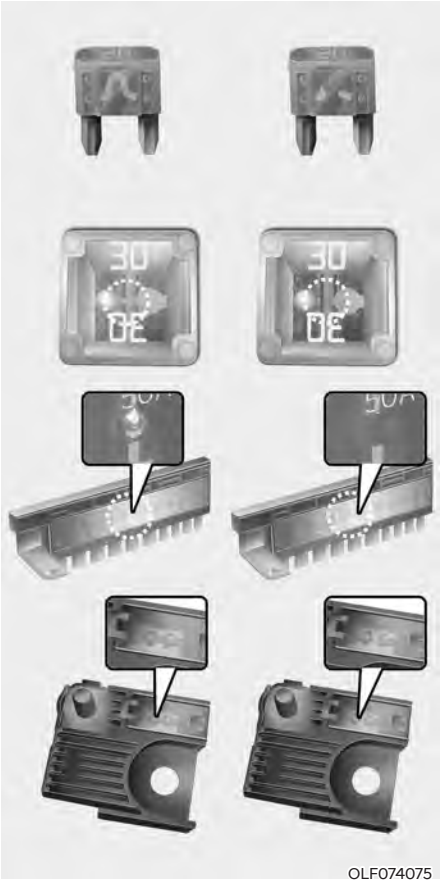
CAUTION

The side wall of a low aspect ratio tire is shorter than the normal one. Thus, the low-aspect wheel and tire are easily damaged. Follow the below instructions.

- **When driving on a rough road or driving off a road, be careful not to damage the tires and wheels. After driving, inspect the tires and wheels.**
- **When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or curb stone, drive the vehicle slowly so as not to damage the tires and wheels.**
- **When there is an impact on a tire, we recommend to have the tire inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer or a tire specialist.**
- **Inspect the tire condition and pressure every 3,000 km (1,800 miles) to prevent tire damage.**
- **It is difficult to recognize a tire damage only with your eyes. When there is a slight hint of a tire damage, check and replace the tire to prevent the damage caused by air leakage.**
- **When a tire is damaged while driving on a rough road, off a road, or over obstacles, such as a pothole, manhole, or curb stone, your warranty does not cover the damage.**
- **The tire information is specified on the tire side wall.**

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 47 2020-09-24 8:04:13

FUSES



A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 2 (or 3) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the engine compartment.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted or broken.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel. Before replacing a blown fuse, turn the engine and all switches off, and then disconnect the negative battery cable. Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved. We recommend that you immediately consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Information

Three kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and multi fuse for higher amperage ratings.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 48 2020-09-24 8:04:13

WARNING

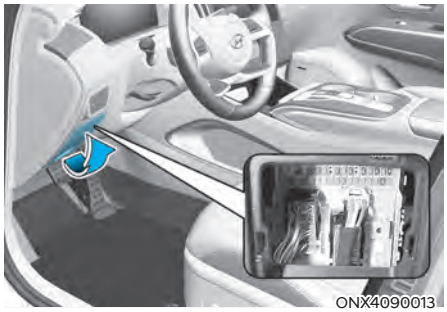
NEVER replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.

- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly cause a fire.**
- **Do not install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and possibly a fire.**

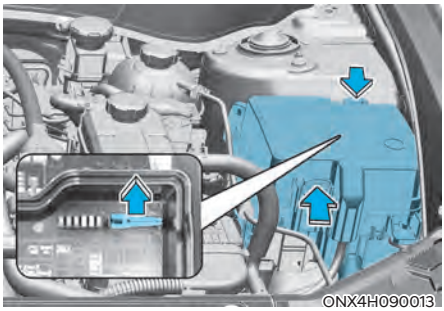
NOTICE

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

Instrument panel fuse replacement


ONX4090013

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Turn all other switches off.
3. Open the fuse panel cover.
4. Refer to the label on the inside of the fuse panel cover to locate the suspected fuse location.


ONX4H090013

5. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the engine compartment fuses panel cover.
6. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. Spare fuses are provided in the instrument panel fuse panels (or in the engine compartment fuse panel).
7. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

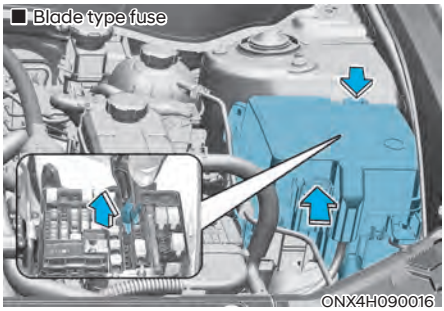
In an emergency, if you do not have a spare fuse, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigarette lighter fuse.

If the headlamps or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are undamaged, check the fuse panel in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced with the same rating.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 49 2020-09-24 8:04:13

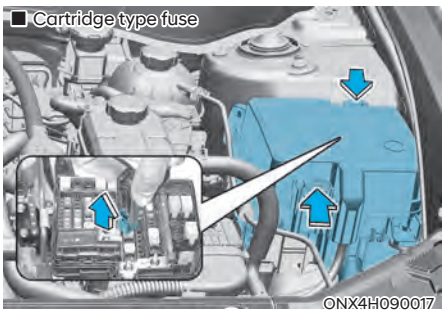
Engine compartment panel fuse replacement

■ Blade type fuse



ONX4H090016

■ Cartridge type fuse



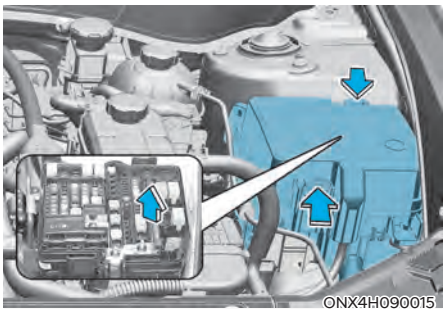
ONX4H090017

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Turn all other switches off.
3. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tap and pulling up.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

NOTICE

After checking the fuse panel in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse panel cover. You may hear a clicking sound if the cover is securely latched. If it is not securely latched, electrical failure may occur from water contact.

Multi fuse



ONX4H090015

If the multi fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 50 2020-09-24 8:04:13

Fuse/relay panel description

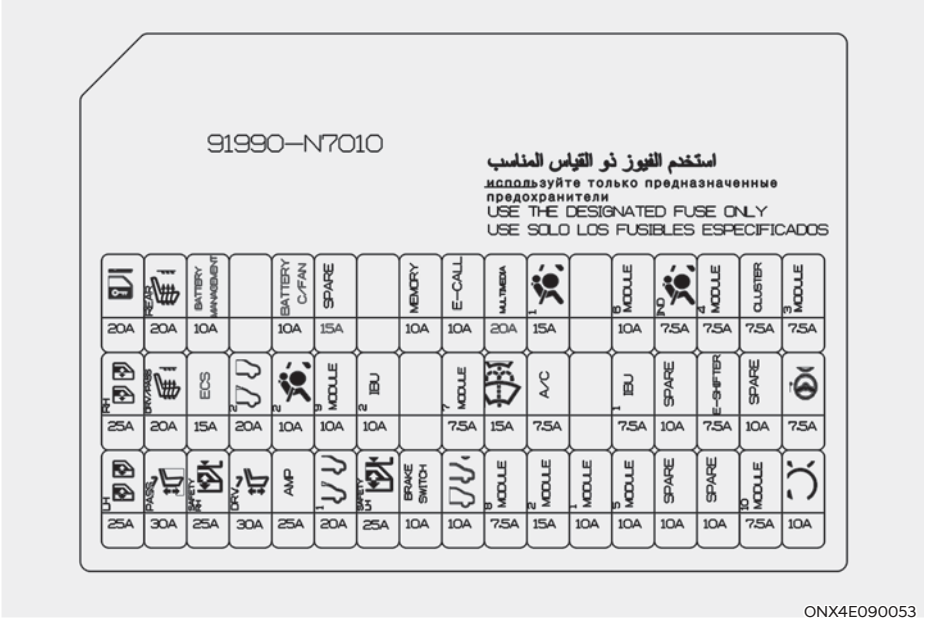
Instrument panel fuse panel



Inside the fuse/relay box cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/ relay names and ratings.

Information

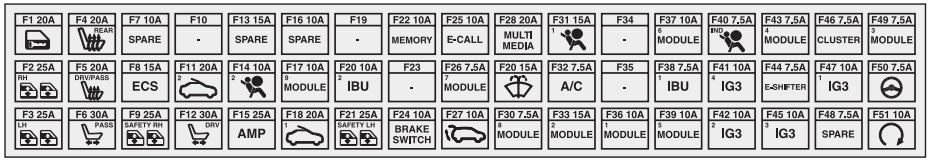
Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.



ONX4E090053

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 51 2020-09-24 8:04:13

Instrument panel fuse panel



NO.	Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
F01	DR Lock	20A	Dead Lock Relay, Data Link Connector, Door Unlock/Lock Relay
F02	P/WDW RH	25A	Power Window Main Switch, Passenger Power Window Switch (LHD)
F03	P/WDW LH	25A	Power Window Main Switch, Passenger Power Window Switch (RHD)
F04	Seat Warmer (RR)	20A	Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
F05	Seat Warmer (DR/PS)	20A	Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module
F06	P/ Seat(PS)	30A	Passenger Power Seat Switch, Passenger Seat Relay Unit
F08	ECS	15A	ECS Unit
F09	Safety Window RH	25A	Driver(LHD)/Passenger(RHD) Safety Power Window Module, Rear Safety Power Window Module RH
F11	Sunroof1	20A	Sunroof Control Unit (Blind)
F12	P/ Seat(DR)	30A	Driver Power Seat Switch, Driver IMS Control Module
F14	A/BAG2	10A	SRS Control Module
F15	AMP	25A	AMP
F17	Module17	10A	"Driver/Passenger Smart Key Outside Handle, Crash Pad Switch, Hazard Switch, UIP Sensor UIP Siren, Data Link Connector, Rain Sensor"
F18	Sunroof1	20A	Sunroof Control Unit (Glass)
F20	IBU2	10A	IBU, Ignition Switch

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 52 2020-09-24 8:04:14

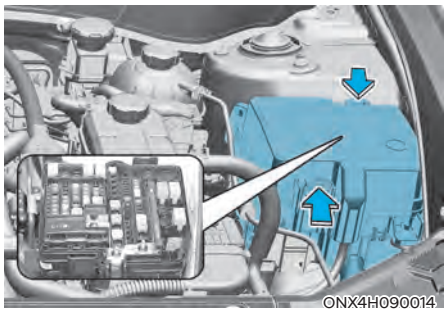
NO.	Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
F21	Safety Window LH	25A	Driver(RHD)/Passenger(LHD) Safety Power Window Module, Rear Safety Power Window Module LH
F22	10A	10A	Outside Mirror Folding/Unfolding Relay, ROA Sensor, Driver IMS Control Module, Power Tailgate Unit, Driver/Passenger Door Mood Lmap, A/C Control Module, Console Mood Lamp, Instrument Cluster, Mood Lamp Unit, A/C Control Switch, Crash Pad Mood Lamp
F24	Brake Switch	10A	IBU, Stop Lamp Switch
F25	E-Call	10A	E-Call Unit
F26	Module7	7.5A	IBU
F27	PTG	10A	Tailgate Relay
F28	Multi Media	20A	Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit
F29	Washer	15A	Multifunction Switch
F30	Module8	7.5A	Front/Rear Seat Warmer Control Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module
F31	A/BAG1	15A	SRS Control Module
F32	A/C	7.5A	Electronic A/C Compressor, Front/Rear A/C Control Switch A/C Control Module, E/R Junction Block (RLY.10, RLY.13)
F33	Module2	15A	Front USB Charge Connector, Rear USB Charge Connector
F36	Module1	10A	E-Call Unit, Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, AMP, Audio Keyboard, A/V & Navigation Keyboard, IBU, BMS, Integrated Parking Assist Unit, Power Outside Mirror Switch
F37	Module6	10A	Front Console Switch, EPB Switch
F38	IBU1	7.5A	IBU

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 53 2020-09-24 8:04:14

NO.	Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
F39	Module5	10A	Front/Rear Seat Warmer Control Module, E-Call Unit, AMP, Driver IMS Control Module, Front/Rear A/C Control Switch, Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Wireless Charger Unit, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Data Link Connector, A/C Control Module, Heat Lamp LH/RH, Electro Chromic Mirror
F40	A/BAG IND.	7.5A	Instrument Cluster, Overhead Console Lamp
F41	IG3 4	10A	HPCU
F42	IG3 2	10A	Electronic Water Pump (HEV)
F43	Module4	7.5A	Multifunction Front View Camera, IBU, 4WD ECM, VESS Unit, Crash Pad Switch, ECS Unit, Integrated Parking Assist Unit
F44	E-Shifter	7.5A	Electronic Shift Switch, SCU
F45	IG3 3	10A	BMS, E/R Junction Block (RLY.2)
F46	Cluster	7.5A	Instrument Cluster
F49	Module3	7.5A	Stop Lamp Switch, Overhead Console Lamp, Multifunction Switch (R-MDPS)
F50	MDPS	7.5A	MDPS Unit (Column Type)
F51	10A	10A	Burglar Alarm Relay, IBU, HPCU

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 54 2020-09-24 8:04:14

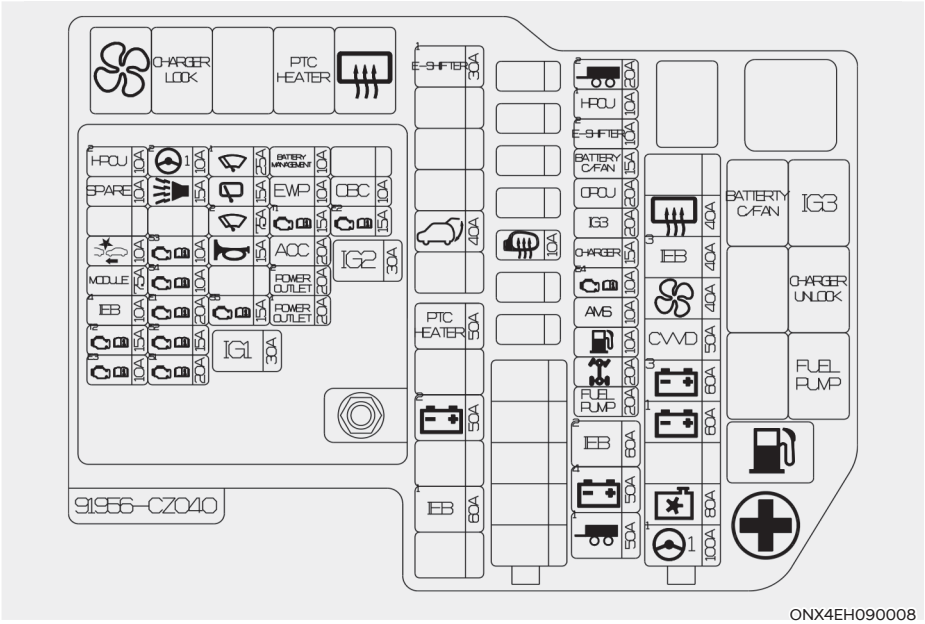
Engine compartment fuse panel



Inside the fuse/relay box cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

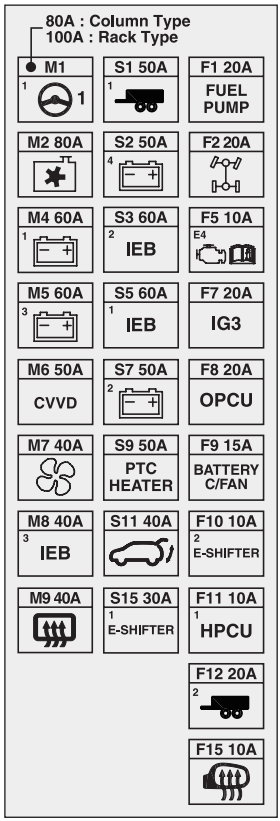
Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.



009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 55 2020-09-24 8:04:14

Engine compartment fuse panel



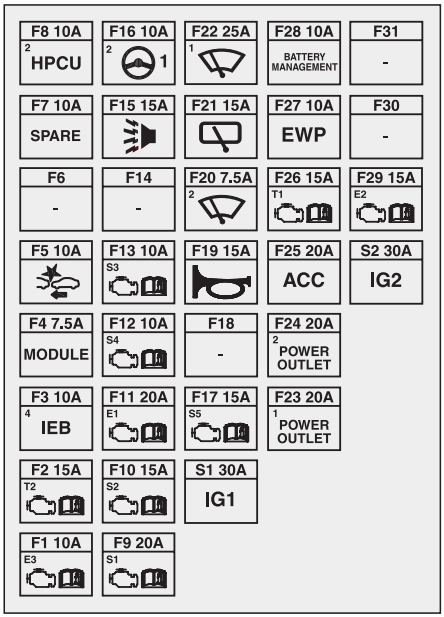
NO.	Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
M01	MDPS	80A/100A	MDPS Unit (Column Type-80A) / MDPS Unit (Rack Type-100A)
M02	C/FAN	80A	Cooling Fan Motor
M04	B+1	60A	ICU Junction Block (IPS01, IPS02, IPS03, IPS04, IPS05)
M05	B+3	60A	ICU Junction Block (Power Window Main Relay, Fuse : F2, F3, F5, F6, F8, F9, F11, F12, F18, F15)
M06	CVVD	50A	CVVD Actuator
M07	Bower	40A	E/R Junction Block (RLY.10)
M08	IEB3	40A	IEB Unit

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 56 2020-09-24 8:04:15

NO.	Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
M09	Rear Defogger	40A	E/R Junction Block (RLY.14)
S01	Trailer1	50A	Trailer Connector Unit
S02	B+4	50A	ICU Junction Block (Long Term Load Latch Relay, Fuse : F1, F4, F14, F17, F20, F21, F24, F27)
S03	IEB2	60A	IEB Unit
S05	IEB1	60A	IEB Unit
S07	B+2	50A	ICU Junction Block (IPS06, IPS07, IPS08, IPS10, IPS11)
S09	PTC Heater	50A	E/R Junction Block (RLY.13)
S11	PTG	40A	Power Tailgate Unit
S15	E-Shifter1	30A	SCU
F01	Fuel Pump	20A	E/R Junction Block (RLY.7)
F02	4WD	20A	4WD ECM
F05	ECU4	10A	ECM
F07	IG3	20A	E/R Junction Block (RLY.3)
F08	OPCU	20A	OPU
F09	BATT C/ FAN	15A	E/R Junction Block (RLY.2)
F10	E-Shifter2	10A	SCU, Electronic Shift Switch (SBW)
F11	HPCU1	10A	HPCU
F12	Trailer2	20A	Trailer Connector Unit
F15	RR HTD	10A	Driver Power Outside Mirror, Passenger Power Outside Mirror

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 57 2020-09-24 8:04:15

Engine compartment fuse panel (PCB block)



NO.	Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
S01	IG1	30A	PCB Block (PDM(IG1) Relay)
S02	IG2	30A	PCB Block (PDM(IG2) Relay)
F01	ECU3	10A	CVVD Actuator, ECM
F02	TCU2	15A	TCM, OPU
F03	IEB4	10A	IEB Unit
F04	Module	7.5A	Electronic Water Pump (Engine)
F05	AEB	10A	Front Radar
F08	HPCU2	10A	HCPU
F09	Sensor1	20A	Ignition Coil #1~#4
F10	Sensor2	15A	Oxygen Sensor (Up/Down)
F11	ECU1	20A	ECM

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 58 2020-09-24 8:04:16

NO.	Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
F12	Sensor4	10A	E/R Junction Block (RLY.7)
F13	Sensor3	10A	Oil Control Valve #1~#2, Purge Control Solenoid Valve, RCV Control Solenoid Valve, Variable Oil Pump, Cooling Fan Motor
F15	B/Horn	15A	PCB Block (Burglar Alarm Horn Relay)
F16	MDPS2	10A	MDPS Unit (Rack Type)
F17	Sensor5	15A	Active Purge Pump
F19	Horn	15A	PCB Block (Horn Relay)
F20	Wiper(FR)2	7.5A	IBU
F21	Wiper(RR)	15A	ICU Junction Block (Rear Wiper Relay)
F22	Wiper(FR)1	25A	PCB Block (Front Wiper(Low) Relay), Front Wiper Motor
F23	P/Outlet1	20A	Luggage Power Outlet
F24	P/Outlet2	20A	Front Power Outlet
F25	ACC	20A	ICU Junction Block (Fuse : F33, F36)
F26	TCU1	15A	TCM
F27	EWP	10A	Electronic Water Pump (Engine)
F28	BMS	10A	BMS
F29	ECU2	15A	ECM

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 59 2020-09-24 8:04:16

LIGHT BULBS

We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer to replace most vehicle light bulbs. It is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true for removing the headlamp assembly to get to the bulb(s).

Removing/installing the headlamp assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

WARNING

- **Prior to working on a light, shift to P (Park), apply the parking brake, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position and take the key with you when leaving the vehicle to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and to prevent possible electric shock.**
- **Be aware the bulbs may be hot and may burn your fingers.**

NOTICE

Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electrical wiring system.

NOTICE

To prevent damage, do not clean the headlamp lens with chemical solvents or strong detergents.

Information - Headlamp desiccant (if equipped)

This vehicle is equipped with desiccant to reduce fogging inside the headlamp due to moisture. The desiccant is consumable and its performance may change based on the used period or environment. If fogging inside the headlamp due to moisture continues for a long time, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Information

The headlamp and tail lamp lenses could appear frosty if the vehicle is washed after driving or the vehicle is driven at night in wet weather. This condition is caused by temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside and, it does not indicate a problem with your vehicle. When moisture condenses in the lamp, it will be removed after driving with the headlamp on. The removable level may differ depending on lamp size, lamp position and environmental condition. However, if moisture is not removed, we recommend that your vehicle is inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 60 2020-09-24 8:04:16

Information

- **A normally functioning lamp may flicker momentarily to stabilize the vehicle's electrical control system. However, if the lamp goes out after flickering momentarily, or continues to flicker, we recommend the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **The position lamp may not turn on when the position lamp switch is turned on, but the position lamp and headlamp switch may turn on when the headlamp switch is turned on. This may be caused by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If this occurs, we recommend the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

Information

The headlamp aiming should be adjusted after an accident or after the headlamp assembly is reinstalled.

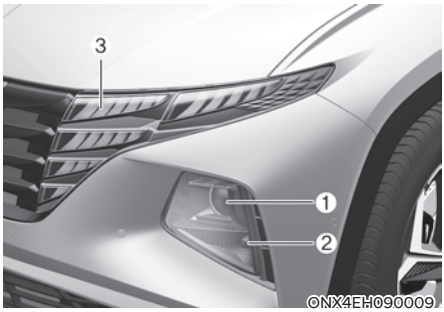
Information

Traffic Change (For Europe)

The low beam light distribution is asymmetric. If you go abroad to a country with opposite traffic direction, this asymmetric part will dazzle oncoming car driver. To prevent dazzle, ECE regulation demand several technical solutions (ex. automatic change system, adhesive sheet, down aiming). This headlamps are designed not to dazzle opposite drivers. So, you need not change your headlamps in a country with opposite traffic direction.

Headlamp, position lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement

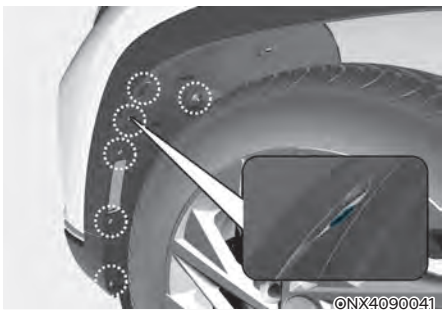
Type A



(1) Headlamp (High/Low)
(2) Turn signal lamp
(3) Daytime running light/Position light

Headlamp / Turn signal lamp

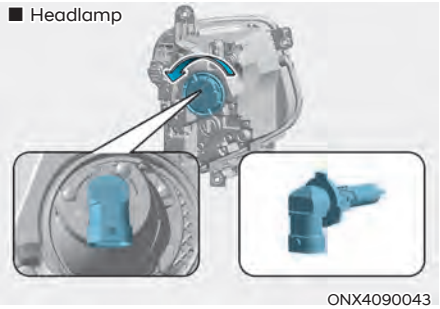
1. Engage the parking brake and disconnect the negative battery cable.



2. Remove wheel guard clips (under the front bumper : 6 pieces).

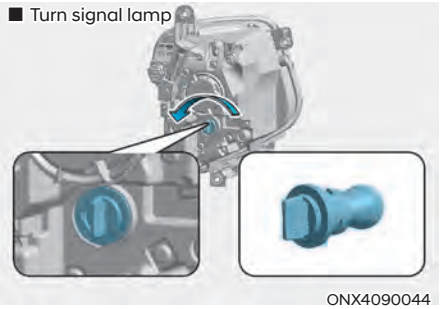
009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 61 2020-09-24 8:04:16

■ Headlamp



ONX4090043

■ Turn signal lamp



ONX4090044

3. Push the wheel guard aside and remove the bulb socket by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
5. Install a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
6. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the wheel guard in the reverse order.

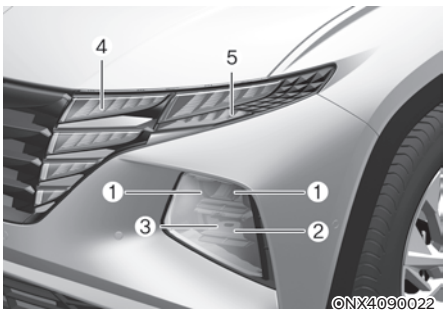
Daytime running light, position light (LED)

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Type B (LED)



ONX4090022

(1) Headlamp (Low)
(2) Headlamp (High)
(3) Static bending light/Headlamp (High)
(4) Daytime running light/Position light
(5) Turn signal lamp

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 62 2020-09-24 8:04:17

WARNING



OLMB073042L

- **Handle halogen bulbs with care. Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass that could cause injuries if broken.**
- **Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.**

- Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids.
- Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit.
- A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlamp.
- If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.

Lamps

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Headlamp aiming (For Europe)

■ Type A



ONX4EH090003

■ Type B



ONX4EH090002

1. Inflate the tires to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tire, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centers) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through center of head lamps) on the screen.
4. With the headlamp and battery in normal condition, aim the headlamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low beam and high beam left or right, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

   To aim the low beam and high beam up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 63 2020-09-24 8:04:17

Aiming point

■ Hallogen lamp



■ LED lamp



ONX4EH090005/ ONX4EH090004

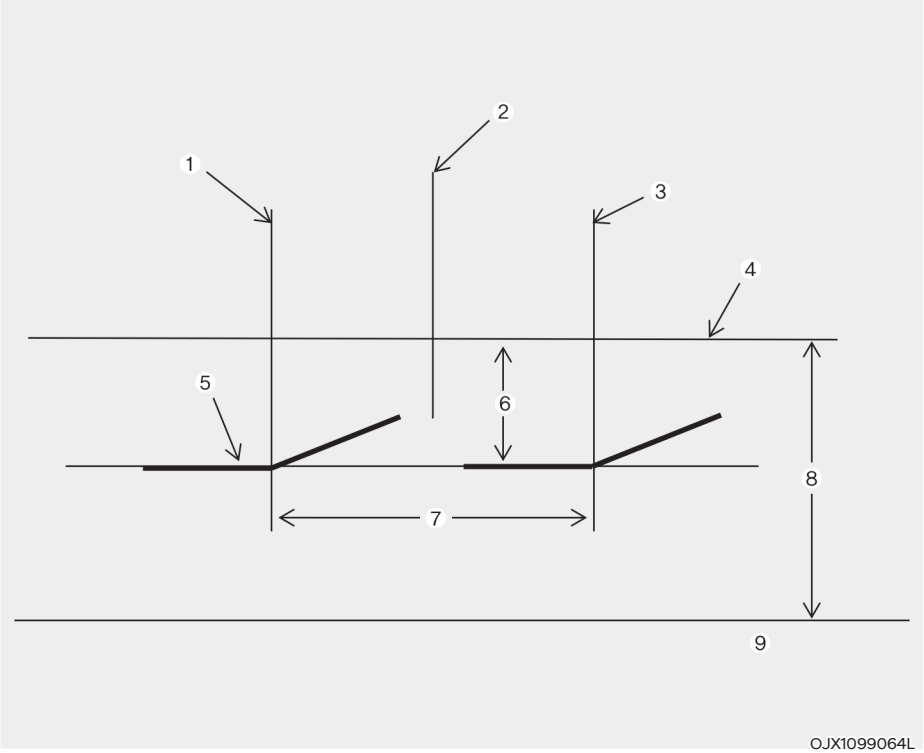
H1 : Height between the head lamp bulb center and ground (Low beam)
H2 : Height between the head lamp bulb center and ground (High beam)
W1 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centers (Low beam)
W2 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centers (High beam)

Vehicle condition	Lamp type	HI	H2	W/W2
Without driver mm (in)	HALOGEN Bi-Function	664	664	1436
	LED MFR.	660	589	1434
With driver mm (in)	HALOGEN Bi-Function	657	657	1436
	LED MFR.	683	582	1434

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 64 2020-09-24 8:04:18

Headlamp low beam (RHD side)

■ Based on 10m screen



[1] : Vertical line of the left headlamp bulb center
[2] : Car axis
[3] : Vertical line of the right headlamp bulb center
[4] : Horizontal line of headlamp bulb center
[5] : Cut-off line
[6] : 100
[7] : W1 (Low beam)
[8] : H1 (Low beam)
[9] : Ground

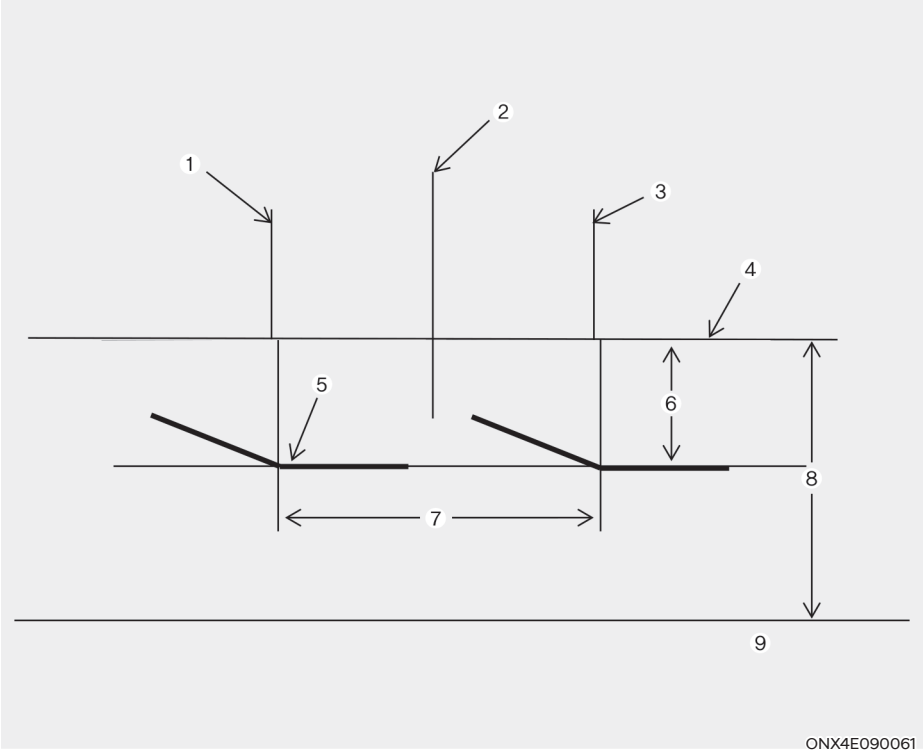
1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If headlamp leveling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp leveling device switch to “0”.

✳ The high beam is aimed simultaneously when aiming the low beam.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 65 2020-09-24 8:04:18

Head lamp low beam (LHD side)

■ Based on 10m screen



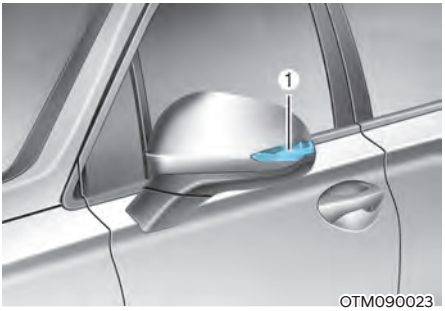
[1] : Vertical line of the left headlamp bulb center
[2] : Car axis
[3] : Vertical line of the right headlamp bulb center
[4] : Horizontal line of headlamp bulb center
[5] : Cut-off line
[6] : 100
[7] : W1 (Low beam)
[8] : H1 (Low beam)
[9] : Ground

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If headlamp leveling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp leveling device switch to “0”.

✳ The high beam is aimed simultaneously when aiming the low beam

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 66 2020-09-24 8:04:18

Side repeater lamp replacement



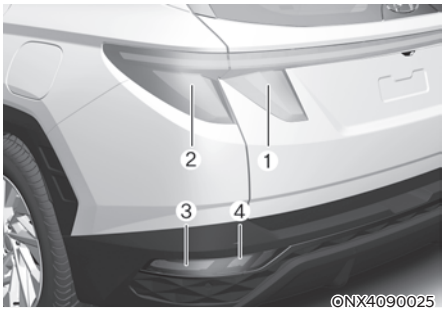
If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Rear combination lamp replacement

Type A



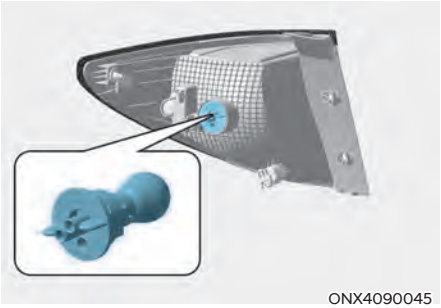
(1) Tail lamp
(2) Tail/Stop lamp
(3) Turn signal lamp
(4) Backup lamp (if equipped) or Fog lamp (if equipped)



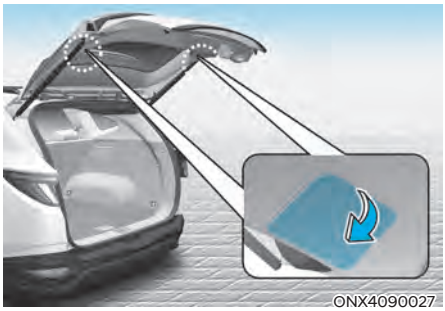
Stop/Tail lamp (Outside)

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the tailgate.
3. Loosen the lamp assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.
4. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
5. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 67 2020-09-24 8:04:18

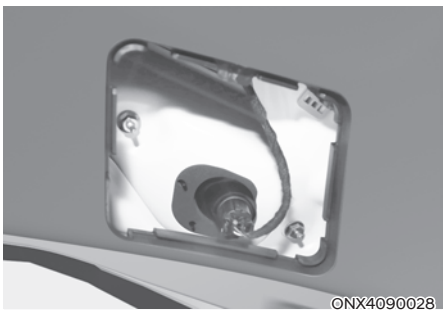

ONX4090045

6. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
7. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
8. Install the socket into the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
9. Reinstall the lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.


ONX4090027

Tail lamp (Inside)

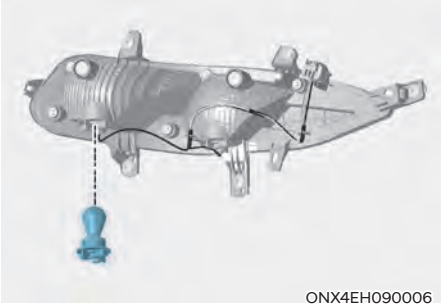
1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the tailgate.
3. Remove the service cover using a flat-blade screwdriver.
4. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.


ONX4090028

5. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
6. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.

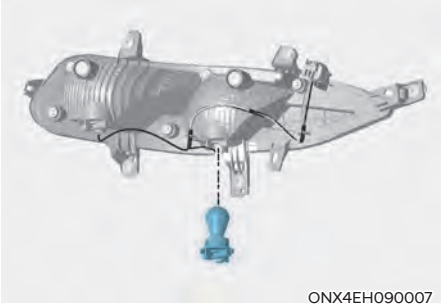
009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 68 2020-09-24 8:04:19

7. Install the socket into the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
8. Reinstall the lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.



ONX4EH090006

Turn signal lamp

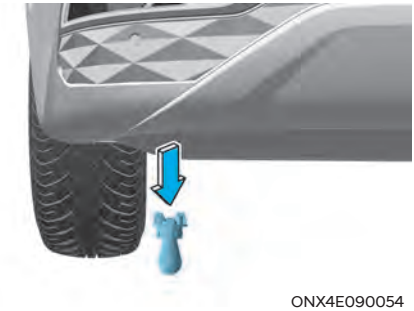


ONX4EH090007

Rear fog lamp / Back-up lamp

Turn signal lamp, Rear fog lamp, Back-up lamp

1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.

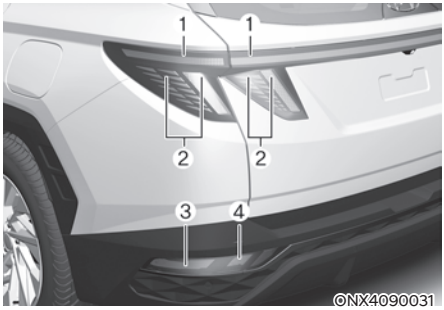


ONX4E090054

2. Loosen the retaining clips under the bumper and screws on the wheel house trim.
3. Prey trim under the bumper toward the vehicle.
4. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
5. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
6. Insert a new bulb in the socket.
7. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 69 2020-09-24 8:04:19

Type B



(1) Tail lamp
(2) Tail/Stop lamp
(3) Turn signal lamp
(4) Backup lamp (if equipped) or Fog lamp (if equipped)

Tail/Stop lamp, Tail lamp

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

High mounted stop lamp replacement



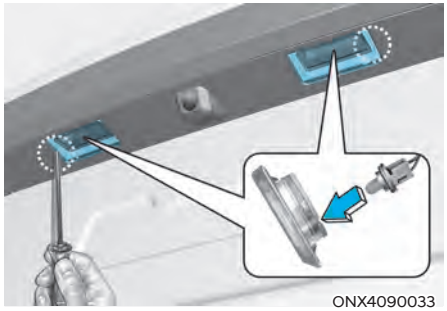
If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 70 2020-09-24 8:04:19

License plate lamp replacement



1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from the lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb.
4. Reinstall in the reverse order.

Interior light replacement

Map/Personal lamp (LED)

■ Map lamp (LED type)



■ Room lamp (Personnal lamp)



If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

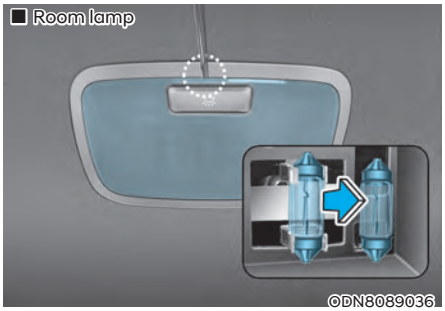
The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

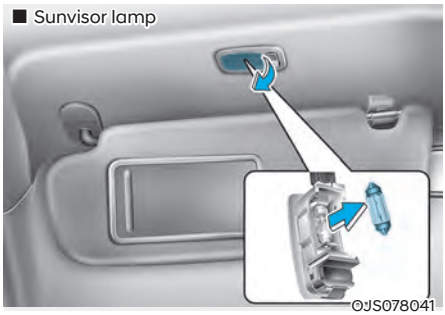
009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 71 2020-09-24 8:04:19

Map lamp, Room lamp, Sunvisor lamp and Luggage compartment lamp (Bulb type)

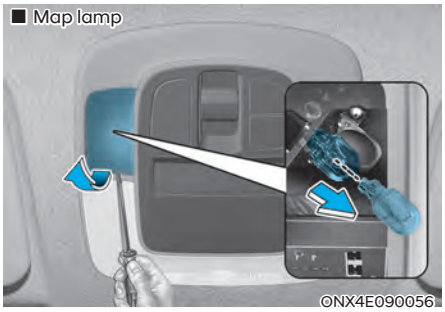
■ Room lamp



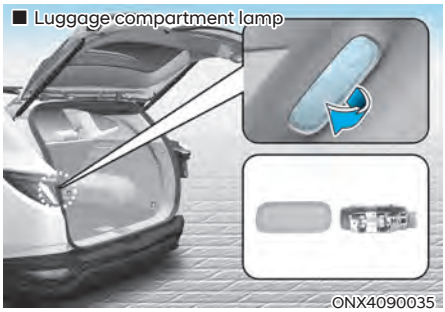
■ Sunvisor lamp



■ Map lamp



■ Luggage compartment lamp



1. Using a flat-head screwdriver, gently pry the lens from the interior light housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb into the socket.
4. Align the lens tabs with the interior light housing notches and snap the lens into place.

NOTICE

Be careful not to damage the cover, tab, and plastic housing.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 72 2020-09-24 8:04:19

APPEARANCE CARE

Exterior care

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, should be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

High-pressure washing

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.

  Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
- Do not spray the camera, sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.

WARNING

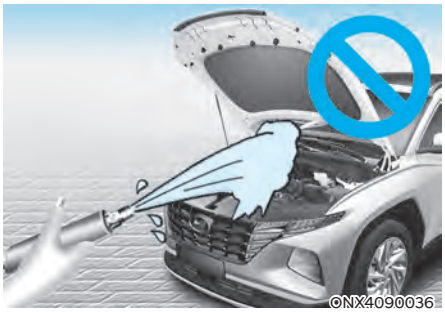
After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water before getting on the road. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.

NOTICE

- **Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.**
- **Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle.**
- **Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.**
- **To prevent damage to the plastic parts, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.**
- **To prevent damage to the charging door, make sure to close and lock the vehicle doors when washing (high-pressure washing, automatic car washing, etc.) the vehicle.**

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 73 2020-09-24 8:04:20

NOTICE



- **Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.**
- **Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/ electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.**

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

Automatic car wash which uses rotating brushes should not be used as this can damage the surface of your vehicle. A steam cleaner which washes the vehicle surface at high temperature may result the oil to adhere and leave stains that is difficult to remove.

Use a soft cloth (e.g. microfiber towel or sponge) when washing your vehicle and dry with a microfiber towel. When you hand wash your vehicle, you should not use a cleaner that finishes with wax. If the vehicle surface is too dirty (sand, dirt, dust, contaminant, etc.), clean the surface with water before washing the car.

Waxing

A good coat of wax is a barrier between your paint and contaminate. Keeping a good coat of wax on your vehicle will help protect it.

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

NOTICE

- **Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.**
- **Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.**

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

Do not use any polish protector such as a detergent, an abrasive and a polish. In case wax is applied, remove the wax immediately using a silicon remover and if any tar or tar contaminant is on the surface use a tar remover to clean. However, be careful not to apply too much pressure on the painted area.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 74 2020-09-24 8:04:20

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

In case of matte paint finish vehicles, it is impossible to modify only the damaged area and repair of the whole part is necessary. If the vehicle is damaged and painting is required, we recommend that you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. Take extreme care, as it is difficult to restore the quality after the repair.

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of brightmetal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.

Aluminum wheel maintenance

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 75 2020-09-24 8:04:20

NOTICE

- **Do not use abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels.**
- **Clean the wheel when it has cooled.**
- **Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, clean the wheels after driving on salted roads.**
- **Do not wash the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.**
- **Do not use any cleaners containing acid or alkaline detergents.**

Corrosion protection

Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, HYUNDAI produces vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 76 2020-09-24 8:04:20

To help prevent corrosion

Keep your vehicle clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, pay particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

Keep your garage dry

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Interior care

Interior general precautions

Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil, from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. See the instructions for the proper way to clean vinyl.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 77 2020-09-24 8:04:20

NOTICE

- **Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/ electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.**
- **When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/ alkaline detergents, the color of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.**

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

Vinyl (if equipped)

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

Fabric (if equipped)

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its color can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

NOTICE

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Leather (if equipped)

- Features of seat leather
  - Leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process to be available for use. Since it is a natural product, each part differs in thickness or density.

    Wrinkles may appear as a natural result of stretching and shrinking depending on the temperature and humidity.
  - The seat is made of stretchable fabric to improve comfort.
  - The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high which provides driving comfort and stability.
  - Wrinkles may appear naturally from usage. It is not a fault of the products.

NOTICE

- **Wrinkles or abrasions which appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.**
- **Belts with metallic accessories, zippers or keys inside the back pocket may damage the seat fabric.**
- **Make sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of natural leather.**
- **Jeans or clothes which could bleach may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric.**

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 78 2020-09-24 8:04:20

- Caring for the leather seats
  - Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It will prevent abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
  - Wipe the natural leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
  - Use of proper leather protector may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the color. Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agent.
  - Light colored (beige, cream beige) leather is easily contaminated and the stain is noticeable. Clean the seats frequently.
  - Avoid wiping with wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.
- Cleaning the leather seats
  - Remove all contaminations instantly. Refer to instructions below for removal of each contaminant.
  - Cosmetic products (sunscreen, foundation, etc.)

    Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated spot. Wipe off the cream with a wet cloth and remove water with a dry cloth.
  - Beverages (coffee, soft drink, etc.)

    Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until contaminations do not smear.
  - Oil

    Remove oil instantly with absorbable cloth and wipe with stain remover used only for natural leather.
  - Chewing gum

    Harden the gum with ice and remove gradually.

Cleaning the seat belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken the seat belt.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

NOTICE

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 79 2020-09-24 8:04:20

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Service Passport in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all applicable emission regulations. There are three emission control systems, as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to ensure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your vehicle inspected and maintained by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

NOTICE

For the Inspection and Maintenance Test (with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch (ESC OFF light illuminated).**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

2. Evaporative emission control system

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapors from escaping into the atmosphere.

Canister

Fuel vapors generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapors absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms-up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 80 2020-09-24 8:04:20

3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions while maintaining good vehicle performance.

When the engine starts or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission system.

Engine exhaust (carbon monoxide) precautions

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. If you smell exhaust fumes of any kind in your vehicle, drive with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

WARNING

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colorless and odorless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions on this page to avoid CO poisoning.

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)

WARNING

The exhaust system and catalytic converter are very hot during and immediately after the engine has been running. To avoid SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- **Do not park, idle, or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as grass, vegetation, paper, leaves, etc. A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle.**
- **Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic converter or you may get burned.**

  Also, Do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle, and do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.
To prevent damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle, take the following precautions:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for gasoline engines.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the hybrid system off and descending steep grades in gear with the hybrid system off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 81 2020-09-24 8:04:20

- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. We recommend that all inspections and adjustments are made by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.
- Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level.

  Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) (if equipped)

The Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) system removes the soot in the exhaust gas.

The GPF system automatically burns (or oxidizes) the accumulated soot in accordance with driving situations, unlike a disposable air filter.

In other words, the accumulated soot is automatically purged out by the engine control system and by the high exhaust-gas temperature at normal/high driving speeds.

However, when the vehicle is continually driven at repeated short distances or driven at low speed for a long time, the accumulated soot may not be automatically removed because of low exhaust gas temperature. In this case, the accumulated soot may reach a certain amount regardless of the soot oxidization process, then the GPF lamp () will illuminate.

The Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) Lamp stops illuminating, when the driving speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph) with engine rpm 1,500 ~ 4,000 and the gear in the 3rd position or above for approximately 30 minutes.

When the GPF lamp starts to blink or the warning message “Check exhaust system” pops up even though the vehicle was driven as mentioned above, we recommend that you have the GPF system checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

With GPF lamp blinking for an extended period of time, it may damage the GPF system and lower the fuel economy.

CAUTION

Gasoline Fuel

(if equipped with GPF)

We recommend you to use only the regulated gasoline fuels, when your vehicle is equipped with the GPF system.

When you use other gasoline fuels which contain unspecified additives, they may damage the GPF system and cause exhaust emission problems.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 82 2020-09-24 8:04:20

PROCEDURE FOR ENTERING FORCED ENGINE ACTIVATION MODE

If the engine needs to be kept running while the vehicle is stopped to inspect emission gas or perform vehicle maintenance, follow below procedure to enter forced engine activation mode.

1. Place the shift button in P (Park) position with the vehicle stopped. Engage the parking brake. Then, follow the steps (1) to (5).

   Below steps from (1) to (5) must be completed within 60 sec. If not, the process is reset and you must start again from step (1).

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the ON position. Vehicles equipped with the smart key, press the Engine Start/ Stop button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

(2) Place the shift button in P (Park) position and depress the accelerator pedal twice.

(3) Place the shift button in N (Neutral) position and depress the accelerator pedal twice.

(4) Place the shift button in P (Park) position and depress the accelerator pedal twice.

(5) With the brake pedal depressed, start the engine, and maintain idling state.

   The engine remains in idle state and the forced engine activation mode is maintained even when the gear is shifted to a different position.

2. "" indicator on the instrument cluster blinks when the vehicle is in forced engine activation mode. Check the "" indicator blinking to ensure that the forced engine activation mode is correctly entered.

   The "" indicator continues blinking until the forced engine activation mode is cancelled. When the mode is cancelled the "" indicator will stop blinking.

3. To cancel the forced engine activation mode, turn the vehicle off.

009_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 83 2020-09-24 8:04:20

Appendix

Шофиране през зимата (bulgarian) 10-2
Сняг или поледица 10-2
Система за задържане на деца (CRS) 10-5
Téli vezetés (hungarian) 10-7
Havas vagy jeges útviszonyok 10-7
Biztonsági gyermekülés (CRS) 10-10
Vetrarakstur (icelandic) 10-12
Akstur í snjó eða hálku 10-12
Barnabílstólar (CRS) 10-15
Jazda zimą (polish) 10-17
Jazda w warunkach śniegowych i przy oblodzeniu 10-17
Urządzenie przytrzymujące dla dzieci (CRS) 10-20

A

ШОФИРАНЕ ПРЕЗ ЗИМАТА (BULGARIAN)

Тежките зимни атмосферни условия могат да предизвикат по-голямо износване и други проблеми. За да сведете до минимум проблемите, свързани с шофирането през зимата, следвайте препоръките по-долу:

Сняг или поледица

За да карате своето превозно средство при дълбока снежна покривка може да се наложи да използвате зимни гуми или да поставите вериги върху тях. Ако са необ ходими зимни гуми, трябва да изберете гуми със същия размер и вид като тези на оригиналните гуми.

В противен случай това може да се отрази неблагоприятно на безопасността и експлоатацията на Вашия автомобил. Освен това карането с висока скорост, бързото ускорение, внезапното натискане на спирачки и резките завои крият сериозни опасности.

При забавяне на скоростта, използвайте доколкото е възможно спирачките на дви гателя.

Внезапното натискане на спирачки на заснежена или заледена настилка може да предизвика занасяне. Трябва да под държате достатъчна дистанция между автомобила, който се движи пред Вас, и Вашия автомобил.

Освен това натискайте спирачката леко. Следва да се отбележи че инсталирането на веригите върху гума та ще позволи прилагането на по-голяма движеща сила, но няма да предотврати занасянето встрани.

К СВЕДЕНИЮ

Веригите за гуми не са позволени във всички държави. Проверете норма тивната уредба в своята страна преди да поставите вериги за гуми.

Гуми за сняг

Ако поставите гуми за сняг на своя авто- мобил се уверете, че това са радиалнигуми със същия размер и товарен индекс като тези на оригиналните гуми.

Поставете гуми за сняг на всичките четири колела, за да балансирате експлоатацията на своя автомобил във всякакви атмос- ферни условия. Имайте предвид, че тягата на гумите за сняг върху суха настилка не може да бъде толкова голяма колкото тази на оригиналните гуми. Следва да карате внимателно, дори когато пътищата са почистени. Консултирайте се с доставчика на гуми за максималната препоръчителна скорост.

ОСТОРОЖНО

Размер на гумите за сняг

Г умите за сняг следва да са равностойни по размер и тип на тези на стандартните гуми на автомобила. В противен случай това може да се отрази неблагоприятно на безопасността и експлоатацията на Вашия автомобил.

Не монтирайте гуми с шипове, преди да сте проверили местните, национални и общински разпоредби за възможни ограничения в тяхната употреба.

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 2 2020-09-24 8:02:16

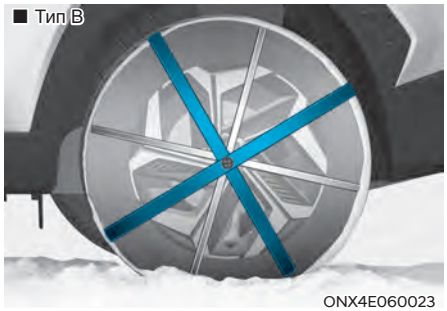
Вериги за гуми

■ Тип A



ONX4E060020

■ Тип B



ONX4E060023

Тъй като страниците на радиалните гуми са по-тънки, те могат да се повредят, ако върху тях се монтират някои видове вери- ги за сняг. Ето защо се препоръчва изпол- зването на гуми за сняг, а не на вериги за сняг. Не поставяйте вериги върху автомобили, чиито колела са с алуминиеви джан- ти; веригите за сняг могат да повредят колелата. Ако трябва да се използват вериги за сняг, използвайте телени вериги с дебелина от поне 15 мм.

Повредата на Вашия автомобил вследствие на непра- вилната употреба на вериги за сняг не е в обхвата на гаранцията на производителя на Вашия автомобил.

Поставяйте веригите винаги по две, на предните гуми. Обърнете внимание, че поставянето на вериги на гумите на автомобила осигурява по-добра задвижваща сила, но не предпазва от странични поднасяния.

При използване вериги за движение по сняг, закрепвайте ги към водещите колела както следва.

2WD : Предни колела

4WD : Всичките четири колела

Ако за автомобил 4WD не е наличен пълен комплект вериги, тогава можете да монтирате вериги само на предните колела.

ВНИМАНИЕ

- **Уверете се, че размерът и видът на веригите са правилните за Вашите гуми.**

  Неправилните вериги за сняг могат да повредят каросерията и окачването на автомобила и този тип повреда може да не е в обхвата на производствената гаранция за Вашия автомобил.

  Също така куките за свързване на веригите за сняг могат да се повредят от намиращите се в контакт с тях автомобилни части, като това може да доведе до разхлабването им.

- **Винаги проверявайте дали вериги- те са били поставени правилно след като изминете около 0,5 до 1 км, за да се уверите в безопасното им поставяне. Затегнете веригите или ги поставете отново, ако са се разхлабили.**

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 3 2020-09-24 8:02:16

Монтиране на вериги

Когато инсталирате веригите, следвайте инструкциите на производителя и ги затег- нете максимално. Карайте бавно с инсталирани вериги. Ако чуете, че веригите са навлезли в контакт с каросерията или шасито, спрете и ги затегнете. Ако те все още са в контакт, намалете скоростта до преустановяване на контакта. Свалете веригите веднага, щом започнете да кара- те по почистените пътища.

ОСТОРОЖНО

Поставяне на вериги

Когато поставите вериги за сняг , пар- кирайте автомобила на равно място далеч от пътното движение. Включете аварийните светлини и поставете светлоотразителния триъгълник зад автомобила, ако разполагате с такъв. Винаги паркирайте автомобила в паркинг, дръпнете ръч-ната спирачка и изключете двигате- ля преди да поставите веригите за сняг.

ОСТОРОЖНО

Вериги за гуми

- **Използването на вериги може да се отрази неблагоприятно на работата на Вашия автомобил.**
- **Не надвишавайте пределната ско- рост, препоръчана от производителя, или скоростта от 30 км/ч, което е по- ниско.**
- **Карайте внимателно и избягвайте неравности, дупки, резки завои и други опасности на пътя, които могат да накарат автомобила да подскача.**
- **Избягвайте резките завои или изпол- зването на спирачки, ако колелата са блокирани.**

ВНИМАНИЕ

- **Веригите с грешен размер или тези, които са неправилно инсталирани, могат да повредят спирачните накладки, окачването, каросерията и колелата.**
- **Спрете и затегнете веригите повтор- но винаги, щом ги чуете да удрят автомобила.**

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 4 2020-09-24 8:02:17

Система за задържане на деца (CRS)

Подходяща за всяка позиция на седалка за системи с колан и системи за задържане на деца (CRS) ISOFIX съгласно регулациите на UN

(Информация за потребители на автомобили и производители на CRS)

- Да : Подходящ за поставяне на указаната категория CRS
- Не : Неподходящ за поставяне на указаната категория CRS
- "-" : Неприложимо
- Таблицата се базира върху автомобил с ляв волан. С изключение на предната пасажерска седалка таблицата е валидна за автомобил с десен волан.

  За автомобил с десен волан за предната пасажерска седалка, моля използвайте информацията за позиция на сядане номер 3.

Категория на CRS		Позиции на сядане						
		1	2	3		4	5	6
				Въздушна възглавница ВКЛ	Въздушна възглавница ИЗКЛ			
CRS с универсален колан	Всички тегловни групи	-	-	Не	Да[1] (F,R)	Да (F,R)	Да (F,R)	Да (F,R)
CRS с размер i	ISOFIX CRF : F2, F2X, R1, R2	-	-	Не	Не	Да (F,R)	Не	Да (F,R)
Кош за носене Кош за носене	ISOFIX CRF: L1, L2	-	-	Не	Не	Не	Не	Не
ISOFIX бебешка* CRS (* : ISOFIX CRS за бебе)	ISOFIX CRF : R1	-	-	Не	Не	Да (R)	Не	Да (R)
ISOFIX детска CRS - малка	ISOFIX CRF : F2,F2X, R2,R2X	-	-	Не	Не	Да (F,R)	Не	Да (F,R)
ISOFIX детска CRS – голяма* (* : не за бустер седалки)	ISOFIX CRF : F3,R3	-	-	Не	Не	Да (F,R)	Не	Да (F,R)
Бустер седалка – редуцирана ширина	ISO CRF : B2	-	-	Не	Да[1]	Да	Да	Да
Бустер седалка – пълна ширина	ISO CRF : B3	-	-	Не	Да[1]	Да	Да	Да

F: Насочена напред

R : Насочена назад

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 5 2020-09-24 8:02:17

- Забележка 1) : За инсталиране на универсална CRS, облегалките на 1я ред пасажерски седалки трябва да са в своята най-изправена позиция

Седалка	Позиция	Позиции на сядане
Номер	в автомобила	
1	Отпред вляво	
2	Отпред в средата	
3	Отпред вдясно	
4	2-ри ред вляво	
5	2-ри ред в средата	
6	2-ри ред вдясно	

✳ Ако облегалка за глава на автомобила възпрепятства правилното инсталиране на CRS, облегалката глава на позицията на седалката трябва да бъде регулирана отново или изцяло отстранена

✳ Не поставяйте никога насочена назад система за задържане на деца на предната пасажерска седалка, освен ако еърбегът не е деактивиран.

Препоръчителна CRS за автомобил съгласно регулациите на UN (за Европа)

(Информация за потребители на автомобили и производители на CRS)

Тегловна група	Име	Производител	Тип на фиксиране	ECE одобрение №
Група 0+ / I	BABY-SAFE 2 i-SIZE и BABY-SAFE i-SIZE BASE	Britax Romer	ISOFIX с опорен крак, насочена назад	R129/00 - E1 – 000008
Група I	Duo Plus	Britax Romer	ISOFIX и top-tether	R44/04 - E1 – 04301133
Група II	KidFix2 R	Britax Romer	ISOFIX и колан на автомобила, с употребата на наръчника за прекарване на колана за CRS	R44/04 - E1 – 04301304
Група III	Junior III	Graco	Колан на автомобила	R44/04 – E11 – 03.44.164 R44/04 – E11 – 03.44.165

Информация на производителя на CRS (за Европа)

Britax : Römmer http://www.britax.com

Graco : http://www.gracobaby.com

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 6 2020-09-24 8:02:17

TÉLI VEZETÉS (HUNGARIAN)

Télen a nehéz időjárási feltételek nagyobb elhasználódást és más problémákat eredményezhetnek. A téli vezetés problémáinak csökkentése érdekében célszerű követnie a következő javaslatokat:

Havas vagy jeges útviszonyok

Mély hóban közlekedéshez szükség lehet téli gumiabroncsok használatára vagy kerekeire hólánc felszerelésére. Ha téli gumiabroncsokra van szüksége, a gyárilag felszerelttel megegyező méretű és típusú gumiabroncsot kell választani. Ennek figyelmen kívül hagyása hátrányosan befolyásolja gépkocsija biztonságát és vezethetőségét. Ezen túlmenően a nagy sebességű haladás, a hirtelen gyorsítás, a hirtelen fékezés és a gyors kanyarvétel nagyon veszélyes gyakorlat.

Lassításkor a lehető legjobban használja ki motorja fékhatását. Havas vagy jeges úton a hirtelen fékezés megcsúszást okozhat.

Elegendően nagy követési távolságot kell tartania saját gépkocsija és az Ön előtt haladó jármű között. Tehát óvatosan fékezzen. Jegyezze meg, hogy hólánc használatakor megnő a hajtóerő, de nem segít az oldalra kicsúszás elkerülésében.

MEGJEGYZÉS

A hólánc nem legális minden országban. Ellenőrizze az Ön országának törvényeit, mielőtt felszereli a hóláncot.

Téli gumiabroncs

Ha téli gumiabroncsot akar használni, először győződjön meg arról, hogy ezek megfelelő méretű és terhelhetőségű radiál abroncsok. Kifejezetten javasoljuk, hogy mind a négy kerékre szereltessen téli gumiabroncsot, hogy biztosítsa gépkocsija jó vezethetőségét. Ne feledje, hogy a téli gumiabroncsok tapadása száraz úton nem olyan jó, mint a gépkocsira eredetileg felszerelt gumiabroncsoké. Még tiszta úton is óvatosan kell vezetnie. Tájékozódjon a gumiszerelőnél a megengedett legnagyobb sebességgel kapcsolatban.

VIGYÁZAT!

A téli gumiabroncsok mérete

A téli gumiabroncsnak mind méretében, mind szerkezetében meg kell egyeznie az eredeti nyárival. Ellenkező esetben gépkocsija biztonsága és vezethetősége kedvezőtlenül változhat.

Ne szereltessen fel szöges gumiabroncsot, mielőtt tájékozódna a használatukra, illetve esetleges tiltásukra vonatkozó helyi előírásokról.

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 7 2020-09-24 8:02:17

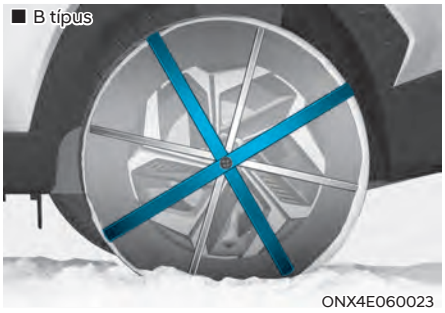
Hóláncok

■ A típus



ONX4E060020

■ B típus



ONX4E060023

Mivel a radiál gumiabroncsok oldalfala vékonyabb, megsérülhetnek bizonyos fajtájú hólánc felszerelésétől. Ezért inkább javasoljuk a téli gumiabroncsok használatát, mint a hólánc használatát. Ne szereljen fel hóláncot alumínium keréktárcsás kerékre, mivel a hólánc sérüléseket okozhat a keréktárcsán. Ha mégis hóláncot kellene használnia, használjon 15 mm-es átmérőnél kisebb, kábeltípusú hóláncot. Gépkocsijának a hólánc helytelen használatából eredő káraira nem vonatkozik a garancia.

A hóláncot mindig párban szerelje fel az első kerekekre.

Fontos megjegyezni, hogy a kerekekre felszerelt hólánc nagyobb tapadóerőt biztosít, azonban nem akadályozza meg a kicsúszást oldalra.

Ha hóláncot szándékozik használni, a következők szerint szerelje fel a hajtó kerekekre:

Kétkerékhajtású (2WD) gépkocsik: Az első kerekekre

Összkerékhajtású (4WD) gépkocsik: Mind a négy kerékre

Ha az összkerékhajtású (4WD) gépkocsira nem kapható teljes készlet hólánc, akkor felszerelhető a hólánc csak a két első kerékre.

FIGYELEM

- **Ügyeljen arra, hogy a hólánc a gumiabroncsaihoz megfelelő méretű és típusú legyen. A nem megfelelő méretű hólánc megrongálhatja gépkocsija karosszériáját és felfüggesztéseit, és erre nem vonatkozik a gépkocsi garanciája. Ezenkívül a hólánc összekötő kapcsai megsérülhetnek a karosszériához ütődéstől, amitől a hólánc meglazulhat, és leeshet a kerékről.**
- **0,5 - 1km megtétele után ellenőrizze megfelelő elhelyezkedésüket a biztonságos felszerelésük érdekében. Ha meglazultak, húzza meg újra, vagy szerelje fel ismét a hóláncokat.**

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 8 2020-09-24 8:02:17

A hólánc felszerelése

A hólánc felszerelésekor figyelmesen kövesse gyártójának utasításait, és a lehető legfeszesebbre húzza meg a láncot. A felszerelt hólánccal lassan közlekedjen. Ha a lánc hozzáverődik a karosszériához vagy az alvázhoz, álljon meg és feszítsen rajta. Ha még mindig hozzáér, lassítson le annyira, hogy megszűnjön a kontaktus. Haladéktalanul távolítsa el a láncokat, amint tiszta útra ér.

VIGYÁZAT!

Hólánc felszerelése

Forgalomtól távol eső sík felületen álljon félre. Kapcsolja be a vészvillogót és tegyen ki elakadásjelző háromszöget a gépkocsi mögé. A hólánc felszerelése előtt mindig kapcsolja P állásba a sebességváltó választókarját, működtesse a rögzítőféket, majd állítsa le a motort.

VIGYÁZAT!

Hólánc

- **A hólánc használata jelentősen korlátozza a gépkocsi kezelhetőségét.**
- **Ne lépje túl a 30 km/h sebességet, vagy a hólánc gyártója által meghatározott maximális sebességet. Mindig a kettő közül alacsonyabb értéket tartsa be.**
- **Vezessen óvatosan, kerülje a bukkanókat, lyukakat, éles kanyarokat és az úton előforduló egyéb veszélyforrásokat, melyek a gépkocsi erős berugózását okozzák.**
- **Tartózkodjon az éles kanyarvételtől és a blokkoló kerekekkel történő fékezéstől.**

FIGYELEM

- **A nem megfelelő méretű vagy rosszul felszerelt hólánc megrongálhatja gépkocsija féktömlőit, felfüggesztéseit, karosszériáját és a kerekeit.**
- **Álljon meg és húzza feszesebbre a hóláncokat, ha beleütnek a gépkocsi valamelyik alkatrészébe.**

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 9 2020-09-24 8:02:17

Biztonsági gyermeküléS (CRS)

Az egyes ülési pozíciók alkalmassága biztonsági öves és ISOFIX biztonsági gyermekülésekhez (CRS) az ENSZ előírásai szerint

(Információk a járműhasználók és CRS gyártók számára)

- Igen : A tervezett CRS kategória beszerelésére alkalmas
- Nem : A tervezett CRS kategória beszerelésére nem alkalmas
- "-" : Nem alkalmazható
- A táblázat balkormányos járműveken alapul. Az első utasülés kivételével a táblázat jobbkormányos járműre érvényes.

  Jobbkormányos jármű első utasülése esetén a 3. számú ülési pozícióra vonatkozó információkat alkalmazza.

CRS kategóriák		Ülési pozíciók						
		1	2	3		4	5	6
				Légzsák ON	Légzsák Ki			
Univerzális biztonsági öves CRS	Minden méretcsoport	-	-	Nem	Igen[1] (F,R)	Igen (F,R)	Igen (F,R)	Igen (F,R)
i-méretű CRS	ISOFIX CRF : F2, F2X, R1, R2	-	-	Nem	Nem	Igen (F,R)	Nem	Igen (F,R)
Mózeskosár (ISOFIX oldalra néző CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: L1, L2	-	-	Nem	Nem	Nem	Nem	Nem
ISOFIX csecsemő* CRS (* : ISOFIX rendszerű biztonsági gyerekülés csecsemő számára)	ISOFIX CRF : R1	-	-	Nem	Nem	Igen (R)	Nem	Igen (R)
ISOFIX kisgyermek CRS - kicsi	ISOFIX CRF : F2,F2X, R2,R2X	-	-	Nem	Nem	Igen (F,R)	Nem	Igen (F,R)
ISOFIX kisgyermek CRS – nagy* (* : nem ülésmagasítók)	ISOFIX CRF : F3,R3	-	-	Nem	Nem	Igen (F,R)	Nem	Igen (F,R)
Ülésmagasító - kisebbített szélesség	ISO CRF : B2	-	-	Nem	Igen[1]	Igen	Igen	Igen
Ülésmagasító - teljes szélesség	ISO CRF : B3	-	-	Nem	Igen[1]	Igen	Igen	Igen

F : Előre néző

R : Hátrafelé néző

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 10 2020-09-24 8:02:17

- 1. megjegyzés) : Az univerzális CRS behelyezésekor az első utasülés háttámláját állítsa teljesen függőleges állásba

Ülés Szám	Pozíció a járműbe	Ülési pozíciók
1	Első bal	
2	Első közép	
3	Első jobb	
4	2. sor bal	
5	2. sor közép	
6	2. sor jobb	

✳ Ha a jármű fejtámlája akadályozza a CRS megfelelő elhelyezését, az üléshelyzet fejtámláját át kell állítania vagy el kell távolítania

✳ Soha ne helyezze a hátrafelé néző Gyermekbiztonsági rendszert az első ülésre, hacsak nem kapcsolták ki a légzsákot.

Ajánlott CRS gyermekülések a járművekben az ENSZ előírásai szerint (Európa esetében)

(Információk a járműhasználók és CRS gyártók számára)

Tömeges csoport	Név	Gyártó	Rögzítés típusa	ECE engedély sz.
0+ / I csoport	BABY-SAFE 2 i-SIZE és BABY-SAFE i-SIZE BASE	Britax Romer	ISOFIX lábtámasszal, hátrafelé néző	R129/00 - E1 – 000008
I. csoport	Duo Plus	Britax Romer	ISOFIX és felső heveder	R44/04 - E1 – 04301133
II. csoport	KidFix2 R	Britax Romer	ISOFIX és jármű biztonsági öv, CRS kétpontos biztonsági öv használatával	R44/04 - E1 – 04301304
III. csoport	Junior III	Graco	jármű biztonsági öv	R44/04 – E11 – 03.44.164 R44/04 – E11 – 03.44.165

CRS gyártói információk (Európa esetében)

Britax : http://www.britax.com

Graco : http://www.gracobaby.com

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 11 2020-09-24 8:02:17

VETRARAKSTUR (ICELANDIC)

Akstur í þungri færð og vetrarveðri leiðir til aukins slits á ökutækinu og skapar ýmis vandamál. Hægt er að draga úr erfiðleikum sem fylgja vetrarakstri ef farið er að þessum ráðleggingum:

Akstur í snjó eða hálku

Við akstur í djúpum snjó kann að vera nauðsynlegt að nota vetrarhjólbarða eða setja keðjur á hjólbarðana. Reynist nauðsynlegt að nota vetrarhjólbarða þarf að velja hjólbarða af sömu stærð og gerð og venjulegu hjólbarðarnir. Sé það ekki gert getur það dregið úr öryggi og skert aksturseiginleika ökutækisins.

Hraðakstur, skyndileg hröðun, nauðhemlun og krappar beygjur geta enn fremur falið í sér mikla hættu.

Þegar dregið er úr hraða er ráðlegt að beita vélarhemlun sem kostur er. Við nauðhemlun á snævi þöktum eða hálum vegum getur ökutækið hæglega runnið til. Nauðsynlegt er að halda hæfilegri fjarlægð á milli þíns ökutækis og ökutækisins fyrir framan. Alltaf ætti að beita hemlinum mjúklega.

Hafa ber í huga að ef keðjur eru settar á hjólbarða fæst aukinn drifkraftur en það hindrar þó ekki að ökutækið renni til hliðanna.

ATHUGIÐ

Notkun snjókeðja er ólögleg í sumum ríkjum. Kynnið ykkur gildandi landslög áður en keðjur eru settar upp.

Vetrarhjólbarðar

Ef vetrarhjólbarðar eru settir á ökutækið þarf að gæta þess að nota þverofna hjól- barða af sömu stærð og ásþunga og upprunalegu hjólbarðarnir. Setjið vetrarhjólbarða á öll fjögur hjólin til að tryggja örugga stýringu ökutækisins við öll veðurskilyrði. Hafið í huga að á auðum vegi kunna vetrarhjólbarðar að hafa minna grip en hjólbarðarnir sem fylgdu ökutækinu. Því þarf að aka af gætni, jafnvel á auðum vegum. Ráðfærið ykkur við söluaðila hjólbarðanna um ráðlagðan hámarkshraða.

VIÐVÖRUN

Stærðir vetrarhjólbarða

Vetrarhjólbarðar ættu að vera af sömu stærð og gerð og hjólbarðarnir sem fylgdu ökutækinu.

Misræmi á því getur dregið úr öryggi og skert aksturseiginleika ökutækisins.

Áður en negldir hjólbarðar eru settir upp er rétt að kynna sér reglugerðir um notkun slíkra hjólbarða í viðkomandi landi, fylki eða sveitarfélagi.

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 12 2020-09-24 8:02:17

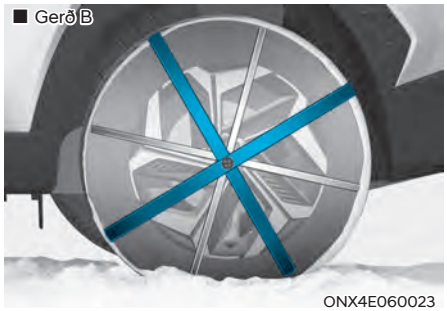
Keðjur á hjólbarða

■ Gerð A



ONX4E060020

■ Gerð B



ONX4E060023

Hliðar þverofinna hjólbarða eru þynnri en á öðrum hjólbörðum og sumar gerðir snjókeðja geta því valdið skemmdum á þeim. Því er ráðlegt að nota vetrarhjólbarða fremur en keðjur, ef þess er kostur.

Setjið aldrei keðjur á hjólbarða ökutækja sem búin eru álfelgum þar sem keðjurnar geta valdið skemmdum á felgunum. Ef óhjákvæmilegt reynist að nota keðjur skal nota vírkeðjur sem eru innan við 15 mm á þykkt.

Ábyrgðartrygging söluaðila ökutækisins tekur ekki til skemmda sem orsakast af rangri notkun snjókeðja.

Aðeins skal setja keðjur á í pörum og aðeins á framhjólbarðana. Hafa ber í huga að ef keðjur eru settar á hjólbarða fæst aukinn drifkraftur. Það hindrar þó ekki að ökutækið renni til hliðanna.

Þegar notaðar eru snjókeðjur skal setja þau á hjólin sem eru með drifi eins og hér er lýst.

Framhjóladrif: framhjólin

Fjórhjóladrif: öll fjögur hjólin. Ef ekki eru fjórar keðjur til staðar heldur einungis tvær er mælt með að nota þær á framhjólin.

VARÚÐ

- **Gætið þess að snjókeðjurnar séu af þeirri stærð og gerð sem hæfir hjólbörðunum. Notkun snjókeðja af rangri gerð getur valdið skemmdum á yfirbyggingu og fjöðrun ökutækisins og kann að falla utan ábyrgðartryggingar söluaðila ökutækisins. Þá geta festikrókar keðjanna skemmst vegan núnings við íhluti ökutækisins og snjókeðjurnar losnað af hjólbarðanum.**
- **Eftir um það bil 0,5-1 km akstur skal ævinlega skoða keðjurnar aftur til að tryggja að þær hafi verið settar upp á réttan og öruggan hátt. Herðið keðjurnar eða setjið þær aftur á ef þær hafa losnað.**

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 13 2020-09-24 8:02:17

Uppsetning á keðjum

Þegar keðjur eru settar á skal fylgja leiðbeiningum framleiðanda og herða keðjurnar eins mikið og unnt er. Þegar keðjur hafa verið settar á skal aka hægt. Ef hljóð heyrist sem bendir til að keðjurnar séu í snertingu við yfirbyggingu eða undirvagn er rétt að nema staðar og herða keðjurnar. Ef snerting virðist enn eiga sér stað skal hægja aksturinn þar til hljóðið þagnar. Takið keðjurnar niður um leið og komið er á rudda og snjólausa vegi.

VIÐVÖRUN

Uppsetning á keðjum

Þegar snjókeðjur eru settar upp skal leggja ökutækinu á sléttum fleti fjarri umferð. Kveikið á viðvörunarljósum ökutækisins og setjið þríhyrningslaga viðvörunarskilti upp fyrir aftan ökutækið, ef það er tiltækt. Hafið ökutækið ævinlega í stöðuhemli og drepið á vélinni áður en snjókeðjur eru settar upp.

VIÐVÖRUN

Keðjur á hjólbarða

- **Notkun keðja getur skert aksturseiginleika ökutækisins.**
- **Akið ekki hraðar en 30 km/klst. eða samkvæmt ráðlögðum hámarkshraða framleiðanda keðjanna, hvort sem reynist lægra.**
- **Akið gætilega og sneiðið hjá þústum, holum, kröppum beygjum og öðrum hættum á veginum, sem gætu valdið hristingi ökutækisins.**
- **Forðist krappar beygjur eða læsta hemlun.**

VARÚÐ

- **Séu snjókeðjur af rangri stærð eða rangt upp settar geta þær valdið skemmdum á hemlalögn, fjöðrun, yfirbyggingu og hjólum ökutækisins.**
- **Hvenær sem hljóð bendir til þess að keðjurnar sláist við ökutækið skal stöðva akstur og herða keðjurnar.**

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 14 2020-09-24 8:02:18

Barnabílstólar (CRS)

Hentugleiki hverrar sætisstöðu fyrir ISOFIX barnabílstóla samkvæmt ECE reglugerðum

(Upplýsingar fyrir ökutækjanotendur og framleiðendur barnabílstóla)

- Já: Hentar fyrir festingar þar til gerðrar flokkunar barnabílstóla
- Nei: Hentar ekki fyrir festingar þar til gerðrar flokkunar barnabílstóla
- "-" : Á ekki við
- Taflan byggir á VM ökutækjum. Fyrir utan farþegasætið fram í, gildir taflan fyrir HM ökutæki.

  Fyrir HM ökutæki farþegasæti fram í, skaltu nota upplýsingar fyrir sætisstöðu númer 3.

CRS flokkar		Sætisstöður						
		1	2	3		4	5	6
				Airbag ON	Airbag Off			
Alhliða CRS með beltum	Minden méretcsoport	-	-	Nei	Já[1] (F,R)	Já (F,R)	Já (F,R)	Já (F,R)
i-stærð CRS	ISOFIX CRF : F2, F2X, R1, R2	-	-	Nei	Nei	Já (F,R)	Nei	Já (F,R)
Ungbarnabílstóll (ISOFIX hliðarvísandi CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: L1, L2	-	-	Nei	Nei	Nei	Nei	Nei
ISOFIX ungbarna* CRS (*: ISOFIX barna CRS)	ISOFIX CRF : R1	-	-	Nei	Nei	Já (R)	Nei	Já (R)
ISOFIX barna CRS - lítill	ISOFIX CRF : F2,F2X, R2,R2X	-	-	Nei	Nei	Já (F,R)	Nei	Já (F,R)
ISOFIX-aðhaldsbúnaður fyrir smábörn – stór* (*: ekki bílpúðar)	ISOFIX CRF : F3,R3	-	-	Nei	Nei	Já (F,R)	Nei	Já (F,R)
Sessa - smættaður breidd	ISO CRF : B2	-	-	Nei	Já[1]	Já	Já	Já
Sessa – full breidd	ISO CRF : B3	-	-	Nei	Já[1]	Já	Já	Já

F : Framvísandi

R : Afturvísandi

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 15 2020-09-24 8:02:18

- Athugasemd 1) : Til að setja upp almennan aðhaldsbúnað fyrir börn ætti bak farþegasætis í 1. röð að vera í sem næst uppréttri stöðu.

Númer sætis	Staða í ökutækinu	Sætisstöður
1	Fram í til vinstri	
2	Fram í miðja	
3	Fram í til hægri	
4	2. röð til vinstri	
5	2. röð í miðju	
6	2. röð til hægri	

✳ Ef höfuðpúði í ökutæki kemur í veg fyrir rétta uppsetningu aðhaldsbúnaðar fyrir börn skal endurstilla höfuðpúða þess sætis eða fjarlægja hann alveg

✳ Setjið aldrei afturvísandi barnabílstól í farþegasætið fram í, nema slökkt sé á loftpúðanum.

Ráðlagður aðhaldsbúnaður fyrir börn fyrir ökutæki samkvæmt reglugerðum SÞ (fyrir Evrópu)

(Upplýsingar um notkun fyrir notendur ökutækja og framleiðendur aðhaldsbúnaðar fyrir börn)

Hópflokkur	Nafn	Framleiðandi	Tegund festingar	Samþykkisnúmer ECE
Flokkur 0+ / I	BABY-SAFE 2 i-SIZE og BABY-SAFE i-SIZE BASE	Britax Romer	ISOFIX með stoðfæti, snýr aftur	R129/00 - E1 – 000008
Hópur I	Duo Plus	Britax Romer	ISOFIX og yfirreim	R44/04 - E1 – 04301133
Hópur II	KidFix2 R	Britax Romer	ISOFIX og belti ökutækis sem notar mjaðmarbeltisstýringu aðhaldsbúnaðar fyrir börn	R44/04 - E1 – 04301304
Hópur III	Junior III	Graco	járnmú biztonsági öv	R44/04 – E11 – 03.44.164 R44/04 – E11 – 03.44.165

Upplýsingar framleiðanda aðhaldsbúnaðar fyrir börn (fyrir Evrópu)

Britax : http://www.britax.com

Graco : http://www.gracobaby.com

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 16 2020-09-24 8:02:18

JAZDA ZIMĄ (POLISH)

Surowe warunki pogodowe zimą powodują większe zużycie pojazdu i inne problemy. Aby zminimalizować problemy związane z jazdą w zimie, postępuj zgodnie z poniższymi sugestiami:

Jazda w warunkach śniegowych i przy oblodzeniu

Aby prowadzić pojazd w głębokim śniegu, może okazać się niezbędne użycie opon zimowych lub zainstalowanie łańcuchów śniegowych. Jeśli potrzebne okażą się opony zimowe, konieczne jest wybranie opon o rozmiarze i typie odpowiadających oponom, w jakie pojazd był pierwotnie wyposażony. Jeśli założone zostaną nieodpowiednie opony, będzie to miało negatywny wpływ na bezpieczeństwo i prowadzenie pojazdu. Ponadto jazda z nadmierną prędkością, gwałtowne przyspieszanie, nagłe hamowanie i ostre skręty będą stanowiły potencjalnie bardzo duże niebezpieczeństwo. Podczas zwalniania należy w pełni wykorzystać hamowanie silnikiem. Nagłe hamowanie na zaśnieżonej lub oblodzonej drodze może spowodować poślizg pojazdu. Należy utrzymywać odpowiedni odstęp od pojazdu jadącego z przodu. Hamulców należy używać ostrożnie. Należy pamiętać, że założenie łańcuchów śniegowych zapewni większą siłę napędową, ale nie zapobiegnie ślizganiu się na boki.

UWAGA

Stosowanie łańcuchów śniegowych nie jest zgodne z prawem we wszystkich krajach. Przed założeniem łańcuchów śniegowych należy sprawdzić przepisy danego kraju.

Opony zimowe

Kiedy zakładane są opony zimowe, należy upewnić się, że są to opony radialne o takim samym rozmiarze i zakresie obciążeń co pierwotne opony pojazdu. Opony zimowe należy zakładać na wszystkie cztery koła pojazdu, by we wszystkich warunkach pogodowych pojazd pozwalał się prowadzić równomiernie. Należy pamiętać, że przyczepność zapewniana przez opony zimowe na suchej drodze może nie być równie wysoka jak przyczepność pierwotnych opon pojazdu. Pojazd należy prowadzić ostrożnie nawet wtedy, gdy drogi są oczyszczone. Aby poznać informacje na temat zalecanych ograniczeń prędkości dla danych opon, należy skontaktować się ze sprzedawcą opon.

OSTRZEŻENIE

Rozmiar opon zimowych

Opony zimowe powinny mieć rozmiar i typ odpowiadający standardowym oponom pojazdu. Jeśli tak nie jest, może to mieć negatywny wpływ na bezpieczeństwo i prowadzenie pojazdu.

Opon okolcowanych nie należy zakładać bez uprzedniego sprawdzenia w przepisach lokalnych, stanowych i miejskich, czy na ich użycie nie są nałożone ograniczenia.

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 17 2020-09-24 8:02:18

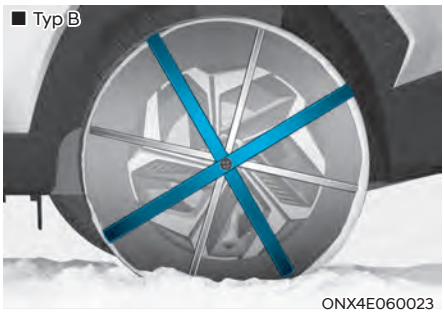
Łańcuchy śniegowe (przeciwpoślizgowe)

■ Typ A



ONX4E060020

■ Typ B



ONX4E060023

Ponieważ ścianki boczne opon radialnych są cieńsze, założenie niektórych rodzajów łańcuchów śniegowych może spowodować ich uszkodzenie. Z tego względu zaleca się korzystanie z opon zimowych zamiast łańcuchów śniegowych. Łańcuchów śniegowych nie należy zakładać w pojazdach, które są wyposażone w felgi aluminiowe, ponieważ mogą one powodować uszkodzenia felg. Jeśli użycie łańcuchów śniegowych jest niezbędne, należy zastosować łańcuchy drutowe o grubości poniżej 15 mm.

Uszkodzenia pojazdu spowodowane użyciem niewłaściwych łańcuchów śniegowych nie jest objęte gwarancją producenta pojazdu.

Łańcuchy na opony należy zakładać jedynie parami i na przednich oponach. Należy pamiętać, że założenie łańcuchów na oponach zwiększy siłę napędową, ale nie zapobiegnie poślizgowi bocznemu.

OSTRZEŻENIE

- **Należy upewnić się, że łańcuchy śniegowe mają odpowiedni rozmiar i typ dla opon pojazdu. Zastosowanie niewłaściwych łańcuchów śniegowych może spowodować uszkodzenie nadwozia oraz zawieszenia, a zniszczenia powstałe w ten sposób mogą nie być objęte gwarancją producenta pojazdu.**

  Ponadto, haczyki łączące łańcuchów śniegowych mogą zostać zniszczone na skutek stykania się z elementami samochodu, co może spowodować zsunięcie się łańcuchów z opon.
- **Po przejechaniu ok. 0,5 do 1 km (0,3 do 0,6 mil), dla zachowania bezpieczeństwa, należy zawsze sprawdzić, czy łańcuchy śniegowe zostały poprawnie założone. Jeśli łańcuchy poluzowały się, należy je zacisnąć lub założyć ponownie.**

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 18 2020-09-24 8:02:18

Zakładanie łańcuchów śniegowych

Zakładając łańcuchy śniegowe należy postępować zgodnie z instrukcjami podanymi przez producenta. Łańcuchy należy założyć tak ciasno, jak to tylko możliwe. Kiedy łańcuchy są już założone, pojazd należy prowadzić powoli. Jeśli dadzą się słyszeć dźwięki świadczące o tym, że łańcuchy stykają się z nadwoziem lub podwoziem, należy zatrzymać samochód i zacisnąć je. Jeśli łańcuchy wciąż stykają się z elementami pojazdu, należy zmniejszać prędkość, aż łańcuchy przestaną uderzać w samochód. Łańcuchy należy zdjąć jak tylko rozpocznie się jazdę po oczyszczonej drodze.

OSTRZEŻENIE

Zakładanie łańcuchów śniegowych

Aby założyć łańcuchy śniegowe, należy zatrzymać pojazd na płaskim podłożu, z dala od ruchu drogowego. Włączyć światła awaryjne pojazdu i umieścić za nim trójkąt ostrzegawczy, jeśli jest on dostępny. Zanim rozpocznie się instalowanie łańcuchów śniegowych dźwignię zmiany biegów należy zawsze umieścić w położeniu P (Postój), zaciągnąć hamulec postojowy i wyłączyć silnik.

OSTRZEŻENIE

Łańcuchy śniegowe

- **Użycie łańcuchów śniegowych może mieć negatywny wpływ na prowadzenie pojazdu.**
- **Pojazdu nie należy prowadzić szybciej niż 30 km/h (20 mil/h) lub z prędkością większą, niż zalecana przez producenta, którakolwiek z tych wartości okaże się mniejsza.**
- **Pojazd należy prowadzić ostrożnie i unikać wybojów, dziur, ostrych skrętów i innych zagrożeń drogowych, które mogą powodować podskakiwanie pojazdu.**
- **Należy unikać ostrych zakrętów lub hamowania z zablokowanymi kołami.**

OSTROŻNIE

- **Łańcuchy o niewłaściwym rozmiarze lub niepoprawnie założone mogą uszkodzić linki hamulcowe pojazdu, zawieszenie, nadwozie oraz koła.**
- **Za każdym razem, kiedy da się usłyszeć, że łańcuchy uderzają w samochód, należy zatrzymać się i zacisnąć je.**

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 19 2020-09-24 8:02:18

Urządzenie przytrzymujące dla dzieci (CRS)

Odpowiedniość każdego miejsca siedzącego dla urządzeń przytrzymujących dla dzieci z pasami i mocowaniem ISOFIX (CRS) zgodnie z regulacjami UN

(Informacje dotyczące obsługi dla użytkowników pojazdów i producentów CRS)

- Tak: nadaje się do mocowania wyznaczonej kategorii CRS
- Nie: nie nadaje się do mocowania wyznaczonej kategorii CRS
- “-” : nie dotyczy
- Tabela dotyczy pojazdu z kierownicą z lewej strony. Z wyjątkiem przedniego siedzenia pasażera, tabela dotyczy pojazdu z kierownicą z prawej strony.

  W wypadku przedniego siedzenia pasażera w pojeździe z kierownicą z prawej strony należy wykorzystać informacje dotyczące miejsca siedzącego nr 3.

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 20 2020-09-24 8:02:18

Kategorie CRS		Miejsca siedzące						
		1	2	3		4	5	6
				Poduszka powietrzna	Poduszka powietrzna			
				ON	Ki			
Uniwersalne urządzenie CRS do mocowania pasem	Wszystkie grupy wagowe	-	-	Nie	Tak[1] (F,R)	Tak (F,R)	Tak (F,R)	Tak (F,R)
Urządzenie CRS rozmiaru i	ISOFIX CRF : F2, F2X, R1, R2	-	-	Nie	Nie	Tak (F,R)	Nie	Tak (F,R)
Przenośne łóżeczko (Urządzenie CRS ISOFIX skierowane bokiem do kier. jazdy)	ISOFIX CRF: (Urządzenie CRS ISOFIX skierowane bokiem do kier. jazdy)	-	-	Nie	Nie	Nie	Nie	Nie
Urządzenie CRS ISOFIX dla niemowląt* (* : urządzenie CRS ISOFIX dla niemowląt)	ISOFIX CRF : (* : urządzenie CRS ISOFIX dla niemowląt)	-	-	Nie	Nie	Tak (R)	Nie	Tak (R)
Urządzenie CRS ISOFIX dla małych dzieci – małe	ISOFIX CRF : F2,F2X, R2,R2X	-	-	Nie	Nie	Tak (F,R)	Nie	Tak (F,R)
Urządzenie CRS ISOFIX dla małych dzieci – duże* (* : bez podwyższeń)	ISOFIX CRF : (* : bez podwyższeń)	-	-	Nie	Nie	Tak (F,R)	Nie	Tak (F,R)
Podwyższenie — zmniejszone szerokość	ISO CRF : B2	-	-	Nie	Tak[1]	Tak	Tak	Tak
Podwyższenie — pełna szerokość	ISO CRF : B3	-	-	Nie	Tak[1]	Tak	Tak	Tak

F: skierowany przodem do kier. jazdy

T: skierowany tyłem do kier. jazdy

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 21 2020-09-24 8:02:18

- Uwaga 1) : Do instalacji uniwersalnego systemu CRS, oparcie siedzenia pasażera w 1. rzędzie powinno być maksymalnie wyprostowane

Gniazdo	Położenie	Miejsca siedzące
Liczba	w pojeździe	
1	Lewe przednie	
2	Przednie środkowe	
3	Prawe przednie	
4	2. rząd, lewe	
5	2. rząd, środkower	
6	2. rząd, prawe	

✳ Jeżeli zagłówek pojazdu uniemożliwia prawidłowy montaż systemu CRS, należy ponownie wyregulować lub całkowicie usunąć zagłówek miejsca siedzącego.

✳ Nigdy nie montować urządzenia przytrzymującego dla dzieci zwróconego tyłem do kierunku jazdy na przednim siedzeniu pasażera, jeśli nie wyłączono poduszki powietrznej pasażera.

Zalecany system CRS do pojazdów zgodnie z przepisami UN (dla Europy)

(Informacje dotyczące obsługi dla użytkowników pojazdów i producentów CRS)

Grupa wagowa	Nazwa	Producent	Typ mocowania	Nr aprobaty ECE
Grupa 0+ / I	BABY-SAFE 2 i-SIZE i BABY-SAFE i-SIZE BASE	Britax Romer	ISOFIX z nogą podpierającą, zwrócony do tyłu	R129/00 - E1 – 000008
Grupa I	Duo Plus	Britax Romer	ISOFIX i górny pasek mocujący	R44/04 - E1 – 04301133
Grupa II	KidFix2 R	Britax Romer	ISOFIX i pas bezpieczeństwa samochodu, z wykorzystaniem prowadnicą pasa biodrowego CRS	R44/04 - E1 – 04301304
Grupa III	Junior III	Graco	Pas bezp. pojazdu	R44/04 – E11 – 03.44.164 R44/04 – E11 – 03.44.165

Informacje dotyczące producenta CRS (na terenie Europy)

Britax : http://www.britax.com

Graco : http://www.gracobaby.com

010_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 22 2020-09-24 8:02:18

Index

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 1 2020-09-24 8:02:35

A

Accessing your vehicle 5-4
- Immobilizer system 5-12
- Remote key 5-4
- Smart key 5-7

Air bag - supplemental restraint system 3-48
- Additional safety precautions 3-66
- Air bag warning labels 3-66
- Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat 3-60
- How does the air bags system operate? 3-56
- SRS care 3-65
- What to expect after an air bag inflates 3-59
- Where are the air bags? 3-51
- Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? 3-60

Air cleaner 9-29
- Filter replacement 9-29

Air conditioner compressor label 2-19

Air conditioning system 2-15

Appearance care 9-73
- Exterior care 9-73
- Interior care 9-77

Automatic climate control system 5-70
- Automatic heating and air conditioning 5-72
- Manual heating and air conditioning 5-73
- Multi air mode 5-80
- System maintenance 5-83
- System operation 5-81

Automatic transmission 6-13
- Automatic transmission operation 6-13
- Good driving practices 6-18
- Lcd display message 6-17
- Paddle shifter 6-18
- Parking 6-16

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 2 2020-09-24 8:02:35

B

Battery 9-35
Battery capacity label 9-37
Battery recharging 9-37
For best battery service 9-36
Reset items 9-38
Before driving 6-4
Before entering the vehicle 6-4
Before starting 6-4
Blind-spot collision-avoidance assist (BCA) 7-24
System malfunction and limitations 7-33
System operation 7-28
System settings 7-26
Blind-spot view monitor (BVM) 7-57
System malfunction 7-58
System operation 7-57
System settings 7-57
Brake fluid 9-27
Checking the brake fluid level 9-27
Braking system 6-21
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 6-30
Auto hold 6-27
Brake assist system (BAS) 6-38
Disc brakes wear indicator 6-22
Downhill brake control (DBC) 6-38
Electronic parking brake (EPB) 6-22
Electronic stability control (ESC) 6-32
Emergency stop signal (ESS) 6-36
Good braking practices 6-41
Hill-start assist control (HAC) 6-36
Multi-collision brake (MCB) 6-37
Power brakes 6-21
Trailer stability assist (TSA) 6-35
Vehicle stability management (VSM) 6-34
Bulb wattage 2-13

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 3 2020-09-24 8:02:35

C

Cabin air filter....9-30
Filter inspection....9-30
Filter replacement....9-30
Child Restraint System (CRS)....3-37
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)....3-40
Our recommendation: Children always in the rear....3-37
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)....3-38
Climate control additional features....5-89
Auto defogging system....5-89
Auto dehumidify....5-90
Auto. Controls that use climate control settings (for driver's seat)....5-90
Recirculating air when washer fluid is used....5-90
Sunroof inside air recirculation....5-90
Coasting guide....6-20
Cruise control (CC)....7-59
System operation....7-59

D

Declaration of conformity....2-19
Dimensions....2-12
Door locks....5-13
Auto door lock/unlock features....5-17
Child-protector rear door locks....5-17
Deadlocks....5-17
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle....5-15
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle....5-13
Drive mode integrated control system....6-49
Driver attention warning (DAW)....7-51
System malfunction and limitations....7-54
System operation....7-52
System settings....7-51

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 4 2020-09-24 8:02:36

E

Emergency commodity 8-35
- Fire extinguisher 8-35
- First aid kit 8-35
- Tire pressure gauge 8-35
- Triangle reflector 8-35

Emission control system 9-80
Engine 2-12
Engine compartment 2-11, 9-3
Engine coolant/inverter coolant 9-24
- Changing coolant 9-26
- Checking the coolant level 9-24

Engine number 2-19
Engine oil 9-22
- Checking the engine oil and filter 9-23
- Checking the engine oil level 9-22

Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 9-20
Exterior features 5-39, 5-104
- Fuel filler door 5-50
- Hood 5-39
- Power tailgate 5-42
- Roof rack 5-104
- Smart tailgate 5-48
- Tailgate 5-40

Exterior overview (i) 2-2
Exterior overview (ii) 2-3

F

Forward collision–avoidance assist (FCA) (sensor fusion) 7-2
- System malfunction and limitations 7-10
- System operation 7-6
- System settings 7-4

Forward/reverse parking distance warning (PDW) 7-119
- System malfunction and precautions 7-122
- System operation 7-119
- System settings 7-119

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 5 2020-09-24 8:02:36

Four wheel drive (4WD) 6-42
4Wd operation 6-43
Emergency precautions 6-46
Multi terrain control 6-42
Multi terrain control mode 6-42
Reducing the risk of a rollover 6-47
Fuel label 2-20
Gasoline engine 2-20
Fuses 9-48
Engine compartment panel fuse replacement 9-50
Fuse/relay panel description 9-51
Instrument panel fuse replacement 9-49

G

Gross vehicle weight 2-15

H

Hazard warning flasher 8-3
High beam assist (HBA) 5-59
System malfunction and limitations 5-60
System operation 5-60
System settings 5-59
Highway driving assist (HDA) 7-90
System malfunction and limitations 7-94
System operation 7-92
System settings 7-91
Hybrid Starter & Generator (HSG) belt 9-27
Checking the Hybrid Starter & Generator (HSG) belt 9-27

I

If the 12 volt battery is discharged 8-5
Before jump starting 8-5
Jump starting 8-6
If the engine overheats 8-8
If the vehicle will not be ready to start 8-4

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 6 2020-09-24 8:02:36

If you have a flat tire (with spare tire) 8-15
Changing tires 8-16
Ec declaration of conformity for jack 8-22
Jack and tools 8-15
Jack label 8-21
If you have a flat tire (with tire mobility kit) 8-23
Checking the tire inflation pressure 8-29
Components of the tire mobility kit 8-25
Introduction 8-23
Notes on the safe use of the tire mobility kit 8-24
Using the tire mobility kit 8-26
Ignition switch 6-5
Engine start/stop button 6-8
Key ignition switch 6-5
Important safety precautions 3-2
Air bag hazards 3-2
Always wear your seat belt 3-2
Control your speed 3-2
Driver distraction 3-2
Keep your vehicle in safe condition 3-2
Restrain all children 3-2
In case of an emergency while driving 8-3
If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing 8-3
If the engine stalls while driving 8-3
If you have a flat tire while driving 8-4
Infotainment system 5-105
Antenna 5-105
Bluetooth® wireless technology 5-107
How vehicle radio works 5-107
Infotainment system 5-106
Steering wheel remote controls 5-105
Usb port 5-105
Voice recognition 5-106
Instrument cluster 4-2
Gauges and meters 4-3
Icy Road Warning Light 4-8
Instrument cluster control 4-3
Transmission shift indicator 4-8
Warning and indicator lights 4-9

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 7 2020-09-24 8:02:36

Instrument panel overview (i) 2-6
Instrument panel overview (ii) 2-8
Instrument panel overview (iii) 2-10
Integrated memory system 5-19
  Easy access function 5-21
  Recalling memory positions 5-20
  Resetting the system 5-20
  Storing memory positions 5-19
Intelligent speed limit assist (ISLA) 7-46
  System malfunction and limitations 7-49
  System operation 7-47
  System settings 7-46
Interior features 5-93
  Ashtray 5-94
  Cargo security screen 5-101
  Clock 5-99
  Coat hook 5-99
  Cup holder 5-93
  Floor mat anchor(s) 5-99
  Luggage net holder 5-101
  Power outlet 5-95
  Side curtain 5-100
  Sunvisor 5-94
  Usb charger 5-96
  Wireless smart phone charging system 5-96
Interior lights 5-62
  Front lamps 5-62
  Glove box lamp 5-63
  Interior lamp auto cut 5-62
  Luggage compartment lamp 5-64
  Rear lamps 5-63
  Vanity mirror lamp 5-63
  Welcome system 5-64
Interior overview (i) 2-4
Interior overview (ii) 2-5

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 8 2020-09-24 8:02:36

J

Jazda zimą (polish) 10-17
Jazda w warunkach śniegowych i przy oblodzeniu 10-17
Urządzenie przytrzymujące dla dzieci (CRS) 10-20

L

Lane following assist (LFA) 7-86
System malfunction and limitations 7-89
System operation 7-87
System settings 7-86
Lane keeping assist (LKA) 7-17
System malfunction and limitations 7-21
System operation 7-19
System settings 7-18
LCD display 4-26
LCD display control 4-26
LCD display modes 4-27
Trip computer (10.25-inch) 4-39
Trip computer (4.2-inch) 4-37
User settings mode 4-30
Light bulbs 9-60
Headlamp aiming (For Europe) 9-63
Headlamp, position lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement 9-61
High mounted stop lamp replacement 9-70
Interior light replacement 9-71
License plate lamp replacement 9-71
Rear combination lamp replacement 9-67
Side repeater lamp replacement 9-67
Lighting 5-53
Exterior lights 5-53
Load and speed capacity tires (for europe) 2-15
Luggage volume 2-15

M

Maintenance services 9-4
Owner maintenance precautions 9-4
Owner’s responsibility 9-4

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 9 2020-09-24 8:02:36

Manual speed limit assist (MSLA) 7-43
System operation 7-43
Mirrors 5-25
Inside rearview mirror 5-25
Outside rearview mirrors 5-26

N

Navigation-based smart cruise control (NSCC) 7-79
Limitations of the system 7-82
System operation 7-80
System settings 7-79

O

Owner maintenance 9-5
Owner maintenance schedule 9-5

P

Pan-european ecall system 8-36
Information on data processing 8-38
Pan-european ecall system 8-39
Panorama sunroof 5-34
Closing the sunroof 5-36
Resetting the sunroof 5-37
Sliding the sunroof 5-35
Sunroof open warning 5-38
Sunshade 5-35
Tilting the sunroof 5-36
Procedure for entering forced engine activation mode 9-83

R

Rear cross-traffic collision-avoidance assist (RCCA) 7-106
System malfunction and limitations 7-112
System operation 7-108
System settings 7-107
Rear view monitor (RVM) 7-96
System malfunction and limitations 7-99
System operation 7-97
System settings 7-97

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 10 2020-09-24 8:02:36

Recommended lubricants and capacities 2-16
Recommended engine oil (for europe) 2-17
Recommended sae viscosity number 2-17
Remote smart parking assist (RSPA) 7-124
System malfunction and limitations 7-132
System operation 7-126
System settings 7-125
Reverse parking distance warning (PDW) 7-116
System malfunction and precautions 7-117
System operation 7-116
System settings 7-116

S

Safe exit warning (SEW) 7-37
Function malfunction and limitations 7-41
Function operation 7-39
Function settings 7-38
Scheduled maintenance services 9-7
Maintenance under severe usage conditions - Except Europe 9-18
Maintenance under severe usage conditions- For Europe 9-12
Normal maintenance schedule - Except Europe 9-14
Normal maintenance schedule- For Europe 9-8
Seat belts 3-25
Additional seat belt safety precautions 3-34
Care of seat belts 3-36
Seat belt restraint system 3-28
Seat belt safety precautions 3-25
Seat belt warning light 3-26
Seats 3-3
Air ventilation seat 3-22
Front seats 3-6
Headrest 3-16
Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) 3-23
Rear seats 3-12
Safety precautions 3-5
Seat warmers 3-20

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 11 2020-09-24 8:02:36

Smart cruise control (SCC) 7-63
System display and control 7-68
System malfunction and limitations 7-73
System operation 7-67
System settings 7-64
Special driving conditions 6-51
Driving at night 6-52
Driving in flooded areas 6-53
Driving in the rain 6-52
Hazardous driving conditions 6-51
Highway driving 6-53
Reducing the risk of a rollover 6-53
Rocking the vehicle 6-51
Smooth cornering 6-52
Steering wheel 5-22
Electric power steering (EPS) 5-22
Heated steering wheel 5-23
Horn 5-24
Tilt / telescopic steering 5-23
Storage compartment 5-91
Center console storage 5-91
Glove box 5-91
Luggage tray 5-92
Surround view monitor (SVM) 7-100
System malfunction and limitations 7-105
System operation 7-103
System settings 7-101

T

Téli vezetés (hungarian) 10-7
Biztonsági gyermekülés (CRS) 10-10
Havas vagy jeges útviszonyok 10-7
Theft-alarm system 5-18
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) 8-10
Changing a tire with TPMS 8-13
Check tire pressure 8-10
Low tire pressure position and tire pressure telltale 8-12

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 12 2020-09-24 8:02:36

Low tire pressure warning light 8-12
Tire pressure monitoring system 8-11
TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system) malfunction indicator 8-13
Tire specification and pressure label 2-18
Tires and wheels 2-14, 9-39
Check tire inflation pressure 9-40
Low aspect ratio tires 9-47
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures 9-39
Tire care 9-39
Tire maintenance 9-43
Tire replacement 9-42
Tire rotation 9-41
Tire sidewall labeling 9-44
Tire traction 9-43
Wheel alignment and tire balance 9-42
Wheel replacement 9-43
Towing 8-31
Emergency towing 8-33
Removable towing hook 8-32
Towing service 8-31
Trailer towing (for europe) 6-59
Driving with a trailer 6-64
If you decide to pull a trailer? 6-60
Maintenance when towing a trailer 6-67
Trailer towing equipment 6-63

V

Vehicle certification label 2-18
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 2-18
Vehicle settings (infotainment system) 4-42
Setting your vehicle 4-42
Vehicle weight 6-68
Overloading 6-68
Vetrarakstur (icelandic) 10-12
Akstur í snjó eða hálku 10-12
Barnabílstólar (CRS) 10-15

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 13 2020-09-24 8:02:36

W

Washer fluid 9-28
Checking the washer fluid level 9-28
Windows 5-29
Power windows 5-31
Windshield defrosting and defogging 5-86
Auto defogging system (only for automatic climate control system) 5-87
Automatic climate control system 5-86
Rear window defroster 5-88
Winter driving 6-54
Snow or icy conditions 6-54
Winter precautions 6-57
Wiper blades 9-31
Blade inspection 9-31
Blade replacement 9-31
Wipers and washers 5-66
Front windshield washers 5-68
Rear window wiper and washer 5-69
Windshield wipers 5-67

Ш

Шофиране през зимата (bulgarian) 10-2
Система за задържане на деца (CRS) 10-5
Сняг или поледица 10-2

011_NX4e HEV_Eng.indd 14 2020-09-24 8:02:36